

OWNER'S MANUAL

AIR-TO-WATER HEAT PUMP

Please read this manual carefully before operating
your set and retain it for future reference.

THERMA V™

Original instruction



MFL68680905
Rev.13_052024

Copyright © 2017 - 2024 LG Electronics Inc. All Rights Reserved.

www.lg.com

PORTUGUÊS

ENGLISH

MAGYAR

ITALIANO

БЪЛГАРСКИ

ESPAÑOL

SRPSKI

FRANÇAIS

HRVATSKI

DEUTSCH

SLOVENŠČINA

EAHNIKA

DANSK

ČEŠTINA

CATALÀ

NEDERLANDS

POLSKI

LIMBA ROMÂNĂ

INTRODUCTION

What is AWHP(Air to Water Heat Pump)?

- Air to Water Heat Pump system can be used as various heating solution from floor heating to hot water supply with multiple heat sources. It is 4 times more energy efficient than conventional system.
- High efficiency with conventional boiler functions.

Why is AWHP(Air to Water Heat Pump)?

- Various regulations are implemented in Europe to reduce energy use of building heating.
- Also, AWHP-related subsidy programs are implemented by country.

Read this manual

Inside you will find many helpful hints on how to use and maintain your AWHP properly. Just a little preventive care on your part can save you a great deal of time and money over the life of your product.

You'll find many answers to common problems in the chart of troubleshooting tips. If you review our chart of Troubleshooting Tips first, you may not need to call for service at all.

How to find additional model information

Energy Labels and Product Fiches for all possible combinations can be found at <https://www.lg.com/global/support/cedoc/cedoc>.
Search for outdoor unit name in cedoc page.

For your records

Staple your receipt to this page in case you need it to prove the date of purchase or for warranty purposes. Write the model number and the serial number here:

Model number : _____

Serial number : _____

You can find them on a label on the side of each unit.

Dealer's name : _____

Date of purchase : _____

TABLE OF CONTENTS

2 INTRODUCTION

5 SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

12 PRODUCT INTRODUCTION

- 12 Typical installation scene (For Split)
- 13 Typical installation scene (For Hydrosplit 1-Pipe)
- 14 Typical installation scene (For Hydrosplit 2-Pipe)
- 15 Remote controller
- 15 Related Information

16 DESCRIPTION OF THE OPERATION

- 16 Main screen
- 16 Menu screen
- 17 Setting screen
- 17 Popup screen
- 18 Monitoring (For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series, For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)
- 18 Returning to the screen
- 19 Monitoring (For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit)

20 OPERATION SETTING

- 20 On / Off
- 20 Operation mode
- 21 Cooling operation
- 22 Heating operation
- 23 AI / Auto operation

24 TEMPERATURE SETTING

- 24 Controlling desired temperature
- 25 Select Temperature Sensor
- 26 DHW heating operation
- 26 Quick DHW tank heating
- 27 View temperature

29 LOCK SETTING

- 29 How to enter Lock setting
- 29 Lock setting – all, on/off, mode, DHW lock

30 TIMER SETTING

- 30 Timer entrance and setting method
- 31 Simple Timer
- 32 Turn-On Reservation
- 33 Turn-Off Reservation

34 SCHEDULE SETTING

- 34 How to enter schedule
- 35 Daily schedule
- 36 Schedules & Edit
- 37 Schedules & Edit – Add schedule
- 38 Exception Day

4 TABLE OF CONTENTS

39 DHW Recirculation Schedule (For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, Hydrosplit 2-Pipe)

41 ENERGY MONITORING SETTING (For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, Hydrosplit 2-Pipe)

41 Energy Monitoring Setting

42 Information of Energy Monitoring

43 METER INTERFACE SETTING

43 Connection path of meter interface

44 Information of meter interface

45 FUNCTION SETTING

45 How to enter function setting

46 Function setting

47 Low Noise Mode Time

48 Wi-Fi Pairing

49 Water Temperature Setting

50 3rd Party Boiler

51 USER SETTING

51 How to enter user setting

51 User Setting

52 Language

53 Temperature Unit

54 Screen Saver Timer

54 LCD Brightness In Idle

55 Date

56 Time

57 Summer Time

58 Password

59 Schedule Initialization / Schedule Reset

60 Theme

60 Auto return to main screen

60 System Reboot

61 OVERVIEW OWNER'S SETTINGS

61 Menu structure (For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series, For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)

63 Menu structure (For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit)

65 SERVICE SETTING

65 How to enter service setting

65 Open source license

66 USING THERMOSTAT

66 How to use thermostat

67 EMERGENCY OPERATION

69 MAINTENANCE AND SERVICE

69 Maintenance activities

69 When the unit is not going....

69 Call the service immediately in the following situations

SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

	Read the precautions in this manual carefully before operating the unit.		This appliance is filled with flammable refrigerant (R32)
	This symbol indicates that the Operation Manual should be read carefully.		This symbol indicates that a service personnel should be handling this equipment with reference to the Installation Manual.

The following safety guidelines are intended to prevent unforeseen risks or damage from unsafe or incorrect operation of the appliance.

The guidelines are separated into 'WARNING' and 'CAUTION' as described below.

 This symbol is displayed to indicate matters and operations that can cause risk.

Read the part with this symbol carefully and follow the instructions in order to avoid risk.

WARNING

This indicates that the failure to follow the instructions can cause serious injury or death.

CAUTION

This indicates that the failure to follow the instructions can cause the minor injury or damage to the product.

WARNING

- Always ground the product.
 - There is a risk of electric shock.
- Do not use a defective or underrated circuit breaker. Use the correctly rated breaker and fuse.
 - There is risk of fire or electric shock.
- Do not use a multi outlet. Always use this appliance on a dedicated circuit and breaker.
 - There is risk of fire or electric shock.

- For electrical work, contact the dealer, seller, a qualified electrician, or an Authorized Service Center. Do not disassemble or repair the product by yourself.
 - There is risk of fire or electric shock.
- Always ground the product as per the wiring diagram. Do not connect the ground wire to gas or water pipes lightning rod or telephone ground wire.
 - There is risk of fire or electric shock.
- Install the panel and the cover of control box securely.
 - There is risk of fire or electric shock due to dust, water etc.
- Use the correctly rated breaker or fuse.
 - There is risk of fire or electric shock.
- Do not modify or extend the power cable. If the power cable or cord has scratches or skin peeled off or deteriorated then it must be replaced.
 - There is risk of fire or electric shock.
- For installation, removal or reinstall , always contact the dealer or an Authorized Service Center.
 - There is risk of fire, electric shock, explosion, or injury.
- Do not install the product on a defective installation stand. Be sure that the installation area does not deteriorate with age.
 - It may cause product to fall.
- Never install the unit on a moving base or a place from where it can fall down.
 - The falling unit can cause damage or injury or even death of a person.
- When the product is soaked (flooded or submerged) in water, contact an Authorized Service Center for repair before using it again.
 - There is risk of fire or electric shock.
- Be sure to check the refrigerant to be used. Please read the label on the product.
 - Incorrect refrigerant can prevent the normal operation of the unit.
- Don't use a power cord, a plug or a loose socket which is damaged.
 - Otherwise it may cause a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not touch , operate, or repair the product with wet hands.
 - There is risk of electric shock or fire.

- Do not place a heater or other heating appliances near the power cable.
 - There is risk of fire and electric shock.
- Do not allow water to run into electric parts. Install the unit away from water sources.
 - There is risk of fire, failure of the product, or electric shock.
- Do not store or use or even allow flammable gas or combustibles near the product.
 - There is risk of fire.
- Wiring connections must be secured tightly and the cable should be routed properly so that there is no force pulling the cable from the connection terminals.
 - Improper or loose connections can cause heat generation or fire.
- Safely dispose off the packing materials. Like screws, nails, batteries, broken things etc after installation or service and then tear away and throw away the plastic packaging bags.
 - Children may play with them and cause injury.
- Make sure to check that the power device is not dirty, loose or broken and then turn on the power.
 - Dirty, loose or broken power device can cause electric shock or fire.
- In unit the step-up capacitor supplies high voltage electricity to the electrical components. Be sure to discharge the capacitor completely before conducting the repair work.
 - An charged capacitor can cause electrical shock.
- When installing the unit, use the installation kit provided with the product.
 - Otherwise the unit may fall and cause severe injury.
- Be sure to use only those parts which are listed in the service parts list. Never attempt to modify the equipment.
 - The use of inappropriate parts can cause an electrical shock, excessive heat generation or fire.
- Do not use the product in a tightly closed space for a long time. Perform ventilation regularly.
 - Oxygen deficiency could occur and hence harm your health.
- Do not open the front cover or grille of the product during operation. (Do not touch the electrostatic filter, if the unit is so equipped.)
 - There is risk of physical injury, electric shock, or product failure.

- If strange sounds, smell or smoke comes from product, immediately turn the breaker off or disconnect the power supply cable.
 - There is risk of electric shock or fire.
- Ventilate the product room from time to time when operating it together with a stove, or heating element etc.
 - Oxygen deficiency can occur and hence harm your health.
- Turn the main power off when cleaning or repairing the product.
 - There is risk of electric shock.
- Take care to ensure that nobody especially kids could step on or fall onto the unit.
 - This could result in personal injury and product damage.
- Take care to ensure that power cable could not be pulled out or damaged during operation.
 - There is risk of fire or electric shock.
- Do not touch any electric part with wet hands. you should be cut power before touching electric part.
 - There is risk of electric shock or fire.
- Do not touch refrigerant pipe and water pipe or any internal parts while the unit is operating or immediately after operation.
 - There is risk of burns or frostbite, personal injury.
- If you touch the pipe or internal parts, you should be wear protection or wait time to return to normal temperature.
 - Otherwise , it may cause burns or frostbite, personal injury.
- Do not touch leaked refrigerant directly.
 - There is risk of frostbite.
- Make sure to install mixing valve (field supply). The mixing valve is setting the water temperature. The hot water temperature maximum values shall be selected according to the applicable legislation.
- Do not heated to a temperature of more than provided by the product.
 - Otherwise, it may cause fire or damage of product.
- This appliance is intended to be used by expert or trained users in shops, in light industry and on farms, or for commercial use by lay persons.
- Do not step on the unit and do not put anything on it.
It may cause an injury through dropping of the unit or falling down.

- Use a vacuum pump or Inert (nitrogen) gas when doing leakage test or air purge. Do not compress air or Oxygen and Do not use Flammable gases. Otherwise, it may cause fire or explosion.
 - There is the risk of death, injury, fire or explosion.
- The appliance shall be stored in a well-ventilated area where the room size corresponds to the room area as specified for operation.
- The appliance shall be stored in a room without continuously operating open flames (for example an operating gas appliance) and ignition sources (for example an operating electric heater).
- The appliance shall be stored so as to prevent mechanical damage from occurring.(for R32)
- Any person who is involved with working on or breaking into a refrigerant circuit should hold a current valid certificate from an industry-accredited assessment authority, which authorises their competence to handle refrigerants safely in accordance with an industry recognised assessment specification.(for R32)
- Keep any required ventilation openings clear of obstruction.(for R32)
- Servicing shall only be performed as recommended by the equipment manufacturer. Maintenance and repair requiring the assistance of other skilled personnel shall be carried out under the supervision of the person competent in the use of flammable refrigerants. (for R32)
- The appliance shall be stored in a well-ventilated area where the room size corresponds to the room area as specified for operation. (for R32)
- The appliance shall be stored in a room without continuously operating open flames (for example an operating gas appliance) and ignition sources (for example an operating electric heater). (for R32)
- The appliance shall be installed in accordance with the national wiring regulation.

CAUTION

- Two or more people must lift and transport the product.
 - Avoid personal injury.
- Do not install the product where it will be exposed to sea wind (salt spray) directly.
 - It may cause corrosion on the product.

- Keep level even when installing the product.
 - To avoid vibration or noise.
- Do not install the product where the noise or hot air from the unit could damage or disturb the neighborhoods.
 - It may cause a problem for your neighbors and hence dispute.
- Always check for gas (refrigerant) leakage after installation or repair of product.
 - Low refrigerant levels may cause failure of product.
- Do not use the product for special purposes, such as preserving foods, works of art, etc. It is a consumer AWHP, not a precision refrigeration system.
 - There is risk of damage or loss of property.
- Do not block the inlet or outlet of air flow.
 - It may cause product failure.
- Use a soft cloth to clean. Do not use harsh detergents, solvents or splashing water etc.
 - There is risk of fire, electric shock, or damage to the plastic parts of the product.
- Do not step on or put anything on the product.
 - There is risk of personal injury and failure of product.
- Do not insert hands or other objects through the air inlet or outlet while the product is operating.
 - There are sharp and moving parts that could cause personal injury.
- Be cautious when unpacking and installing the product.
 - Sharp edges could cause injury.
- If the refrigerant gas leaks during the repair, do not touch the leaking refrigerant gas.
 - The refrigerant gas can cause frostbite (cold burn).
- Do not tilt the unit when removing or uninstalling it.
 - The condensed water inside can spill.
- Do not mix air or gas other than the specified refrigerant used in the system.
 - If air enters the refrigerant system, an excessively high pressure results, causing equipment damage or injury.
- If the refrigerant gas leaks during the installation, ventilate the area immediately.
 - Otherwise it can be harmful for your health.

- Dismantling the unit, treatment of the refrigerant oil and eventual parts should be done in accordance with local and national standards.
- Do not expose your skin or kids or plants to the cool or hot air draft.
 - This could harm to your health.
- Use a firm stool or ladder when cleaning, maintaining or repairing the product at an height.
 - Be careful and avoid personal injury.
- The hot water may not be available immediately, during disinfection operation or depending on the amount of hot water.
- During floor heating operation it is important to limit the minimum/maximum water temperature.
- If anyone other than a licensed Professional installs, repairs, or alters LG Electronics Air Conditioning Products, the warranty is voided.
 - All costs associated with repair are then the full responsibility of the owner.
- Do not install the unit in potentially explosive atmospheres.
- Refrigerants are pre-charged in the factory to the outdoor unit. Additional refrigerants need to be charged depending on the length and size of pipe.

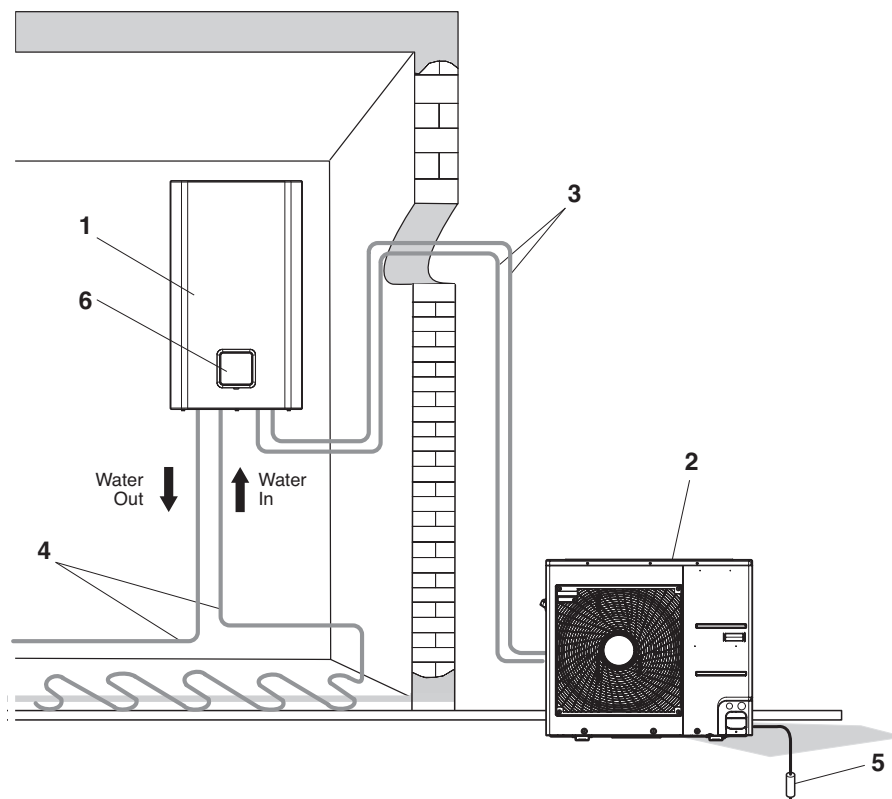
This appliance is not intended for use by persons (including children) with reduced physical, sensory or mental capabilities or lack of experience and knowledge, unless they have been given supervision or instruction concerning use of the appliance by a person responsible for their safety.

Children should be supervised to ensure that they do not play with the appliance.

This appliance can be used by children aged from 8 years and above and persons with reduced physical, sensory or mental capabilities or lack of experience and knowledge if they have been given supervision or instruction concerning use of the appliance in a safe way and understand the hazards involved. Children shall not play with the appliance. Cleaning and user maintenance shall not be made by children without supervision.

PRODUCT INTRODUCTION

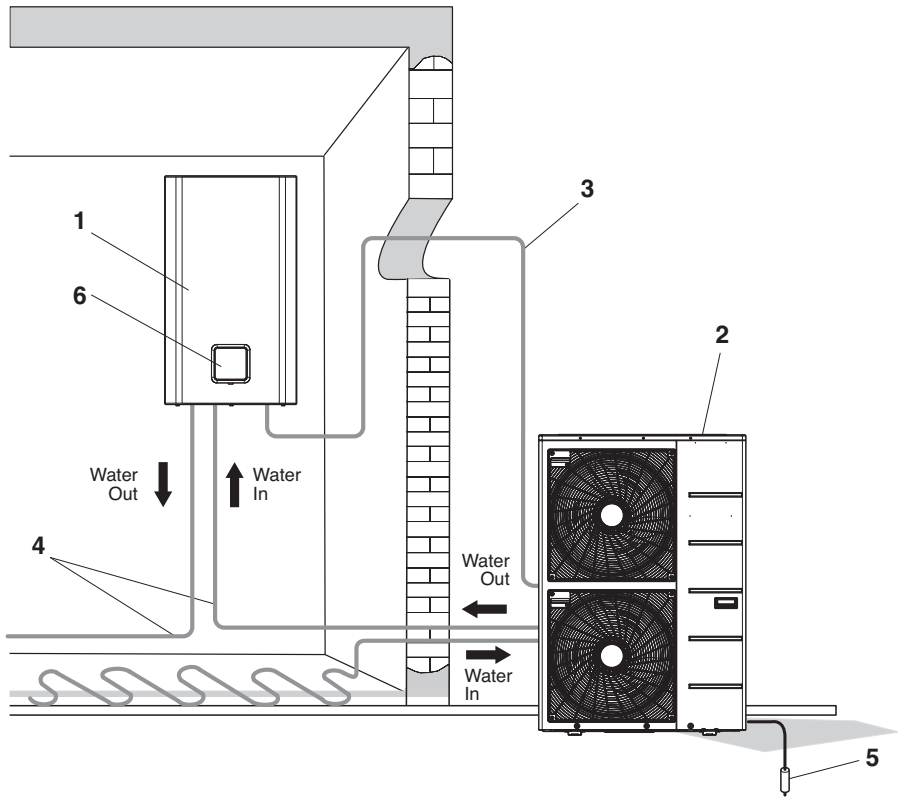
Typical installation scene (For Split)



1. Indoor unit
2. Outdoor unit
3. Refrigerant pipe and connecting cable
4. Water pipe
5. Ground wire to ground outdoor unit to prevent electrical shocks.
6. Remote controller

*The shape of products can be changed according to the model capacity and type.

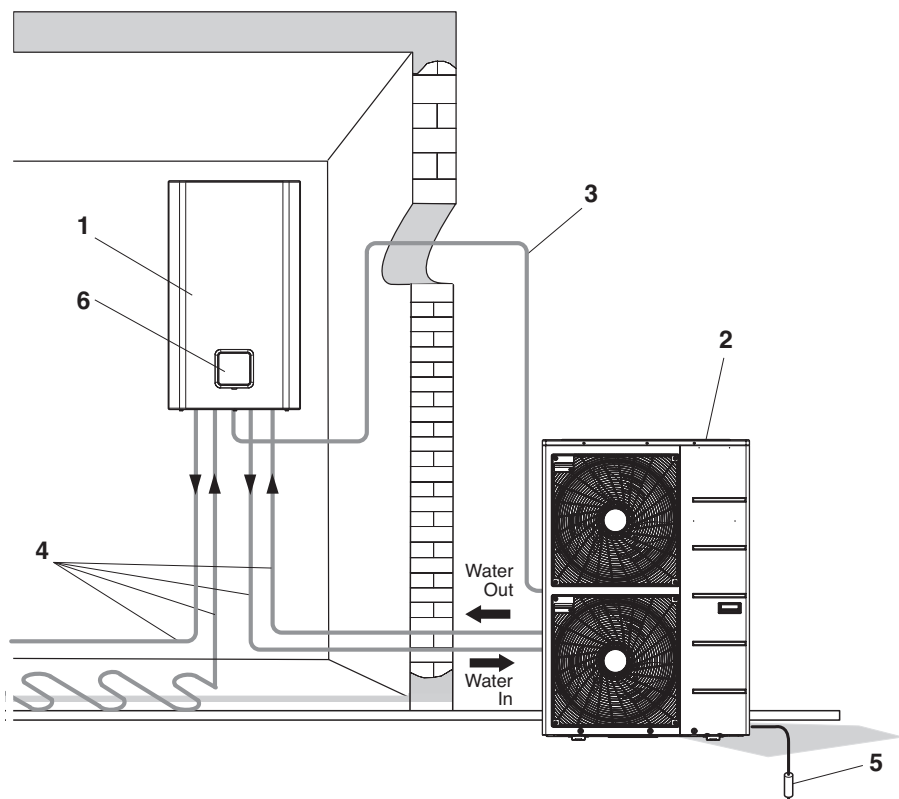
Typical installation scene (For Hydrosplit 1-Pipe)



1. Indoor unit
2. Outdoor unit
3. Connecting cable
4. Water pipe
5. Ground wire to ground outdoor unit to prevent electrical shocks.
6. Remote controller

*The shape of products can be changed according to the model capacity and type.

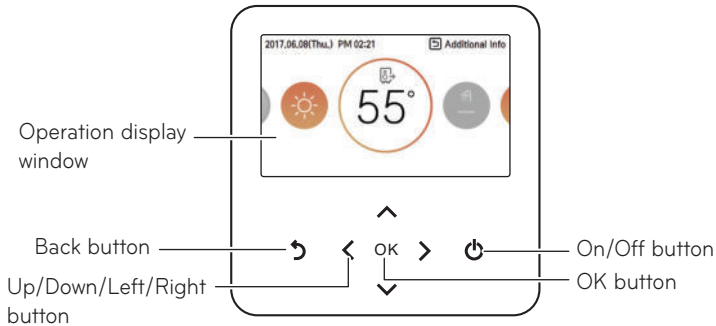
Typical installation scene (For Hydrosplit 2-Pipe)



1. Indoor unit
2. Outdoor unit
3. Connecting cable
4. Water pipe
5. Ground wire to ground outdoor unit to prevent electrical shocks.
6. Remote controller

*The shape of products can be changed according to the model capacity and type.

Remote controller



Operation display window	Operation and Settings status display
Back button	When you move to the previous stage from the menu's setting stage
Up/down/left/right button	When you change the menu's setting value
OK button	When you save the menu's setting value
On/Off button	When you turn ON/OFF the AWHP

NOTE

- The remote controller is located on the indoor unit from factory. It can be repositioned at living space using cover plate accessory kit.
- Some functions may not be operated and displayed depending on the product type.
- The actual product can be different from above contents depending upon model type.
- When using simultaneous operation system, whenever press remote controller button, system will approximately operate after 1~2 minutes.

Related Information

Refrigerant			R410A	R32
Max allowable pressure	High side [MPa]		4.2	4.32
	Low side [MPa]		2.4	2.4
Operating temperature of leaving water (Min. ~ Max.)	Heating [°C]	For Fan coil unit / Radiator	15 ~ 57	15 ~ 65 ¹⁾
		For under floor	15 ~ 57	15 ~ 65 ¹⁾
	Cooling [°C]	For Fan coil unit	5 ~ 27	5 ~ 27
		For under floor	16 ~ 27	16 ~ 27
	DHW		15 ~ 80	15 ~ 80
Inlet water pressure [MPa] (Min. ~ Max.)			0.03 ~ 0.3	0.03 ~ 0.3

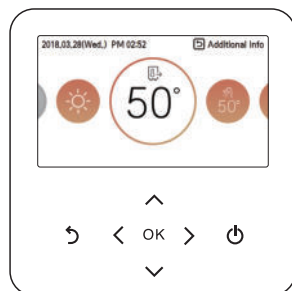
¹⁾ For R32 split 4,6kW Model : 15 ~ 55 °C

- Energy Labels and Product Fiches for all possible combinations can be found at <https://www.lg.com/global/support/cedoc/cedoc>. Search for outdoor unit name in cedoc page.
- Additional Information : Serial number is refer to the barcode on the product.

DESCRIPTION OF THE OPERATION

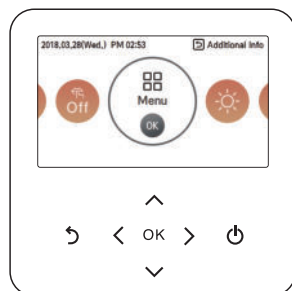
Main screen

In the main screen, press [$\leftarrow$, $\rightarrow$ (left/right)] button to select the category to set, and you can control by pressing [$\wedge$, $\vee$ (up/down)] button.

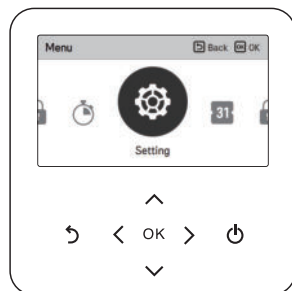


Menu screen

In the main screen, press [$\leftarrow$, $\rightarrow$ (left/right)] button to select the menu and press [OK] button to move to menu screen.

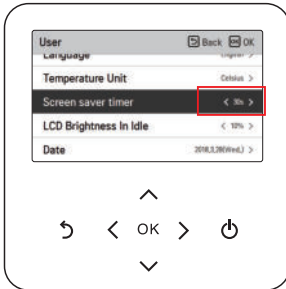


In the menu screen, press [$\leftarrow$, $\rightarrow$ (left/right)] button to select the category to set, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.



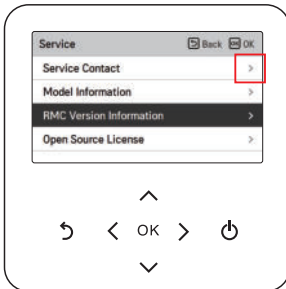
Setting screen

Select the category to set using [$\wedge$, $\vee$ (up/down)] button.



In each detail screen of the menu, as in the box in the left figure, when "<,>" icons are displayed at the same time, you can immediately apply the setting value by pressing [<, >(left/right)] button.

※ For the values that can be set in each category, refer to the detail manual for each function.



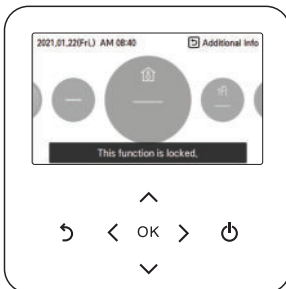
In each detail screen of the menu, as in the box in the left figure, if only ">" icon is displayed, you can move to the detail setting screen by pressing [>(right) or OK] button.

※ For the values that can be set in each category, refer to the detail manual for each function.

Popup screen

The toast message is the message displayed at the bottom of the screen when an operation is turned On/Off or if a function is set / canceled.

The popup message is mainly displayed when an error occurred in the product.



< Toast message >

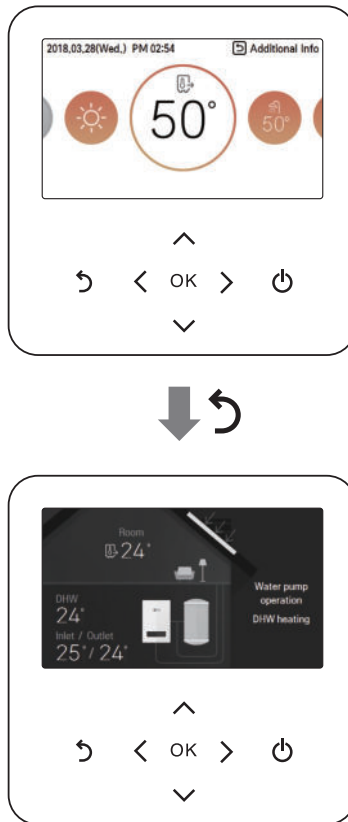


< Popup message >

Monitoring (For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series, For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)

In the main screen, you can enter the monitoring screen by pressing [Back] button
In the monitoring screen, you can check the following information,

- The room temperature
- The water inlet / outlet temperature
- The water pump operation
- The solar heat temperature



Returning to the screen

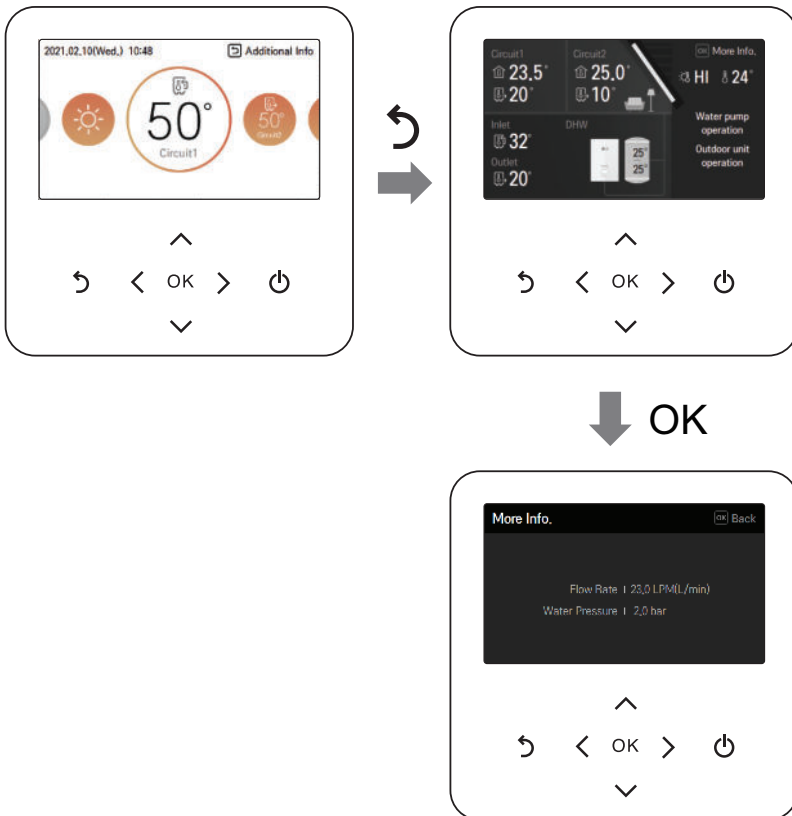
In the main screen, after moving to the category by pressing [<, >(left/right)] button, if there is no remote controller operation, after 10 seconds, it returns to the main screen basic position. (basic position: indoor temperature display part)

In the screens except the main screen, if there is no remote controller operation for 1 minute, it moves to the main screen.

Monitoring (For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit)

In the main screen, you can enter the monitoring screen by pressing [Back] button
In the monitoring screen, you can check the following information,

- The room temperature
- The water inlet / outlet temperature
- The water pump operation
- The water flow rate
- The water pressure
- The solar heat temperature
- The outdoor temperature



Returning to the screen

In the main screen, after moving to the category by pressing [<, >(left/right)] button, if there is no remote controller operation, after 10 seconds, it returns to the main screen basic position. (basic position: indoor temperature display part)

In the screens except the main screen, if there is no remote controller operation for 1 minute, it moves to the main screen.

OPERATION SETTING

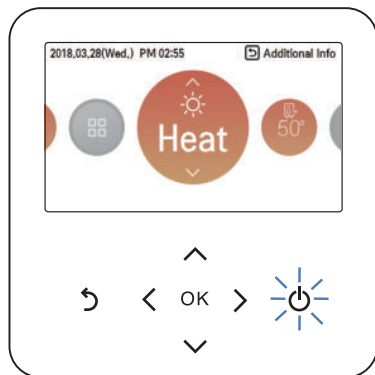
On / Off

THERMA V. will be turned on or off.

Press the remote controller's  (On/Off) button.

- If the product is in operation, On/Off button will be illuminated.

If the product is in off, On/Off button backlight will be off.



Operation mode

You can easily control the desired operation mode.

In the main screen, press [$\leftarrow$, $\rightarrow$] (left/right) button to select the operation mode or home leave or hold category, and press [$\wedge$, $\vee$] (up/down) button to set the operation mode.

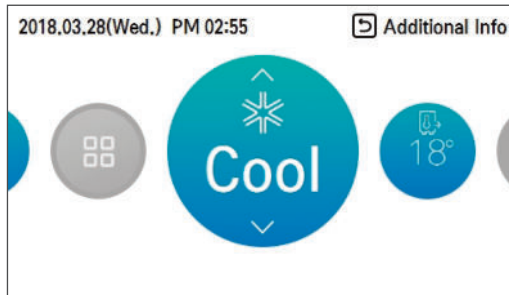
※ Some products may not support some operation modes.

Mode	Description
Cool	Cool the room to the desired temperature. Activated when No. 4 ON of indoor unit PCB DIP SW 2. (Refer to installer setting.)
Heat	Heats the room to the desired room temperature.
AI / Auto	The product automatically provides the appropriate fan speed based on the temperature of the room.

Cooling operation

Cooling operation's minimum setting temperature is 5 °C.

- The desired temperature can be controlled in the units of 1 °C.
- Set the desired temperature lower than the water temperature.
- water temperature is displayed on the default screen of the remote controller.
- If the setpoint is set higher than the water temperature, then the unit will remain in the cool mode but will not begin to cool the water temperature exceeds the setpoint.
- If your unit is operating in cooling mode and you press the [On/Off] button the cooling operation will shut off.



NOTE

Activated when No. 4 ON of indoor unit PCB DIP SW 2 (Refer to installer setting)

What is 3 minutes delay function?

After the cooling stops, when the product is started right away, the reason that the cold water does not come out is that it is the function to protect the compressor.

The compressor starts after 3 minutes and the cold water comes out.

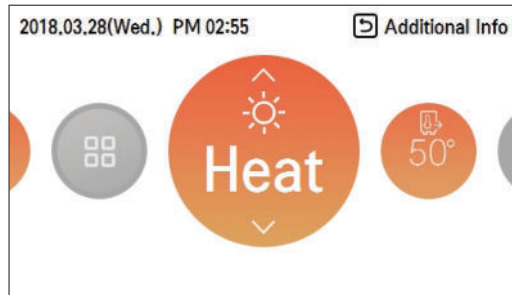
NOTE

The compressor starts after 3 minutes and the cold water comes out.

In the cooling operation, you can select the desired temperature in the range of 5 °C~27 °C. The favorable temperature difference between the water inlet temperature and outlet temperature is 5 °C.

Heating operation

- The desired temperature can be controlled in the units of 1 °C.
- Set the desired temperature higher than the water temperature.
- Water temperature is displayed on the default screen of the remote controller.
- When the desired temperature is set lower than the water temperature, warm water doesn't come out.
- If your unit is operating in heating mode and you press the [On/Off] button the heating operation will shut off.



NOTE

In the heating operation, temperature setting range vary by model.

- For R32 : You can select the desired temperature in the range of 15 °C ~ 65¹⁾ °C.
- For R410A : You can select the desired temperature in the range of 15 °C ~ 57 °C.

1) For R32 split 4,6kW Model : 55 °C

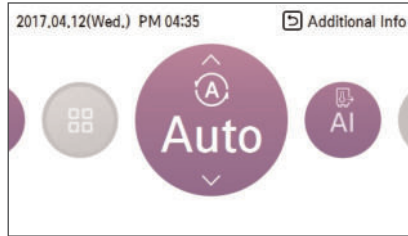
NOTE

- When the E/heater is not used, the minimum temperature of the water temperature can be set from 34 °C to 20 °C.

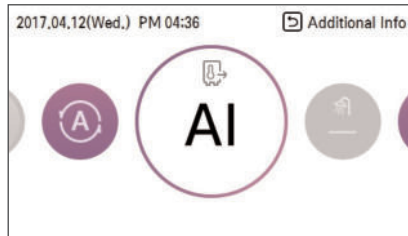
AI / Auto operation

In order to save energy and to give highest comfort, setting temperature will follow outside temperature. If outdoor temperature decreases, heating capacity for the house will increase automatically in order to keep same room temperature. All parameters will be set by installer during start-up procedure and will be adapted to the site characteristic.

1. Select AI / Auto mode.



2. Select the desired temperature category



3. Adjust the desired temperature level by press [∧, ∨ (up/down)] button.



NOTE

The set temperature can be changed from 5°C to -5°C in 1°C.

<Temperature adjust step (unit : °C)>

-5, -4, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5

← Cold

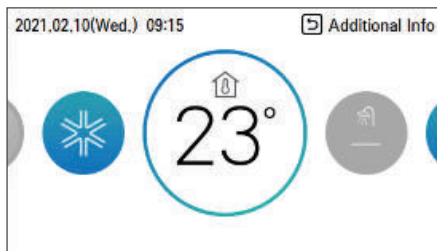
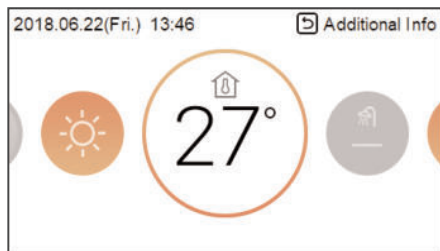
Hot →

TEMPERATURE SETTING

Controlling desired temperature

You can easily control to the desired temperature.

- In the main screen, press [<, > (left/right)] button to select the desired temperature category, and press [Δ, ▽ (up/down)] button to set the desired temperature.
 - In the cooling, heating, and AI/auto mode, the desired temperature control is possible.



Mode	Description
Room temperature	Room temperature setting is available when remote room air sensor (sold separately) is installed
Room1 & Room2 temperature	Temperature of Room 1 and Room 2 can be set respectively, when 2nd circuit option is activated in installer mode.
Leaving water temperature	If the desired temperature is lower than the water temperature, the heating is not performed. Set the desired temperature higher than the water temperature.
DHW tank temperature	DHW tank temperature setting is available when DHW tank is installed.
Water inlet temperature	This operation is changed to the temperature sensor only, the inlet temperature sensor, and temperature control logic is the same as the leaving water temperature operation.
Room temperature + Water temperature	Room temperature setting is available when remote room air sensor (sold separately) is installed. If the desired temperature is lower than the water temperature, the heating is not performed. Set the desired temperature higher than the water temperature.

NOTE

The function can be activated according to the installer setting.

NOTE

Room 1 = Circuit 2 = Mixing circuit

Room 2 = Circuit 1 = Direct circuit

Select Temperature Sensor

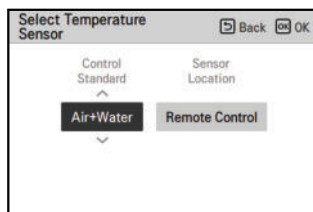
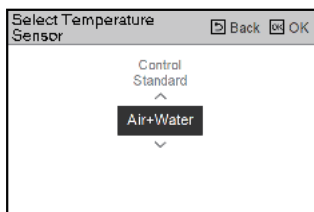
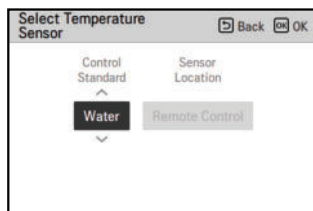
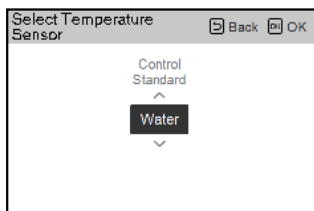
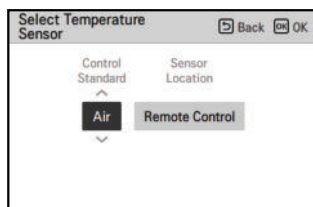
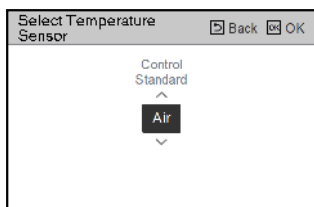
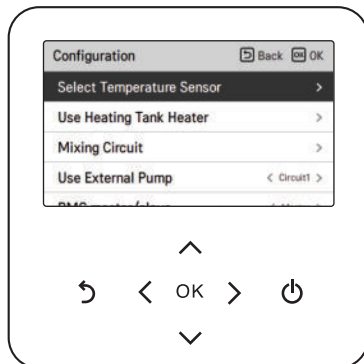
There are 3 sensor options, air only, water only, and air+water in installer mode.

Sensor Locations are not available on all models.

(For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series)
(For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)

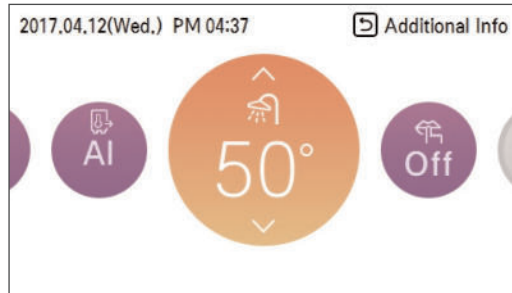


(For Split Indoor unit 5 Series)
(For Hydrosplit)



DHW heating operation

Function to set whether or not to use a installed DHW tank



NOTE

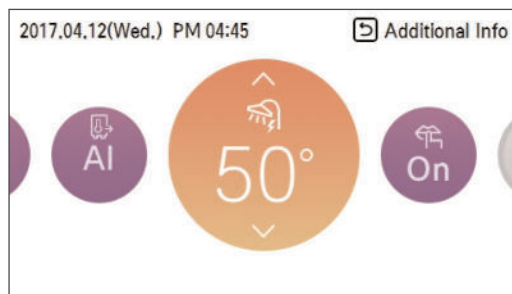
- This function is not used when the DHW tank is not installed.
- If you want to know more information, refer function on installation information section.

Quick DHW tank heating

If there is urgent DHW heating demand, Quick DHW Tank Heating mode can be used to reduce the time to reach target DHW tank temperature by forcibly turning on DHW tank heater.

After reaching target DHW tank temperature or by user's input to stop, Quick DHW Tank Heating mode will be finished.

1. Press down [Back] button for a second focused on DHW Heating Operation.



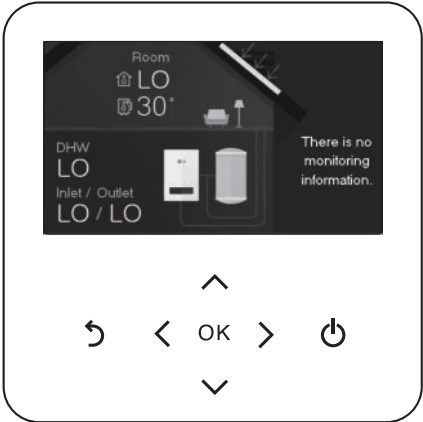
View temperature

General mode

You can check the current temperature.

- In the main screen, you can enter the monitoring screen by pressing [Back] button.

(For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series)
(For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)



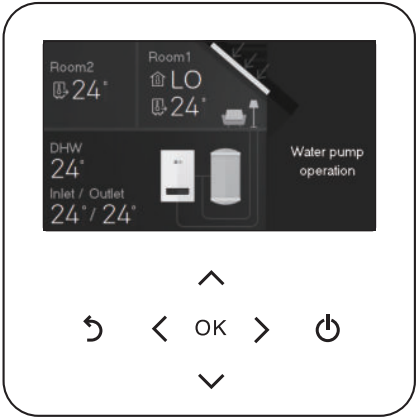
(For Split Indoor unit 5 Series)
(For Hydrosplit)



Mode	Description
Room temperature	View room air temperature
Inlet temperature	View inlet water temperature
Outlet temperature	View outlet water temperature
DHW temperature	View DHW temperature (Only displayed when set to DHW heating mode)
Solar heat temperature	View solar thermal system temperature (Only displayed when set to DHW heating mode and solar thermal heating mode)
Outdoor temperature	View outdoor temperature

2nd circuit mode

(For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series)
(For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)



(For Split Indoor unit 5 Series)
(For Hydrosplit)

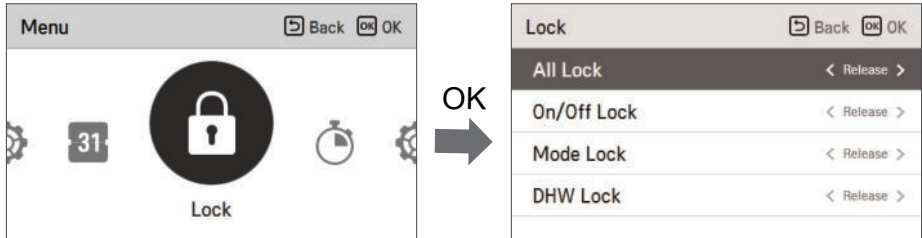


Mode	Description
Room 1 temperature	View room 1 temperature
Room 2 temperature	View room 2 temperature
Inlet temperature	View inlet water temperature
Outlet temperature	View outlet water temperature
DHW temperature	View DHW temperature (Only displayed when set to DHW heating mode)
Solar heat temperature	View solar thermal system temperature (Only displayed when set to DHW heating mode and solar thermal heating mode)
Outdoor temperature	View outdoor temperature

LOCK SETTING

How to enter Lock setting

- In the menu screen, press [←,→(left/right)] button to select “lock setting” category, and press [OK] button to move to the lock setting list screen.
- In the lock setting list, if you press [△,▽(up/down)] button, you can turn on/off the corresponding lock function.



Lock setting – all, on/off, mode, DHW lock

- It is the function to lock the button operation of the remote controller so that children or other persons cannot use it without permission.
- It is the function to limit the desired temperature range that can be set in the wired remote controller.

Mode	Description
All Lock	It locks all button operation of the remote controller.
On/Off Lock	It locks the On/Off button operation of the remote controller.
Mode Lock	It locks the operation mode button operation of the remote controller
DHW Lock	It locks the DHW On/Off button operation of the remote controller.

NOTE

- DHW lock is not used when the DHW tank is not installed.
- If you want to know more information, refer function on installation information section.

NOTE

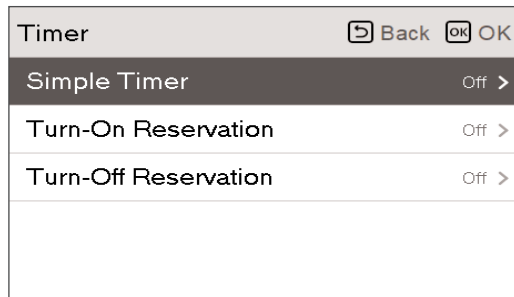
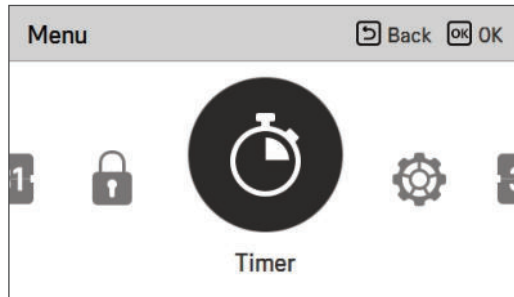
In the central controller, when the central control temperature range lock is set, the wired remote controller's temperature lock setting is cleared.

The temperature change by external equipment is reflected regardless of the remote controller temperature range lock.

TIMER SETTING

Timer entrance and setting method

- In the menu screen, press [<, > (left/right)] button to select the timer category, and press [OK] button to move to the timer setting list screen.
- In the timer setting list screen, press [^, v (up/down)] button to select the timer to set, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.
- After setting the value, when you press [OK] button, the timer is activated.
- After setting the value, if you press [Back] button, the changed value will not be applied.



Simple Timer

You can easily set the timer in the range of 1~7 hours in the units of 1 hour.

Timer	⏮ Back	OK
Simple Timer	On	>
Turn-On Reservation	Off	>
Turn-Off Reservation	Off	>



Simple Timer	⏮ Back	OK
^ 1 v hours, left to stop. ▶ Start		

NOTE

If the product operation is On, the easy timer turns off the operation after the corresponding time.

If the product operation is Off, the easy timer turns on the operation after the corresponding time.

If the easy timer operation is turned On/Off before the timer operation, the set timer will be cleared.

Turn-On Reservation

The product is automatically turned On at the set timer time.

Timer	Back	OK
Simple Timer	Off	>
Turn-On Reservation	On	>
Turn-Off Reservation	Off	>

It provides 2 Time formats, 12Hours(AM/PM) or 24Hours reference.

Turn-On Reservation Back OK

Minute

14 : 00 Start

Turn-On Reservation Back OK

AM/PM Minute

AM 12 : 00 Start

NOTE

Even if the Turn-on Reservation operation is turned On/Off after the setting and before the timer operation, the set timer is not cleared.

Turn-Off Reservation

The product is automatically turned Off at the set timer time.

Timer	Back OK
Simple Timer	Off >
Turn-On Reservation	Off >
Turn-Off Reservation	On >

It provides 2 Time formats, 12 Hours(AM/PM) or 24 Hours reference.

Turn-Off Reservation Back OK

<

23

>

:

Minute

00

▶ Start

Turn-Off Reservation Back OK

<

PM

>

:

Hour

11

:

Minute

00

▶ Start

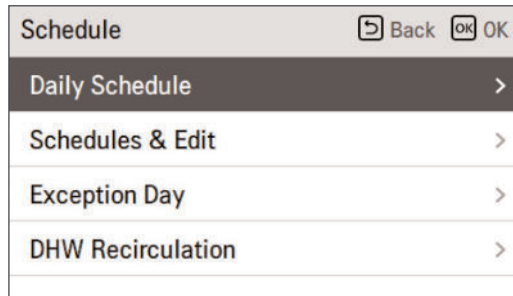
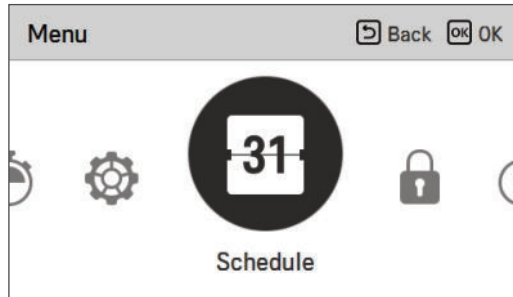
NOTE

Even if the Turn-off Reservation operation is turned On/Off after the setting and before the timer operation, the set timer is not cleared.

SCHEDULE SETTING

How to enter schedule

- In the menu screen, press [←,→(left/right)] button so select the schedule category, and press [OK] button to move to the schedule setting list screen.
- In the schedule setting list screen, press [↑,↓ (up/down)] button to select the menu to set, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.
- There are 4 options in schedule formula ,depending on product function.
 - Room
 - Hot water / DHW
 - Heater of hot water tank / DHW heater
 - DHW recirculation



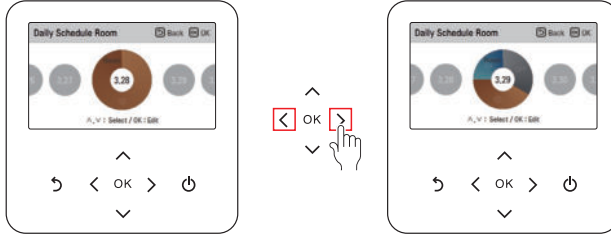
NOTE

Even though there is a heater of hot water tank schedule option, it cannot be activated in case of disinfection setting.

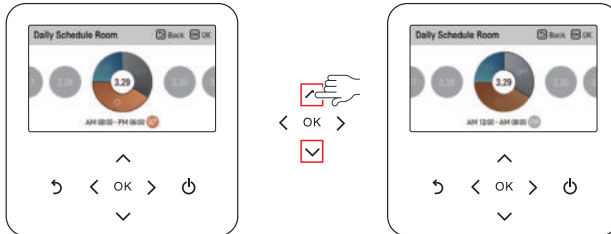
Daily schedule

It is the function that can check the status of the timer (schedule) saved in the remote controller.

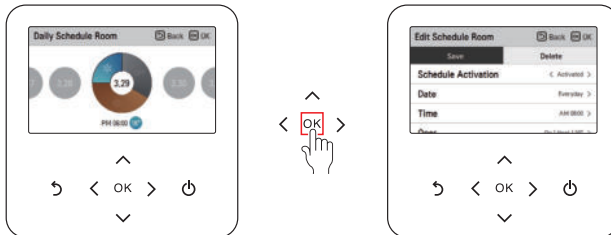
- In the schedule list, select the daily schedule status category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail daily schedule status screen.
- You can use the remote controller's [<, > (left/right)] button to check the timer information of other dates.



- You can use the remote controller's [^, v (up/down)] button to check the corresponding date's other timer information.



- Select the timer information, and press [OK] button to move to the corresponding timer's edit screen.



NOTE

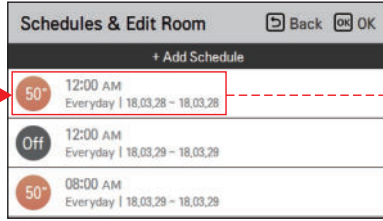
In the daily schedule status screen, even if the timer (schedule) is set, if the corresponding date is designated as an exception date, the schedule will not be performed.

Less than 5 schedules per day is recommended.

Schedules & Edit

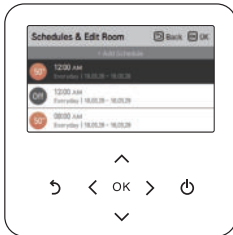
It is the function that can check the status of the timer (schedule) saved in the remote controller.

- In the schedule list, select the daily schedule status category, and press [OK] button to move to the daily schedule status detail screen.
- You can use the remote controller's [←,→(left/right)] button to check other date's timer information.

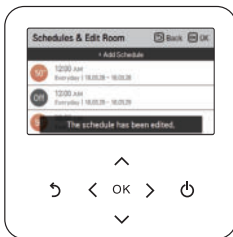


You can check the set timer's operation information (operation On/Off, operation mode, desired temperature), timer time, period, and day of week.

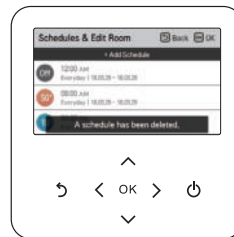
- You can edit the saved schedule's timer information.
 - Select the schedule to edit using [↑, ↓ (up/down)] button, and press [OK] button to move to the edit screen.



- Select the timer information, and press [OK] button to move to the corresponding timer's edit screen.



< If schedule is changed >



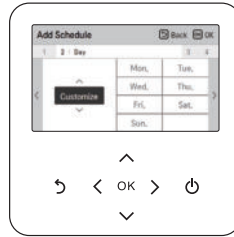
< If schedule is deleted >

Schedules & Edit – Add schedule

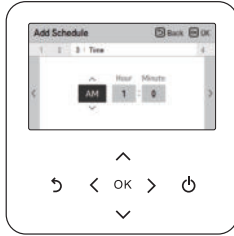
Description of each stage in Add schedule



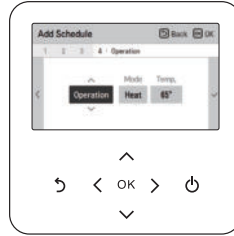
Stage 1. Period setting



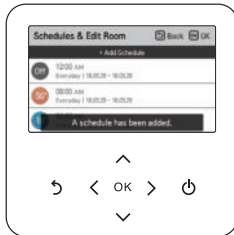
Stage 2. Day of week setting



Stage 3. Time setting



Stage 4. Operation setting



Add schedule is completed

In 'Stage 1', it sets the period to perform the timer.

In 'Stage 2', it sets the day of week to perform the timer.

- You can select 'Everyday / Weekend / Weekdays / Individual selection'.

In 'Stage 3', it sets the start time for the timer.

In 'Stage 4', it sets the timer operation information.

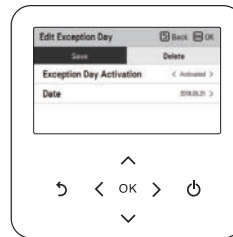
- If 'Stop' is selected, you cannot set the mode / temperature.

When stages 1~4 are completed, along with the message of 'schedule is added', it moves to View and edit schedule screen.

Exception Day

It is the function to automatically stop the operation on the set timer day.

- In the schedule list, select the exception day category, and press [OK] button to move to the Exception day designation detail screen.
- In the exception day, you can check, and add/change/delete the exception day information saved in the remote controller.
 - To add an exception day, in the Exception day registration detail screen, designate year/month/day, and press [OK] button to save the Exception day.
 - Select the Exception day to edit using [∧, ∨ (up/down)] button, and press [OK] button to move to the edit screen.

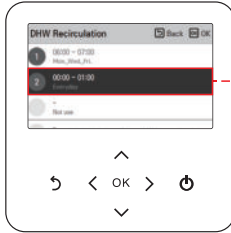


- In the exception day edit screen, you can check, delete/change the corresponding exception day's setting contents.
- When you change the exception day information, you need to save it after the change.

DHW Recirculation Schedule (For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, Hydrosplit 2-Pipe)

It is the function that can check the status of DHW recirculation timer (schedule) saved in the remote controller.

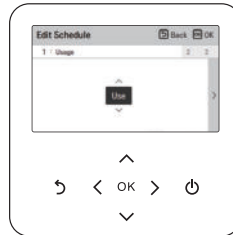
- In the schedule list, select the DHW recirculation schedule status category, and press [OK] button to move to the daily schedule status detail screen.



You can check the set
Timer time, period, and day of week.

- DHW recirculation schedule can be set up to 4 times.

- Select the timer information, and press [OK] button to move to the corresponding timer's edit screen.

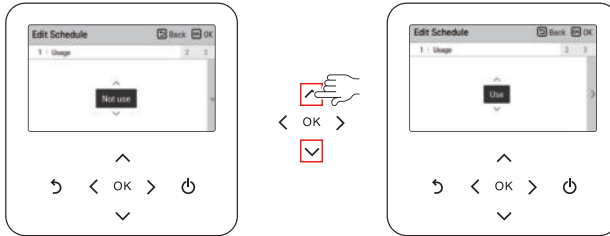


NOTE

This function is not default.
It can be activated, after setting value in installer mode.

Description of each stage in Add schedule

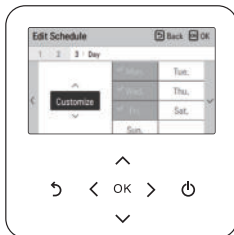
- Stage 1. Usage setting
 - It sets the use of the timer setting.
 - Select 'Use' to move on the the next stage



- Stage 2. Time setting setting
 - It sets the period to perform the timer.
 - The end time cannot be earlier than the start time.



- Stage 3. Day of week setting
 - It sets the day of week to perform the timer.
 - You can select 'Customize / Weekend / Weekday / Everyday'.



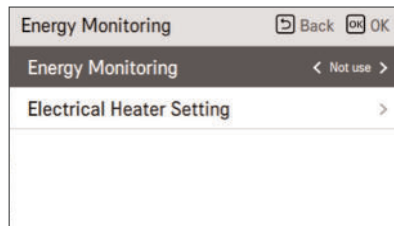
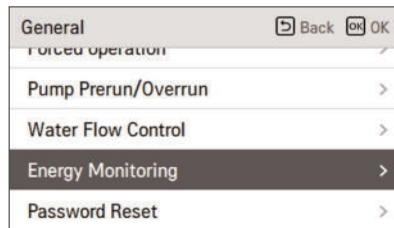
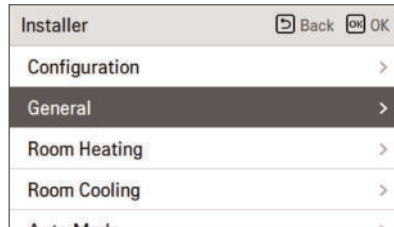
NOTE

If you select 'Not use' again in stage 1 after completing the schedule setting, the timer does not work. but the setting value remains, and when selecting 'Use' again, the same setting value can be used.

ENERGY MONITORING SETTING (For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, Hydrosplit 2-Pipe)

Energy Monitoring Setting

It is the function that can check the status of energy and power on screen. It calculates power data to create data for energy monitoring. This function can be activated in installer mode.



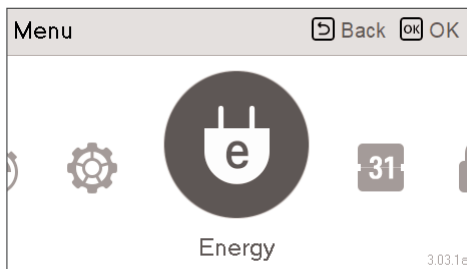
If the heater of the unit is used, the heater power can be calculated after setting the heater information on remote controller

NOTE

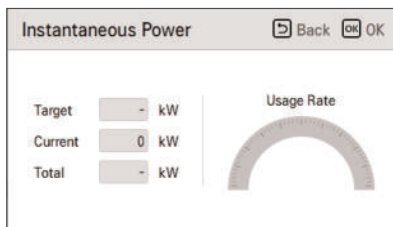
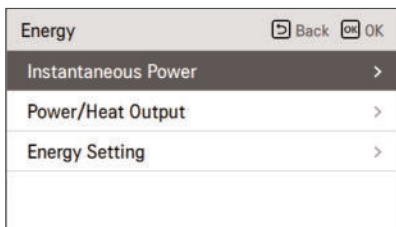
The accuracy of the energy monitoring functionality calculated by the product cannot be guaranteed. This function is not available when using ESS

Information of Energy Monitoring

It provides useful information on the amount of energy and power during the week/month/year. Opening "Energy" option, these are presented on screen.

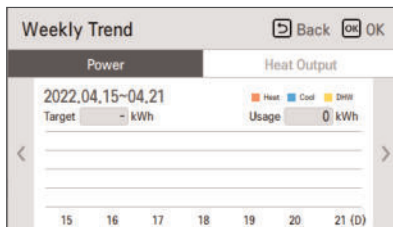
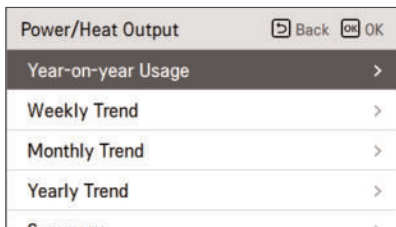


Instantaneous Power



Power / Heat Output

The information includes instantaneous power as well as power usage /heat output produced and up to annual trend.



NOTE

The calculated produced heat output and power are an estimation, the accuracy cannot be guaranteed.

The energy data should NOT be used for being invoiced or requested to government incentive and subsidy.

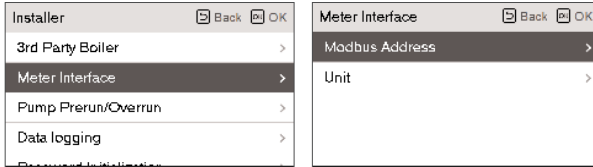
If use antifreeze agent(the antifreeze short pin(CN_ANTI_SW) must be open and switch No.8 in Option SW 1 must be on.), then the produced heat will NOT be calculated, nor will it be displayed on the user interface.

METER INTERFACE SETTING

Connection path of meter interface

It is the function that can check the status of energy and power on screen. It collects and calculates power or calorie data to create data for energy monitoring and energy warning alarm pop-ups. This function can be activated in installer mode.

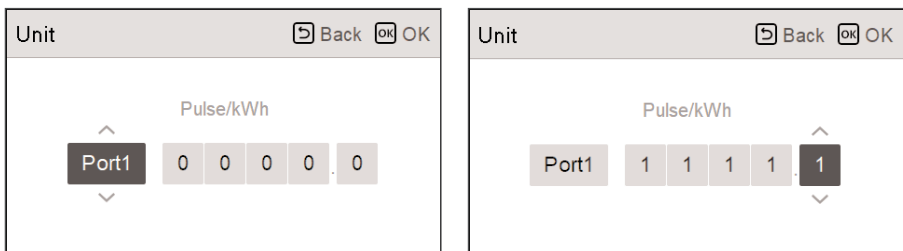
- For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series, For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series



- For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit

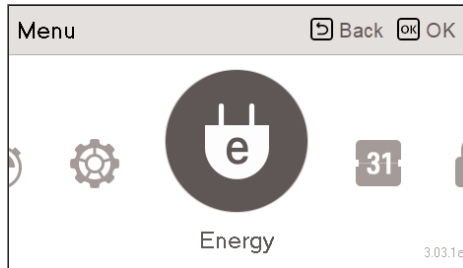


There are 2 options, modbus address and unit, in this function. Activating the modbus address option, you choose one address(B0 or B1) or don't use. Then, you set the port and specification in range of 0000.0~9999.9[pulse/kWh] as shown in the figure below.

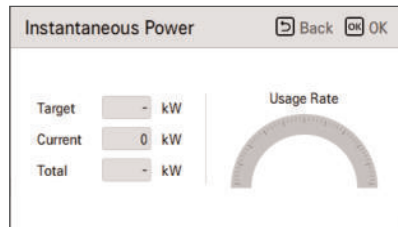
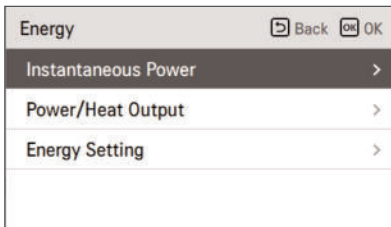


Information of meter interface

It provides useful information on the mount of energy and power during the week/month/year. Opening "Energy" option, these are presented on screen.

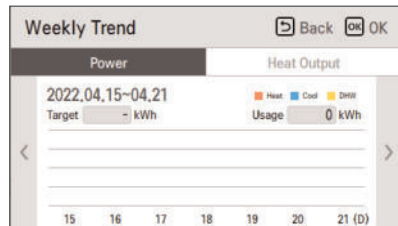
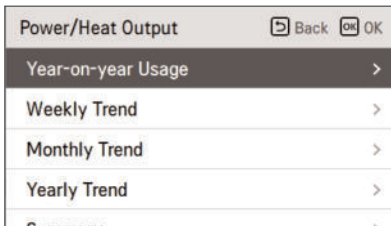


Instantaneous Power



Power / Heat Output

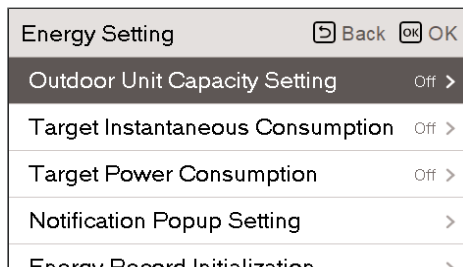
The information includes instantaneous power as well as power usage /heat output produced and up to annual trend.



Energy Setting

In addition, various energy settings are possible as shown below.

Current value reaches to defined target value, It alerts to you on display

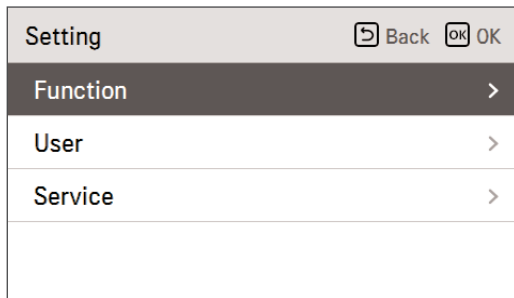
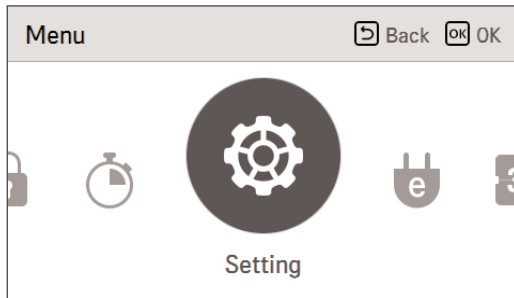


FUNCTION SETTING

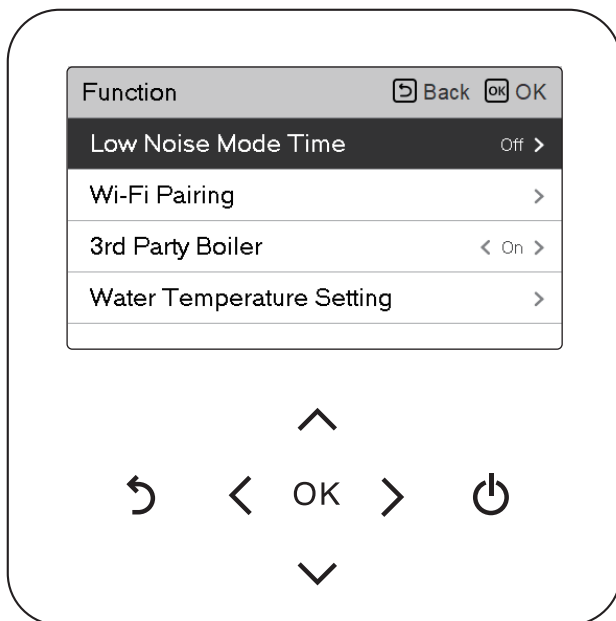
How to enter function setting

To enter the menu displayed at the bottom, you need to enter the function setting menu as follows.

- In the menu screen, press [<,>(left/right)] button to select the setting category, and press [OK] button to move to the setting list.
- In the setting list, select the function setting category, and press [OK] button to move to the function setting list.



Function setting

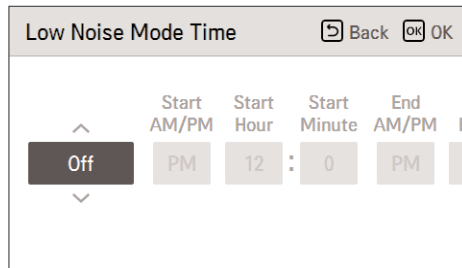
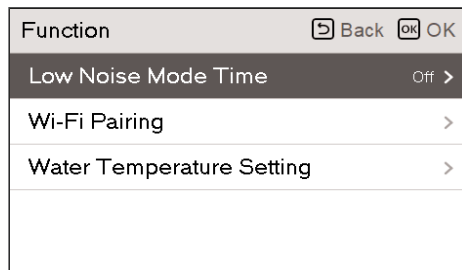


Menu	Description
Low Noise Mode Time	It is the function to set the start and end time of the outdoor unit's low noise mode operation.
Wi-Fi Pairing	It is the function to control remotely through network with indoor unit.
Water Temperature Setting	If you choose air+water temperature control way, this option is listed-up on function setting display. It is the function to set upper limit of water temperature while controlling the unit based on room air temperature.
3 rd Party Boiler	It is the function to linkage the 3rd party boiler. (This function can be activated, after setting every value in installer mode.)

Low Noise Mode Time

It is the function to set the start and end time of the outdoor unit's low noise mode operation.

- In the function setting list, select the Low Noise Mode Time category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.
 - After setting the start time and the end time, press [OK] button to move to the upper level list.
 - If the start time and the current time are the same, it enters the outdoor unit low noise operation mode, and in the monitoring screen, 'in outdoor unit low noise operation mode' message is displayed.
 - If the end time and the current time are the same, the outdoor unit low noise operation mode is cleared.



NOTE

Low noise mode time setting function can be set only when the installer setting's outdoor unit function M/S setting is set to "Master".

Low noise mode time setting function is only available in some products.



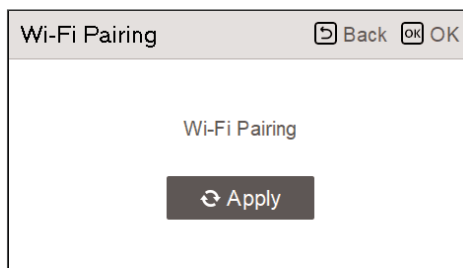
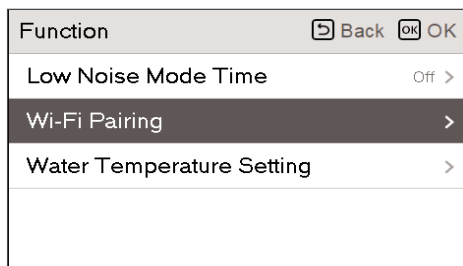
CAUTION

If the function is not used, please set it to Off.

When you enter the low noise operation, the cooling capacity may be degraded.

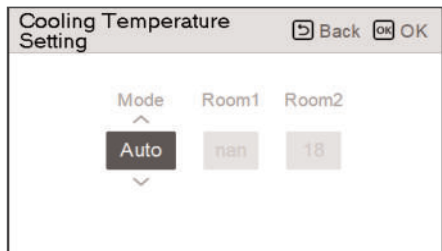
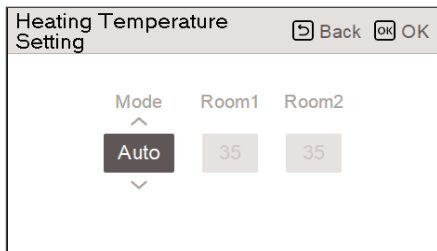
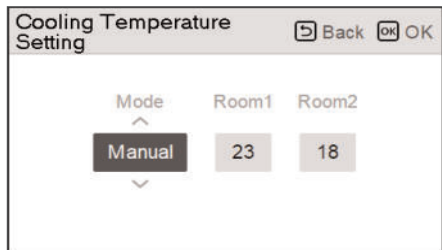
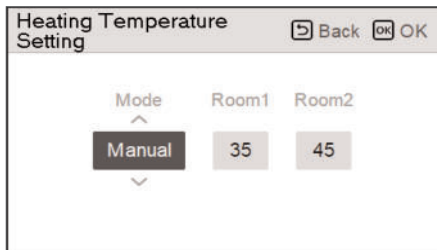
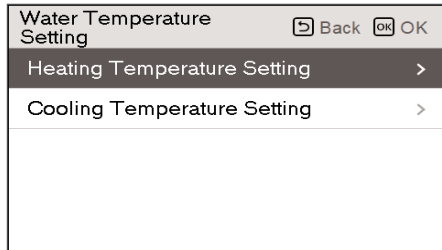
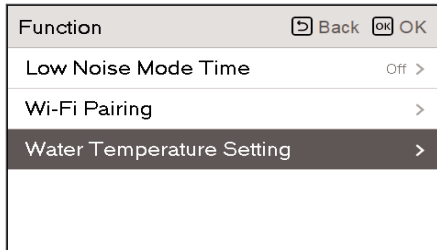
Wi-Fi Pairing

It is the function to control remotely through network with indoor unit.



Water Temperature Setting

If you choose air+water temperature control way, this option is listed-up on function setting display. It is the function to set upper limit of water temperature while controlling the unit based on room air temperature.



Value	Description
Manual	Manually setting water target temperature of heating and cooling mode
Auto	Automatically setting water target temperature depends on seasonal auto mode setting

NOTE

This function is not default.
It can be activated, after setting value in installer mode.
It can be different by model.

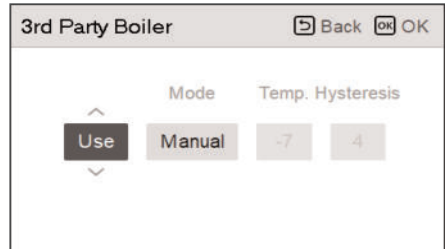
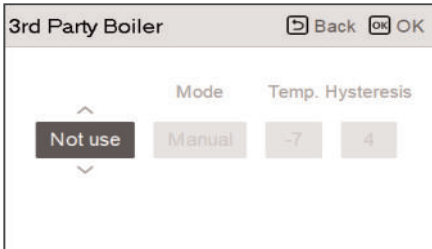
3rd Party Boiler

NOTE

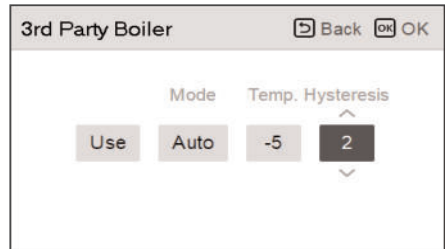
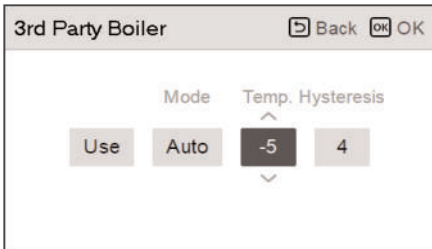
This function is not default.

It can be activated, after setting value in installer mode.

Function to set whether or not to use a installed 3rd party boiler function.



If the mode of this function is set to "Auto", you can set the activation temperature of the boiler and hysteresis, respectively.



As shown above, After every setting is completed in installer mode, 3rd party boiler option is activated in function list.

Function	Back OK
Low Noise Mode Time	Off >
Wi-Fi Pairing	>
3rd Party Boiler	< On >
Water Temperature Setting	>

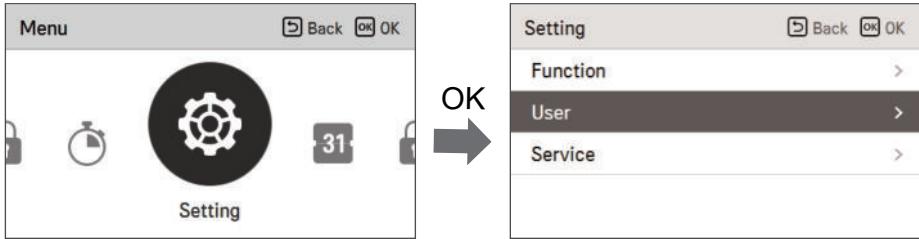
On/off mode of this option are opened by pushing "<" or ">" button simply and easily.

USER SETTING

How to enter user setting

To enter the menu displayed at the bottom, you need to enter the user setting menu as follows.

- Select the setting category, and press [OK] button to move to the setting list.
- Select the user setting category, and press [OK] button to move to the user setting list.



User Setting

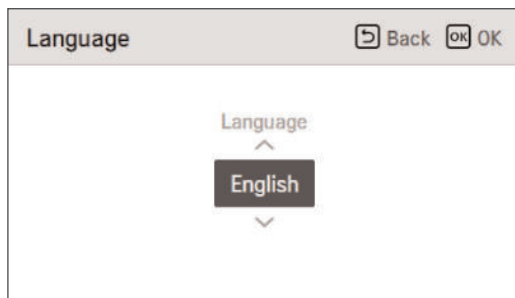
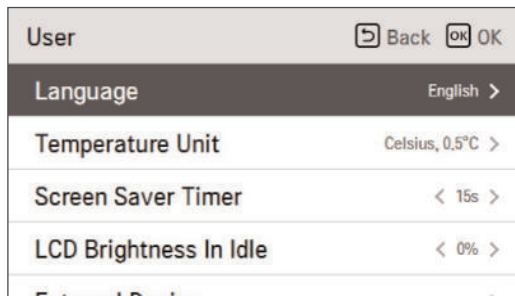
- You can set the product user functions.
- Some functions may not be available in some product types.

Menu	Description
Language	Set the language to be displayed on the remote controller.
Temperature Unit	Set the temperature unit displayed on the remote controller.
Screen Saver Timer	Adjust the screen Off time of the remote controller.
LCD Brightness In Idle	Adjust the remote controller's screen brightness.
Date	Set the date displayed on the remote controller.
Time	Set the time displayed on the remote controller.
Summer Time	Set the summer time in the remote controller.
Password	Set the password to prevent unauthorized change to remote controller settings.
Schedule Initialization / Schedule Reset	Initialize all timer settings in the remote controller.
Theme	Set the theme of the remote controller screen.
Auto return to main screen	Set the auto return mode.
System Reboot	Restart the remote controller.

Language

Set the language to be displayed on the remote controller.

- In the user setting list, select the language category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.
- After the setting, if you press [OK] button, the setting is saved and moves to the previous screen.

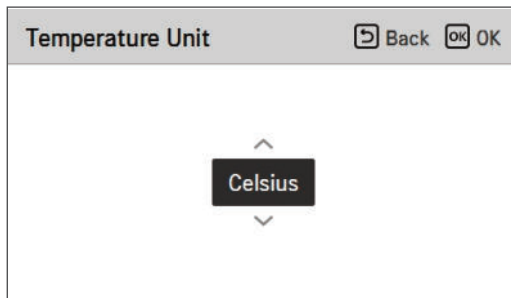


Language		
한국어	English	Français
Deutsche	Italiano	Español
Русский	Polski	Português
中国	Čeština	Türk
Nederlands	Românesc	ελληνικά
Magyar	Български	Srpski
Hrvatski	Slovenščina	Dansk

Temperature Unit

Set the temperature unit displayed on the remote controller.

- In the user setting list, select the temperature unit setting category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.



Value	Celsius
	Fahrenheit

! CAUTION

The temperature unit function may not work or work differently in some products.
You cannot set the temperature unit in the slave wired remote controller.

Screen Saver Timer

Adjust the screen Off time of the remote controller.

- Select the following setting values using [<,>(left/right)] button.

User	Back OK OK
Language	English >
Temperature Unit	Celsius, 0.5°C >
Screen Saver Timer	< 15s >
LCD Brightness In Idle	< 0% >
External Device	>

Value		
15 seconds	30 seconds (default)	1 minute



CAUTION

Selecting longer stand by screen will decrease LCD lifespan.

LCD Brightness In Idle

Adjust the remote controller's screen brightness.

- Select the following setting values using [<,>(left/right)] button.

User	Back OK OK
Language	English >
Temperature Unit	Celsius, 0.5°C >
Screen Saver Timer	< 15s >
LCD Brightness In Idle	< 0% >
External Device	>

Value			
0 %	10 % (default)	20 %	30 %



CAUTION

Selecting brighter stand by screen will decrease LCD lifespan.

Date

Set the date displayed on the remote controller.

- In the user setting list, select the date category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.
- After the setting, if you press [OK] button, the setting is saved and moves to the previous screen.

User	Back OK OK
External Device	
Date	2016.5.18(Wed.) >
Time	PM 02:02 >
Summer Time	Off >
Password	Off >



Date	Back OK OK	
2016	Month	Day
5	18	

Time

Set the time displayed on the remote controller.

- In the user setting list, select the time category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.
- After the setting, if you press [OK] button, the setting is saved and moves to the previous screen.
- In the screen, Time display can be presented in the form of AM / PM or 24 hours standard.

User	Back	OK
External Device		
Date	2016.5.18(Wed.)	>
Time	PM 02:04	>
Summer Time	Off	>
Password	Off	>



Time	Back	OK
Time Format	Hour	Minute
24 Hours	08	44

Time	Back	OK
Time Format	AM/PM	Hour Minute
12 Hours	AM	8 : 44

Summer Time

Set the daylight savings time dates in the remote controller.

- In the user setting list, select the summer time setting category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.
 - Summer time: The system to advance the time by 1 hour from the spring when the day is longer and return back in the fall when the day gets shorter.
 - When it becomes AM 02:00 on the DST start date, the current time changes to AM 03:00, and when it becomes AM 02:00 of the DST end date, the current time changes to AM 01:00.

User	Back OK
External Device	
Date	2016.5.18(Wed.) >
Time	PM 02:05 >
Summer Time	Off >
Password	Off >

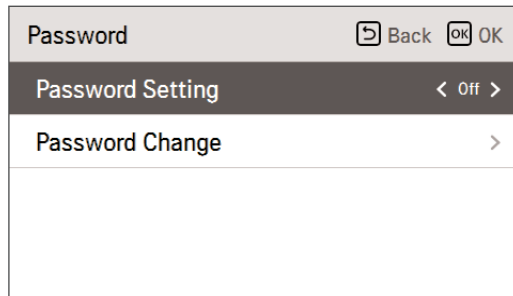
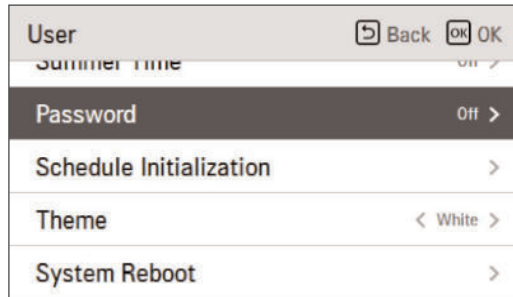


Summer Time		Back OK	
^			
Off	Month	Day	Month Day
	1	1	1 1
-			
1 1			
v			

Password

Set the password to prevent unauthorized change to remote controller settings.

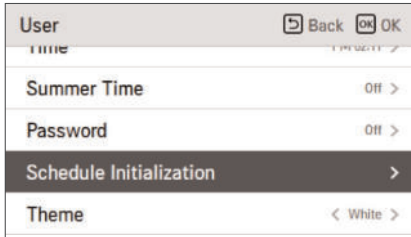
- Select the user password setting category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.
 - If the password is set, when you enter "menu – setting", you need to input password to enter the setting list.
 - When you forgot the password, you can initialize the password using the installer setting's "password initialization".
- The initialized password is "0000".



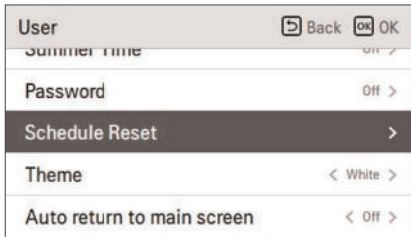
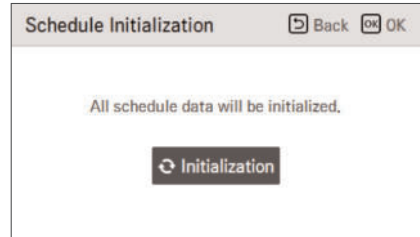
Schedule Initialization / Schedule Reset

Initialize all timer settings in the remote controller.

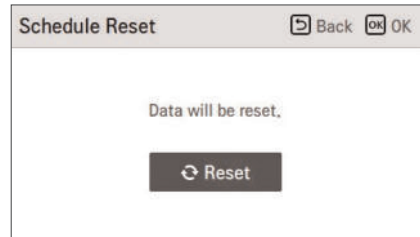
- In the user setting list, select the schedule initialization setting category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.
 - Press the check button to initialize the sleep/simple timer, on/off timer, schedule and exception date in the remote controller.



OK
➔



OK
➔



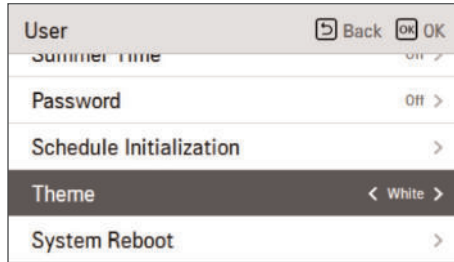
NOTE

It can be different by model.

Theme

Set the theme of the remote controller screen.

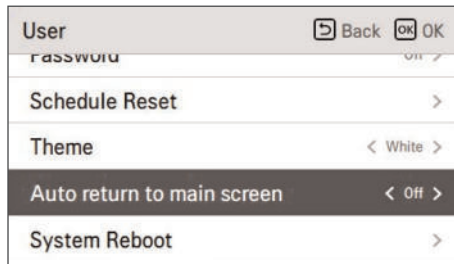
- Select either white or black using [<,>(left/right)] button.



Auto return to main screen

Set the auto return mode.

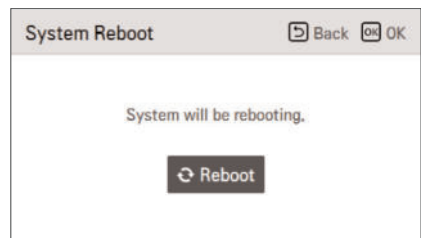
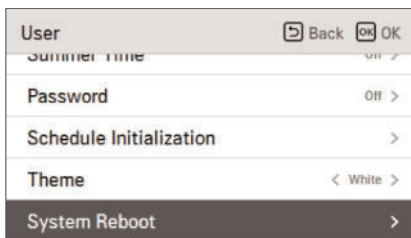
- Select either On or Off using [<,>(left/right)] button.



System Reboot

Restart the remote controller.

- In the user setting list, select the system restart setting category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.
 - In the detail screen, when you press [OK] button, a popup message is displayed, press the check button, to restart the system.
 - For forced reset, press down [On/Off + Back] button for 5 seconds to restart the system.



OVERVIEW OWNER'S SETTINGS

Menu structure (For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series, For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)

Menu		
→ Lock		
→ All Lock	.....	29
→ On/Off Lock	.....	29
→ Mode Lock	.....	29
→ DHW Lock	.....	29
→ Timer		
→ Simple Timer	.....	31
→ Turn-On Reservation	.....	32
→ Turn-Off Reservation	.....	33
→ Schedule		
→ Daily Schedule	.....	35
→ Schedules & Edit	.....	36
→ Exception Day	.....	38
→ Energy		
→ Connection path of meter interface	.....	43
→ Information of meter interface	.....	44
→ Instantaneous Power	.....	44
→ Power/Calorie	.....	44
→ Energy Setting	.....	44
→ Setting		
→ Function		
→ Low Noise Mode Time	.....	47
→ Wi-Fi Pairing	.....	48
→ Water Temperature Setting	.....	49
→ 3 rd Party Boiler	.....	50

User	
→ Language	52
→ Temperature Unit	53
→ Screen Saver Timer	54
→ LCD Brightness In Idle	54
→ Date	55
→ Time	56
→ Summer Time	57
→ Password	58
→ Schedule Initialization	59
→ Theme	60
→ System Reboot	61

Menu structure (For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit)

Menu		
→ Lock		
→ All Lock	.....	29
→ On/Off Lock	.....	29
→ Mode Lock	.....	29
→ DHW Lock	.....	29
→ Timer		
→ Simple Timer	.....	31
→ Turn-On Reservation	.....	32
→ Turn-Off Reservation	.....	33
→ Schedule		
→ Daily Schedule	.....	35
→ Schedules & Edit	.....	36
→ Exception Day	.....	38
→ DHW Recirculation Schedule	.....	39
→ Energy		
→ Energy monitoring setting	.....	41
→ Information of Energy Monitoring	.....	42
→ Instantaneous Power	.....	42
→ Power/Calorie	.....	42
→ Connection path of meter interface	.....	43
→ Information of meter interface	.....	44
→ Instantaneous Power	.....	44
→ Power/Calorie	.....	44
→ Energy Setting	.....	44
→ Setting		
→ Function		
→ Low Noise Mode Time	.....	47
→ Wi-Fi Pairing	.....	48
→ Water Temperature Setting	.....	49
→ 3 rd Party Boiler	.....	50

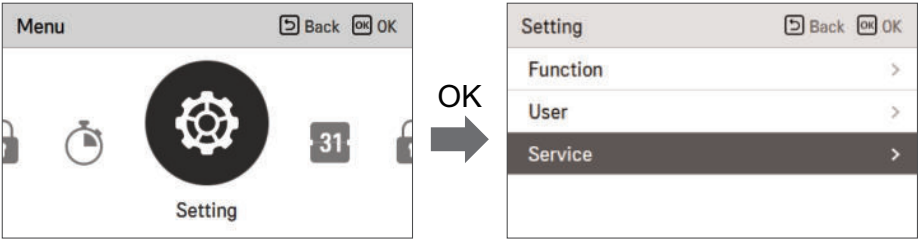
User	
→ Language	52
→ Temperature Unit	53
→ Screen Saver Timer	54
→ LCD Brightness In Idle	54
→ Date	55
→ Time	56
→ Summer Time	57
→ Password	58
→ Schedule Reset	59
→ Theme	60
→ Auto return to main screen	60
→ System Reboot	60

SERVICE SETTING

How to enter service setting

To enter the menu displayed at the bottom, you need to enter the service setting menu as follows.

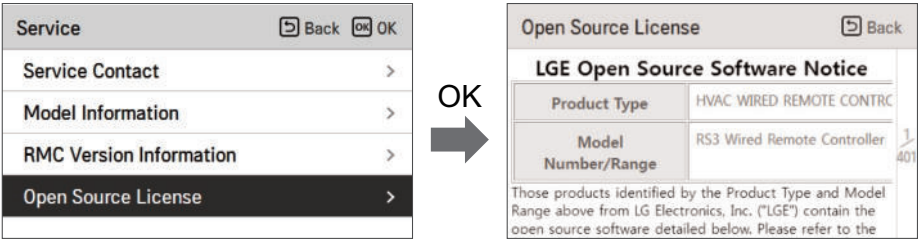
- In the menu screen, press [,<,>(left/right)] button to select the setting category, and press [OK] button to move to the setting list.
- In the setting list, select the service setting category, and press [OK] button to move to the service setting list.



Open source license

View the remote controller's open source license.

- In the service setting list, select the open source license category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.



USING THERMOSTAT

The term "thermostat", which is widely used in this chapter, is a kind of 3rd party accessory. LG Electronics does not supply thermostat and it should be supplied 3rd party manufacturers.

Room thermostat can be used for easy and convenience control. To utilize thermostat more efficiently and correctly, this chapter presents information about using thermostat.

When thermostat is interlocked, the subject of Thermo On / Off is limited to the thermostat



CAUTION

- Some electro-mechanical type thermostat has internal delay time to protect compressor. In that case, mode change can takes time more than user's expectation. Please read thermostat manual carefully if the product does not response quickly.
- Setting temperature range by thermostat can be different with that of the product. The heating or cooling set temperature should be chosen within the setting temperature range of the product.

How to use thermostat

To find how to turn on and off, how to set target temperature, how to change operating mode, etc, please refer thermostat operating manual provided by thermostat manufacturer.

EMERGENCY OPERATION

• Definition of terms

- Trouble : a problem which can stop system operation, and can be resumed temporally under limited operation without certificated professional's assist.
- Error : problem which can stop system operation, and can be resumed only after certificated professional's check.
- Emergency mode : temporary heating operation while system met trouble.

• Objective of introducing 'Trouble'

- Not like airconditioning product, Air-to-Water heat pump is generally operation in whole winter season without any system stopping.
- If system found some problem, which is not critical to system operating for yielding heating energy, the system can temporarily continue in emergency mode operation with end user's decision.

• Classified trouble

- Trouble is classified two levels according to the seriousness of the problem. : Slight trouble and Heavy trouble
- Slight trouble : Sensor trouble. In most case, this trouble is concerned with sensor problems. The unit is operating under emergency mode operation(level 1).
- Heavy trouble : Compressor cycle trouble. Emergency mode operation(level 2) is performed by optional electric heater.
- Option trouble : a problem is found for option operation such as water tank heating. In this trouble, the troubled option is assumed as if it is not installed at the system.

• Emergency operation level

When the AWHP has any trouble,

- (1) If there is not a function to judge possibility of operation : Once an error occurs mainly in indoor unit, AWHP stops. On the other hand, Remocon allows the product to activate On / Off operation.(On : emergency operation)
 - Slight / Heavy trouble : Heating Operable only
 - Critical trouble : Full stop
 - Treatment priority : Critical > Heavy > Slight
- (2) If there is a function to judge possibility of operation : Depending on the status of slight / heavy / critical trouble, pop-up phrase is guided separately on display.
 - Slight trouble : Heating / Cooling Operable
 - Heavy trouble : Heating Operable only
 - Critical trouble : Service center request
 - AWHP operates when user pressed OK button on pop-up window.

- **Duplicated trouble : Option trouble with slight or heavy trouble**

- If option trouble is occurred with slight (or heavy) trouble at the same time, the system puts higher priority to slight (or heavy) trouble and operates as if slight (or heavy) trouble is occurred.
- Therefore, sometimes sanitary water heating can be impossible in emergency operation mode. When sanitary water is not warming up while emergency operation, please check if sanitary water sensor and related wiring are all Ok.

- **Emergency operation is not automatically restarted after main electricity power is reset.**

- In normal condition, the product operating information is restored and automatically restarted after main electricity power is reset.
- But in emergency operation, automatic re-start is prohibited to protect the product.
- Therefore, user must restart the product after power reset when emergency operation has been running.

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICE

Maintenance activities

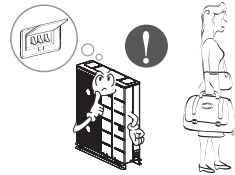
In order to ensure optimal availability of the unit, a number of checks and inspections on the unit and the field wiring have to be carried out at regular intervals, preferably yearly. This maintenance should be carried out by your local agreed technician.

When the unit is not going....



CAUTION

- If the product is not used for long time, we strongly recommend not to switch off the power supply to the product.
- When the power is applied for the first time, operate the product after preheating for 2 hours. To protect the unit by increasing the oil temperature of the compressor.
- If power is not supplied, some special product-protecting actions (such as water pump anti-locking) will not performed.



Call the service immediately in the following situations

- Anything abnormal such as burning smell, loud noise etc. happen. Stop the unit and turn the breaker off. Never try to repair by yourself or restart the system in such cases.
- Main power cord is too hot or damaged.
- Error code is generated by self diagnosis.
- Water leaks from unit.
- Any switch, breaker (safety, earth) or fuse fails to work properly.

User must carry routine checkup & cleaning to avoid unit's poor performance.

In case of special situation, the job must be carried out by the only service person.



CAUTION

- In the case of water with added brine, the drain valve of shut-off valve must be connected to a recovery container.
- Do not touch the water stirred with the brine.
- When the brine in the pipe is leaked, do not operate the unit and contact dealer, seller or an authorized service center.



LG Electronics Inc. Single Point of Contact (EU/UK) :
LG Electronics European Shared Service Center B.V.
Krijgsman 1, 1186 DM Amstelveen, The Netherlands

Manufacturer :
LG Electronics Inc.
84, Wanam-ro, Seongsan-gu, Changwon-si, Gyeongsangnam-do, KOREA

UK Importer : LG Electronics U.K. Ltd
Velocity 2, Brooklands Drive, Weybridge, KT13 0SL

Eco design requirement

- The information for Eco design is available on the following free access website.
<https://www.lg.com/global/support/cedoc/cedoc>

INSTALLATION MANUAL

AIR-TO-WATER HEAT PUMP

Please read this installation manual completely before installing the product. Installation work must be performed in accordance with the national wiring standards by authorized personnel only. Please retain this installation manual for future reference after reading it thoroughly.

THERMA V™

Original instruction



MFL68681810
Rev.26_032724

Copyright © 2017 - 2024 LG Electronics Inc. All Rights Reserved.

www.lg.com

PORTUGUÊS

ENGLISH

MAGYAR

ITALIANO

БЪЛГАРСКИ

ESPAÑOL

SRPSKI

FRANÇAIS

HRVATSKI

DEUTSCH

SLOVENŠČINA

EAHNIKA

DANSK

ČEŠTINA

NEDERLANDS

POLSKI

LIMBA ROMÂNĂ

TABLE OF CONTENTS

8 PREFACE

[Chapter 1]

9 SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

[Chapter 2]

18 INSTALLATION PART

[Chapter 3]

21 GENERAL INFORMATION

- 21 Model Information
- 23 Related Information
- 24 Parts and Dimensions
- 35 Control Parts (For Split)
- 37 Control Parts (For Hydrosplit 1-Pipe)
- 38 Control Parts (For Hydrosplit 2-Pipe)
- 39 Control Panel
- 40 Typical Installation Example
- 46 Cycle Diagram (For R410A)
- 51 Water cycle (For R410A)

[Chapter 4]

58 INSTALLATION OF OUTDOOR UNIT

- 58 Conditions where Outdoor Unit is Installed
- 58 Drill a Hole in the Wall (For Split)
- 59 Multiple installation
- 61 Transporting the Unit
- 63 Installation at Seaside
- 64 Seasonal Wind and Cautions in Winter

[Chapter 5]**65 INSTALLATION OF INDOOR UNIT**

- 65 Conditions where Indoor Unit is Installed
- 68 Floor area requirement : indoor unit (For R32 Split)
- 69 Ventilation requirements
- 74 Electrical Wiring

[Chapter 6]**80 PIPING AND WIRING FOR OUTDOOR UNIT**

- 80 Refrigerant Piping
- 81 Preparation for Piping
- 82 Connecting Pipe to Indoor Unit
- 82 Connecting Pipe to Outdoor Unit
- 85 Finalizing
- 86 Leakage test and Evacuation
- 89 Water Piping and Water Circuit Connection

[Chapter 7]**89 PIPING AND WIRING FOR INDOOR UNIT**

- 92 Water pump Capacity
- 92 Pressure Drop
- 93 Performance curve
- 95 Water Quality
- 95 Frost protection by antifreeze
- 96 Frost protection by antifreeze valve (For Hydrosplit)
- 98 Water Volume and Expansion Vessel Pressure
- 99 Electrical Wiring

[Chapter 8]**106 ACCESSORIES INSTALLATION**

- 109 Before Installation
- 109 Thermostat
- 114 2nd Circuit
- 120 3rd party Backup heater (For Hydrosplit)
- 122 3rd Party Boiler

4 TABLE OF CONTENTS

123	3rd Party Controller
124	Meter Interface
125	Central Controller
126	DHW Tank
130	DHW Tank Kit
134	Solar Thermal Kit
136	Dry Contact
138	External Controller - Setting up programmable digital input operation
139	Remote Temperature Sensor
142	Solar pump
143	External pump
144	Wi-fi Modem
145	Smart Grid (For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series, For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)
146	Energy State (For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit)
147	Digital Input for energy saving (ESS, Smart Grid)(For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit)
148	2Way Valve
149	3Way Valve(A)
150	3Way Valve(B)
151	Final check

[Chapter 9]

152 CONFIGURATION

152	DIP Switch Setting (For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series, For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)
158	DIP Switch Setting (For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit)

166 SERVICE SETTING

166	How to enter service setting
166	Service setting
167	Service contact
168	Model information
169	RMC version Information
170	Open source license

171 INSTALLER SETTING (For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series, For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)

171	How to enter installer setting
172	Installer setting (For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series, For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)
174	3 Minutes Delay

175	Select Temperature Sensor
176	Dry Contact Mode
177	Central Control Address
178	Pump test run
179	Air cooling set temp.
180	Water cooling set temp.
181	Air heating set temp.
182	Water heating set temp.
183	DHW set temp.
184	Screed drying
186	Heater on temperature
188	Water supply off temp. during cooling
190	Tank disinfection setting 1, 2
191	Tank setting 1
192	Tank setting 2
194	Heater priority
195	DHW time setting
197	TH on/off Variable, heating air
198	TH on/off Variable, heating water
199	TH on/off Variable, cooling air
200	TH on/off Variable, cooling water
201	Heating temp. setting
202	Cooling temp. setting
203	Pump setting in heating
204	Pump setting in cooling
205	Forced operation
206	CN_CC
207	Pump frequency setting (RPM) (For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)
208	Pump Capacity (For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series)
209	Smart Grid (SG)
210	Power Supply Blockage (Smart Grid)
211	Seasonal auto temp.
213	Modbus Address
214	CN_EXT
215	Anti-freezing Temperature
216	Add Zone
217	Use External Pump
218	3rd Party Boiler
219	Meter Interface

220	Pump Prerun/Overrun
221	Solar Thermal System
223	Current flow rate (For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series)
224	Data logging
225	Password Initialization

226 INSTALLER SETTING (For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit)

229	Select Temperature Sensor
230	Use Heating Tank Heater
231	Mixing Circuit
234	Use External Pump
235	RMC master/slave
236	LG Therma V Configuration
237	Forced operation
238	Pump Prerun/Overrun
239	Water Flow Control
240	Energy Monitoring (For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit 2-Pipe)
241	Anti-Freezing Option 1 (For Split R32 Indoor unit 5 Series, For Split R410A unit 4 Series, For Hydrosplit 1-Pipe, For Hydrosplit 2-pipe)
242	Password Reset
243	Screed drying
245	Heater on temperature
247	Air heating set temp.
248	Water heating set temp.
249	Hysteresis Room Air(Heating)
250	Hysteresis Heating Water
251	Heating temp. setting
252	Pump setting in heating
253	Air cooling set temp.
254	Water cooling set temp.
255	Water supply off temp. during cooling
256	Hysteresis Room Air(Cooling)
257	Hysteresis Cooling Water
258	Cooling temp. setting
259	Pump setting in cooling
260	Seasonal auto temp.
263	Heater priority
264	DHW set temp.

265	Tank disinfection setting 1, 2
266	Tank setting 1
267	Tank setting 2
269	DHW time setting
271	Recirculation time (For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit 2-Pipe)
272	Solar Thermal System
274	Pump test run
275	Frost Protection Temp.
276	Dry Contact Mode
277	Central Control Address
278	CN_CC
279	Energy state
282	Thermostat control type
283	Pump operation time
284	IDU operation time
285	Modbus Address
286	Modbus gateway memory map
289	CN_EXT
290	3rd Party Boiler
291	Meter Interface
292	Current flow rate
293	Data logging

[Chapter 10]

294 COMMISSIONING

294	Check List before Starting Operation
295	Starting Operation
296	Starting Operation flow chart
296	Airborne Noise Emission
296	Limiting concentration(For R410A)
297	Vacuum & Charge of Refrigerant
301	Trouble shooting

PREFACE

This installation manual is to present information and guide about understanding, installing, and checking **THERMAV..**

Your careful reading before installation is highly appreciated to make no mistake and to prevent potential risks. The manual is divided into ten chapters. These chapters are classified according to installation procedure. See the table below to get summarized information.

Chapters	Contents
Chapter 1	• Warning and Caution concerned with safety. • This chapter is directly related with human safety. We strongly recommend reading this chapter carefully.
Chapter 2	• Items Inside product Box • Before starting installation, please make it sure that all parts are found inside the product box.
Chapter 3	• Fundamental knowledge about THERMAV.. • Model identification, accessories information, refrigerant and water cycle diagram, parts and dimensions, electrical wiring diagrams, etc. • This chapter is important to understand THERMAV..
Chapter 4	• Installation about the outdoor unit. • Installation location, constraints on installation site, etc
Chapter 5	• Installation about the indoor unit. • Installation location, constraints on installation site, etc • Constrains when accessories are installed
Chapter 6	• How to perform piping (for refrigerant) and wiring at the outdoor unit. • Refrigerant pipe connection between the indoor unit and the outdoor unit. • Electrical wiring at the outdoor unit.
Chapter 7	• How to perform piping (for water) and wiring at the indoor unit. • Water pipe connection between the indoor unit and pre-built under floor water loop pipe. • Electrical wiring at the indoor unit. • System set-up and configuration. • As many control parameters of THERMAV.. is adjustable by control panel, deep understanding about this chapter is required to secure the operation flexibility of THERMAV.. • For more detailed information, please read the separate operation manual to use control panel and adjust control parameters.
Chapter 8	• Information about supported accessories • Specification, Constraints, and wiring are described. • Before purchasing accessories, please find supported specification to buy proper one.
Chapter 9	• Test operation and check point while test running.
Chapter 10	• Check points before starting operation are explained. • Troubleshooting, maintenance, and error code list are presented to correct problems.

REMARK : ALL CONTENTS OF THIS MANUAL ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NOTICE. TO GET THE LATEST INFORMATION, PLEASE VISIT LG ELECTRONICS WEB SITE.

* The feature may be vary according to the type of model.

SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

	Read the precautions in this manual carefully before operating the unit.		This appliance is filled with flammable refrigerant (R32)
	This symbol indicates that the Operation Manual should be read carefully.		This symbol indicates that a service personnel should be handling this equipment with reference to the Installation Manual.

The following safety guidelines are intended to prevent unforeseen risks or damage from unsafe or incorrect operation of the appliance.

The guidelines are separated into 'WARNING' and 'CAUTION' as described below.

 This symbol is displayed to indicate matters and operations that can cause risk. Read the part with this symbol carefully and follow the instructions in order to avoid risk.

WARNING

This indicates that the failure to follow the instructions can cause serious injury or death.

CAUTION

This indicates that the failure to follow the instructions can cause the minor injury or damage to the product.

WARNING

Installation

- Do not use a defective or underrated circuit breaker. Use this appliance on a dedicated circuit.
 - There is risk of fire or electric shock.

- For electrical work, contact the dealer, seller, a qualified electrician, or an Authorized Service Center.
 - There is risk of fire or electric shock.
- Always ground the unit.
 - There is risk of fire or electric shock.
- Install the panel and the cover of control box securely.
 - There is risk of fire or electric shock.
- Always install a dedicated circuit and breaker.
 - Improper wiring or installation may cause fire or electric shock.
- Use the correctly rated breaker or fuse.
 - There is risk of fire or electric.
- Do not modify or extend the power cable.
 - There is risk of fire or electric shock.
- Do not install, remove, or reinstall the unit by yourself (customer).
 - There is risk of fire, electric shock, explosion, or injury
- For antifreeze, always contact the dealer or an authorized service center.
 - Almost the antifreeze is a toxic product.
- For installation, always contact the dealer or an authorized Service Center.
 - There is risk of fire, electric shock, explosion, or injury.
- Do not install the unit on a defective installation stand.
 - It may cause injury, accident, or damage to the unit.
- Be sure the installation area does not deteriorate with age.
 - If the base collapses, the unit could fall with it, causing property damage, unit failure, and personal injury.
- Do not install the water pipe system as Open loop type.
 - It may cause failure of unit.

- Use a vacuum pump or inert (nitrogen) gas when doing leakage test or purging air. Do not compress air or oxygen and do not use flammable gases.
 - There is the risk of death, injury, fire or explosion.
- Make sure the connected condition of connector in product after maintenance.
 - Otherwise, it may cause product damage.
- Do not touch leaked refrigerant directly.
 - There is risk of frostbite.
- Copper in contact with refrigerants shall be oxygen-free or deoxidized, for example Cu-DHP as specified in EN 12735-1 and EN 12735-2.
- Compliance with national gas regulations shall be observed. (for R32)
- Refrigerant tubing shall be protected or enclosed to avoid damage. (for R32)
- The installation of pipe-work shall be kept to a minimum. (for R32)
- A brazed, welded, or mechanical connection shall be made before opening the valves to permit refrigerant to flow between the refrigerating system parts. A vacuum valve shall be provided to evacuate the interconnecting pipe and/or any uncharged refrigerating system part. (for R32)
- Any person who is involved with working on or breaking into a refrigerant circuit should hold a current valid certificate from an industry-accredited assessment authority, which authorises their competence to handle refrigerants safely in accordance with an industry recognised assessment specification. (for R32)

- Do not use means to accelerate the defrosting process or to clean, other than those recommended by the manufacturer. (for R32)
- Do not pierce or burn. (for R32)
- Be aware that refrigerants may not contain an odour. (for R32)
- Dismantling the unit, treatment of the refrigerant oil and eventual parts should be done in accordance with local and national standards. (for R32)
- Flexible refrigerant connectors (such as connecting lines between the indoor and outdoor unit) that may be displaced during normal operations shall be protected against mechanical damage. (for R32)
- Pipe-work shall be protected from physical damage. (for R32)
- Mechanical connections (mechanical connectors or flared joints) shall be accessible for maintenance purposes. (for R32)

Operation

- Take care to ensure that power cable could not be pulled out or damaged during operation.
 - There is risk of fire or electric shock.
- Do not place anything on the power cable.
 - There is risk of fire or electric shock.
- Do not plug or unplug the power supply plug during operation.
 - There is risk of fire or electric shock.
- Do not touch (operate) the unit with wet hands.
 - There is risk of fire or electric shock.
- Do not place a heater or other appliances near the power cable.
 - There is risk of fire or electric shock.

- Do not allow water to run into electric parts.
 - There is risk of fire, failure of the unit, or electric shock.
- Do not store or use flammable gas or combustibles near the unit.
 - There is risk of fire or failure of unit.
- Do not use the unit in a tightly closed space for a long time.
 - It may cause damage to the unit.
- When flammable gas leaks, turn off the gas and open a window for ventilation before turning the unit on.
 - There is risk of explosion or fire.
- If strange sounds, or smell or smoke comes from unit, turn the breaker off or disconnect the power supply cable.
 - There is risk of electric shock or fire.
- Stop operation and close the window in storm or hurricane. If possible, remove the unit from the window before the hurricane arrives.
 - There is risk of property damage, failure of unit, or electric shock.
- Do not open the front cover of the unit while operation. (Do not touch the electrostatic filter, if the unit is so equipped.)
 - There is risk of physical injury, electric shock, or unit failure.
- Do not touch any electric part with wet hands. you should be power off before touching electric part.
 - There is risk of electric shock or fire.
- Do not touch refrigerant pipe and water pipe or any internal parts while the unit is operating or immediately after operation.
 - There is risk of burns or frostbite, personal injury.
- If you touch the pipe or internal parts, you should be wear protection or wait time to return to normal temperature.
 - Otherwise , it may cause burns or frostbite, personal injury.

- Turn the main power on 6 hours ago before the product starting operation.
 - Otherwise, it may cause compressor damage.
- Do not touch electric parts for 10 minutes after main power off.
 - There is risk of physical injury, electric shock.
- The inside heater of product may operate during stop mode. It is intended to protect the product.
- Be careful that some part of the control box are hot.
 - There is risk of physical injury or burns.
- When the unit is soaked (flooded or submerged), contact an Authorized Service Center.
 - There is risk of fire or electric shock.
- Be cautious that water could not be poured to the unit directly.
 - There is risk of fire, electric shock, or unit damage.
- Ventilate the unit from time to time when operating it together with a stove, etc.
 - There is risk of fire or electric shock.
- Turn the main power off when cleaning or maintaining the unit.
 - There is risk of electric shock.
- Take care to ensure that nobody could step on or fall onto the unit.
 - This could result in personal injury and unit damage.
- If the unit is not used for long time, we strongly recommend not to switch off the power supply to the unit.
 - There is risk of water freezing.
- The appliance shall be stored in a well-ventilated area where the room size corresponds to the room area as specified for operation. (for R32)

- The appliance shall be stored in a room without continuously operating open flames (for example an operating gas appliance) and ignition sources (for example an operating electric heater). (for R32)
- The appliance shall be stored so as to prevent mechanical damage from occurring. (for R32)
- Servicing shall only be performed as recommended by the equipment manufacturer. Maintenance and repair requiring the assistance of other skilled personnel shall be carried out under the supervision of the person competent in the use of flammable refrigerants. (for R32)
- When mechanical connectors are reused indoors, sealing parts shall be renewed. When flared joints are reused indoors, the flare part shall be re-fabricated. (for R32)
- Periodic(more than once/year) cleaning of the dust or salt particles stuck on the heat exchangers by using water. (for R32)
- Keep any required ventilation openings clear of obstruction. (for R32)

CAUTION

Installation

- Always check for gas (refrigerant) leakage after installation or repair of unit.
 - Low refrigerant levels may cause failure of unit.
- Keep level even when installing the unit.
 - To avoid vibration or water leakage.
- Use two or more people to lift and transport the unit.
 - Avoid personal injury.

- Do not install the unit in potentially explosive atmospheres.
- Connect the water for filling or refilling the heating system as specified by EN 1717/EN 61770 to avoid contamination of drinking water by return flow.

Operation

- Do not use the unit for special purposes, such as preserving foods, works of art, etc.
 - There is risk of damage or loss of property.
- Use a soft cloth to clean. Do not use harsh detergents, solvents, etc.
 - There is risk of fire, electric shock, or damage to the plastic parts of the unit.
- Do not step on or put anything on the unit.
 - There is risk of personal injury and failure of unit.
- Use a firm stool or ladder when cleaning or maintaining the unit.
 - Be careful and avoid personal injury.
- Do not turn on the breaker or power under condition that front panel cabinet, top cover, control box cover are removed or opened.
 - Otherwise it may cause fire, electric shock, explosion or death.
- The appliance shall be disconnected from its power source during service and when replacing parts.
- Means for disconnection must be incorporated in the fixed wiring in accordance with the wiring rules.
- The Installation kit supplied with the appliance are to be used and that old Installation kit should not be reused.

- If the supply cord is damaged, it must be replaced by the manufacturer, its service agent or similarly qualified persons in order to avoid a hazard. Installation work must be performed in accordance with the national wiring standards by authorized personnel only.
- This equipment shall be provided with a supply conductor complying with the national regulation.
- The instructions for service to be done by specialized personnel, mandated by the manufacturer or the authorized representative may be supplied in only one Community language which the specialized personnel understand.
- This appliance is not intended for use by persons (including children) with reduced physical, sensory or mental capabilities or lack of experience and knowledge, unless they have been given supervision or instruction concerning use of the appliance by a person responsible for their safety. Children should be supervised to ensure that they do not play with the appliance.

INSTALLATION PART

Thank you for choosing LG Electronics Air-to-Water Heat Pump **THERMAV™**.

Before starting installation, please make it sure that all parts are found inside the product box.

(For Split)

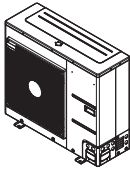
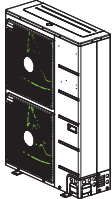
INDOOR UNIT BOX

Item	Image	Quantity
Indoor unit		1
Installation Manual		1
Owner's / Installation manual		1

Item	Image	Quantity
Shut-off valve (For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series, For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)		2
Installation Sheet		1

* Shut-off valve is not provided for Split 5 series, Hydrosplit.

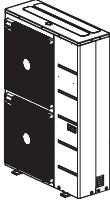
OUTDOOR UNIT BOX

Item	Image	Quantity
Outdoor Unit U36A Chassis		1
Outdoor Unit U60A Chassis		1
Drain Cap		4
Drain Nipple		1
Damper		4

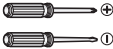
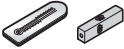
(For Hydrosplit)
INDOOR UNIT BOX

Item	Image	Quantity	Item	Image	Quantity
Indoor unit		1	Installation Sheet		1

OUTDOOR UNIT BOX

Item	Image	Quantity
Outdoor Unit U60A Chassis		1
Drain Cap		4
Drain Nipple		1
Installation Manual		1
Owner's / Installation manual		1
Strainer		1
Damper		4

INSTALLATION TOOLS

Figure	Name	Figure	Name
	Screw driver		Ohmmeter
	Electric drill		Hexagonal wrench
	Measuring tape, Knife		Ammeter
	Hole core drill		Leak detector
	Spanner		Thermometer, Horizontal meter
	Torque wrench		Flaring tool set
	Manifold Gauge		Vacuum Pump
	Pliers	-	-

GENERAL INFORMATION

With advanced inverter technology, **THERMAV** is suitable for applications like under floor heating, under floor cooling, and hot water generation. By Interfacing to various accessories user can customize the range of the application.

In this chapter, general information of **THERMAV** is presented to identify the installation procedure. Before beginning installation, read this chapter carefully and find helpful information on installation.

Energy Labels and Product Fiches for all possible combinations can be found at <https://www.lg.com/global/support/cedoc/cedoc>. Search for outdoor unit name in cedoc page.

Model Information

Factory Model Name

Outdoor unit

Model	No.						
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Split	ZH	U	W	09	6	A	0
Hydrosplit	ZH	B	W	16	8	B	0

	Signification
1	ZH : Air-to-Water-Heat Pump for R32 AH : Air-to-Water-Heat Pump for R410A
2	Classification - U : Outdoor unit of Split - B : Outdoor unit of Hydrosplit
3	Model Type - W : Inverter Heat Pump
4	Heating Capacity - e.g. 09 : 9 kW
5	Electrical ratings - 6 : 1Ø, 220-240V, 50 Hz - 8 : 3Ø, 380-415V, 50 Hz
6	Function - A : General function of Split - B : General function of Hydrosplit
7	Series number (Factory)

Indoor unit

Model	No.							
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Split	ZH	N	W	09	6	06	A	1
Hydrosplit	ZH	N	W	16	.	.	B	0

	Signification
1	ZH : Air-to-Water-Heat Pump for R32 AH : Air-to-Water-Heat Pump for R410A
2	Classification - N : Indoor unit
3	Model Type - W : Inverter Heat Pump
4	Heating Capacity - e.g. 09 : 9 kW
5	Electrical ratings - 6 : 1Ø, 220-240V, 50 Hz - 8 : 3Ø, 380-415V, 50 Hz
6	Heater Capacity - e.g. 06 : 6 kW Heater
7	Function - A : General function of Split - B : General function of Hydrosplit 1-Pipe - C : General function of Hydrosplit 2-Pipe
8	Series number (Factory)

Buyer Model Name

Outdoor unit

Type	Refrigerant	No.							
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8 9
Split	R410A	H	U	16	1	.	.	.	U3 3
		H	U	16	1	M	A	.	U3 3
	R32	H	U	05	1	M	R	.	U4 4
		H	U	16	3	M	R	B	U3 0
Hydrosplit	R32	H	U	16	3	M	R	B	U3 0

	Signification
1	Air-to-Water Heat Pump
2	Classification - U : Outdoor unit
3	Heating Capacity - e.g. 16 : 16 kW
4	Electrical ratings - 1 : 1Ø, 220-240V, 50 Hz - 3 : 3Ø, 380-415V, 50 Hz
5	Leaving water combination - M : Medium Temperature
6	Refrigerant - A : R410A - R : R32
7	Function - B : General function of Hydrosplit
8	Chassis - U3 : U60A Chassis - U4 : U36A Chassis
9	Series number (Buyer) - HU*** U33 : Split R410A 3 Series - HU***MA U33 : Split R410A 4 Series - HU***MR U44 : Split R32 4 Series - HU***MRB U30 : Hydrosplit 0 Series

Indoor unit

Type	Refrigerant	No.									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Split	R410A	H	N	16	1	6	.	.	.	NK	3
		H	N	16	1	6	M	.	.	NK	5
	R32	H	N	09	1	6	M	.	.	NK	4
		H	N	09	1	.	M	R	.	NK	5
Hydrosplit	R32	H	N	16	0	0	M	.	B	NK	0

	Signification
1	Air-to-Water Heat Pump
2	Classification - N : Indoor unit
3	Heating Capacity - e.g. 09 : 9 kW
4	Electrical ratings - 0 : For both 1Ø, 220-240V, 50 Hz and 3Ø, 380-415 V, 50 Hz - 1 : 1Ø, 220-240V, 50 Hz - 3 : 3Ø, 380-415V, 50 Hz
5	Heater capacity (kW) - 0 : Optional Accessory - 6 : 6 kW Heater - 9 : 9 kW Heater * For R32 5 Series : 6 kW Heater
6	Leaving water combination - M : Medium Temperature
7	Refrigerant - R : R32
8	Function - B : General function of Hydrosplit 1-Pipe - C : General function of Hydrosplit 2-Pipe
9	Chassis - NK : K1 Chassis
10	Series number (Buyer) - 0 : 0 Series - 1 : 1 Series

Check the model information based on the buyer model series number.
(e.g., geometry, cycle, etc.)

Related Information

Unit														
Heat Pump										Backup Heater				
Type	Refrigerant	Outdoor Unit			Indoor Unit			Power Supply	Capacity		Capacity [kW]	Power Supply		
		Series	Phase	Capacity [kW]	Series	Phase	Capacity [kW]		Heating [kW] ^{*1}	Cooling [kW] ^{*2}				
Split	R32	0	1Ø	5	4	1Ø	9	220-240 V~50 Hz	5.5	5.5	6 (3+3)	220-240 V~50 Hz		
				5										
				7	4				7.0	7.0				
				5										
				9	4				9.0	9.0				
				5										
	R410A	3	1Ø	5	3	1Ø	16	220-240 V~50 Hz	5.0	5.0	6 (3+3)	220-240 V~50 Hz		
				7	3				7.0	7.0				
				9	3				9.0	9.0				
				12	3				12.0	10.4				
				5										
				14	3				14.0	12.0				
				5										
				16	3				16.0	13.0				
				5										
				4	1Ø				12	3			12.0	10.4
									5					
									14	3			14.0	12.0
		5												
		16	3			16.0	13.0							
		5												
		3	3Ø	12	3	3Ø	16	380-415 V~50 Hz	12.0	10.4	9 (3+3+3) 6 (2+2+2)	380-415 V~50 Hz		
				5										
				14	3				14.0	12.0	9 (3+3+3) 6 (2+2+2)			
				5										
				16	3				16.0	13.0	9 (3+3+3) 6 (2+2+2)			
				5										
				4	3Ø				12	3	12.0		10.4	9 (3+3+3) 6 (2+2+2)
									5					
									14	3	14.0		12.0	9 (3+3+3) 6 (2+2+2)
									5					
									16	3	16.0		13.0	9 (3+3+3) 6 (2+2+2)
									5					
Hydrosplit		R32	0	1Ø	12	1Ø	16	220-240 V~50 Hz	12.0	12.0	-	-		
				14					14.0	14.0				
				16					16.0	16.0				
	3Ø			12	3Ø			380-415 V~50 Hz	12.0	12.0				
	14								14.0	14.0				
	16								16.0	16.0				

*1 : tested under EN14511

(water temperature 30 °C → 35 °C at outdoor ambient temperature 7 °C / 6 °C)

*2 : tested under EN14511

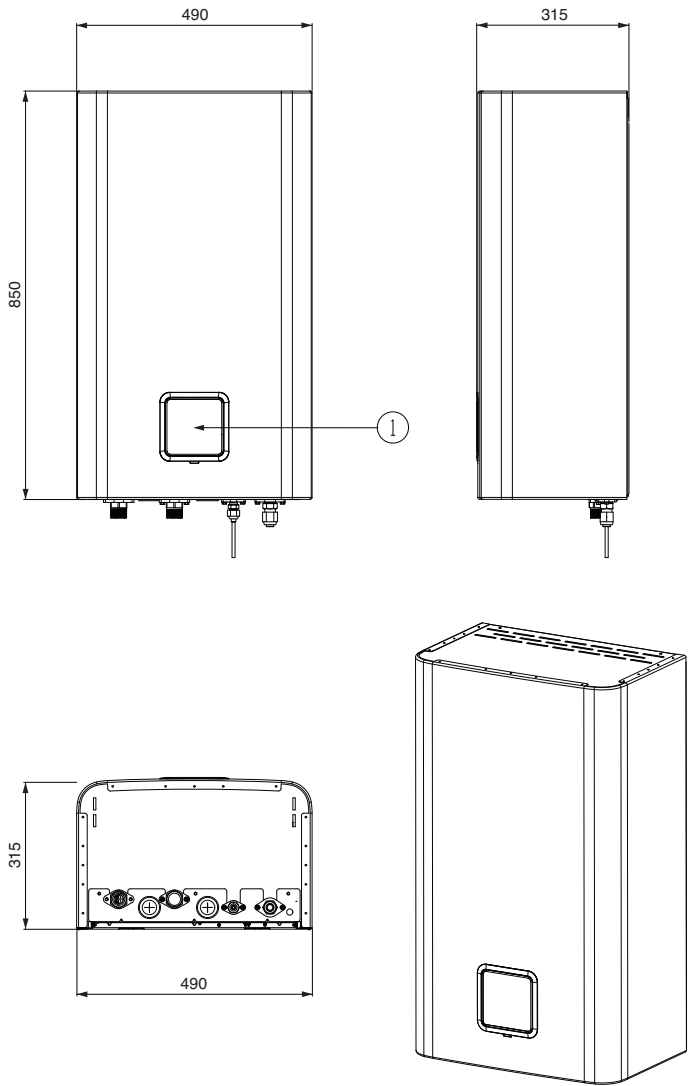
(water temperature 23 °C → 18 °C at outdoor ambient temperature 35 °C / 24 °C)

✱ All appliances were tested at atmospheric pressure.

Parts and Dimensions

Indoor unit : External

(unit : mm)



* The feature may be vary according to the type of model.

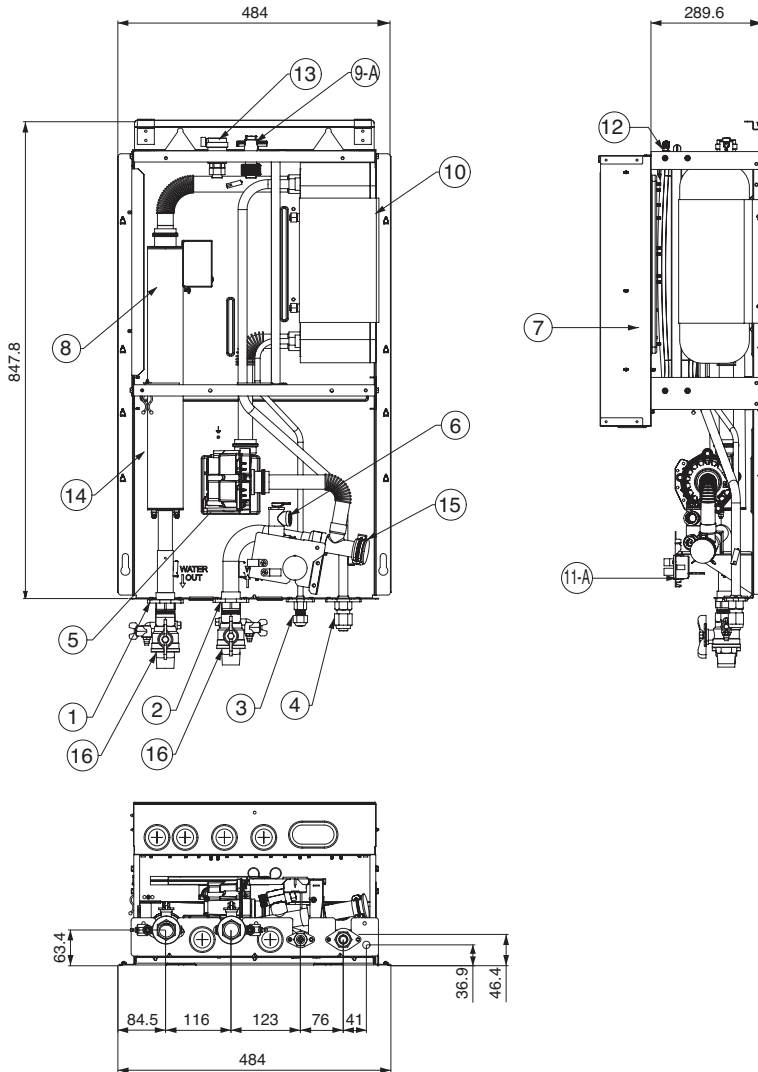
Description

No	Name	Remark
1	Control Panel	Built-in Remote Controller

Indoor unit : Internal

- For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series

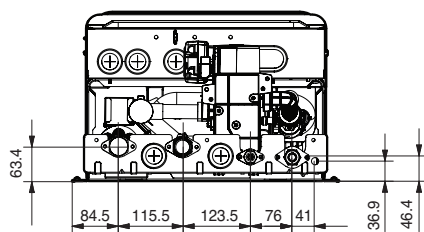
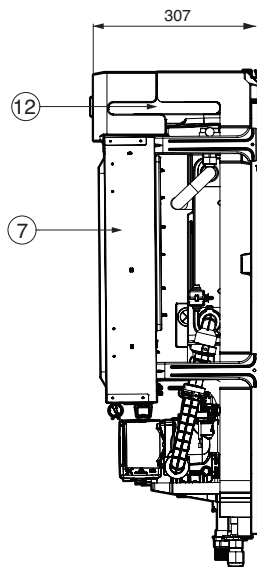
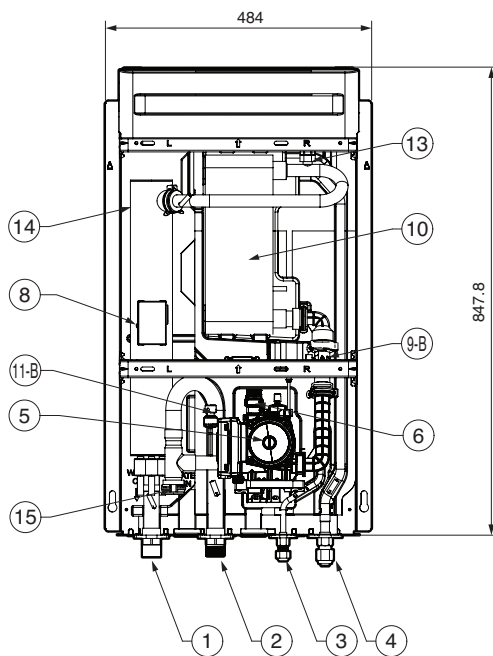
(unit : mm)



Indoor unit : Internal

- For Split R410A Indoor unit 5 Series

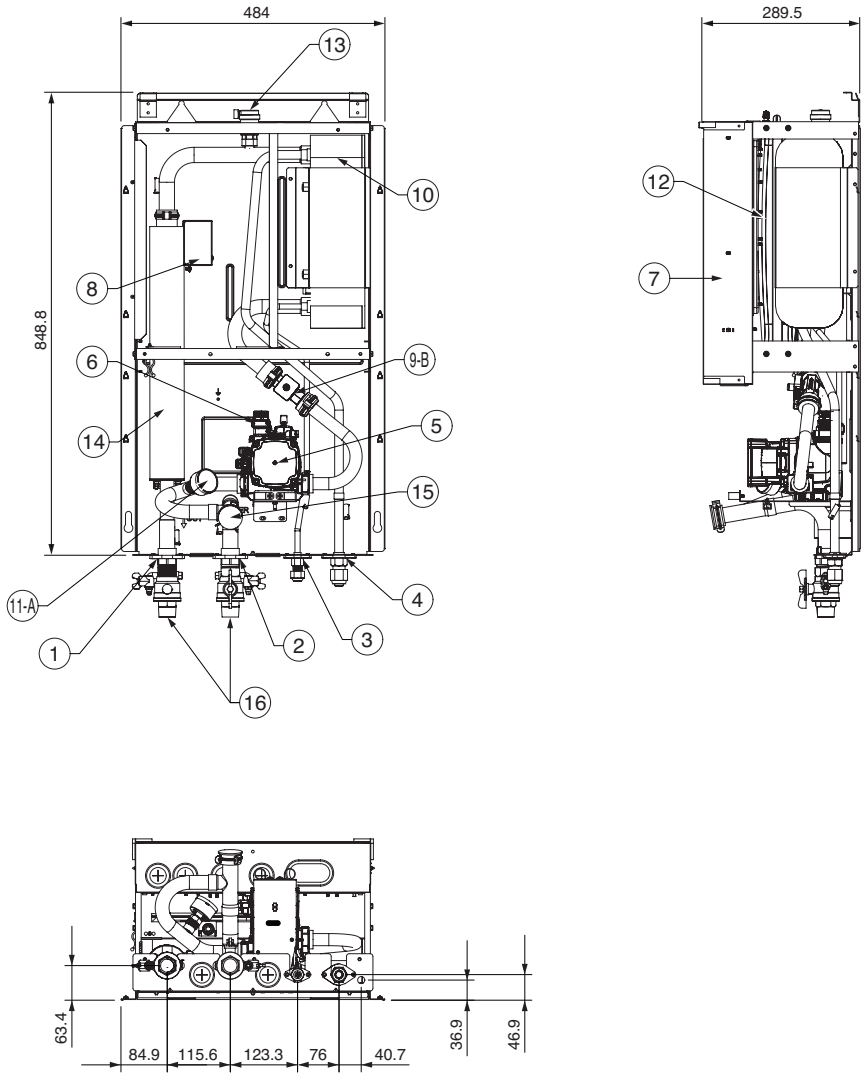
(unit : mm)



Indoor unit : Internal

- For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series

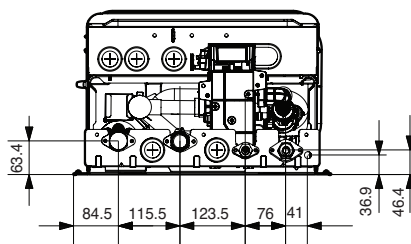
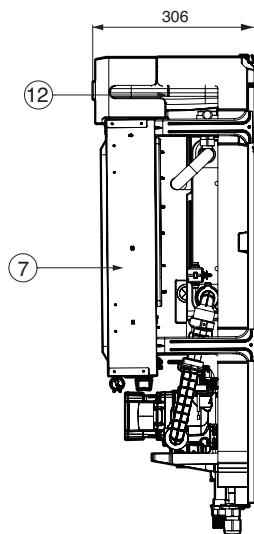
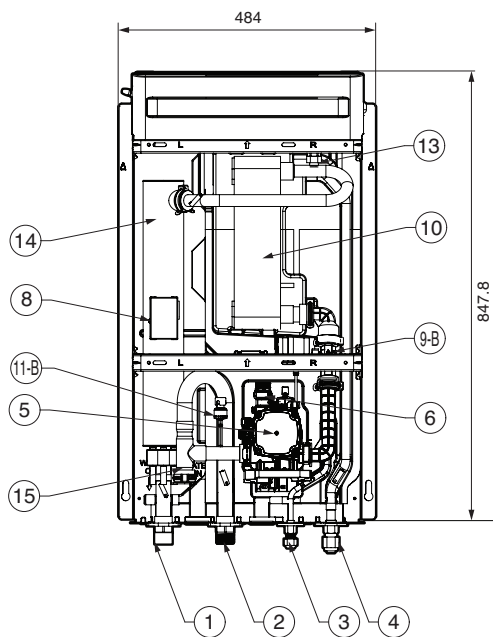
(unit : mm)



Indoor unit : Internal

- For Split R32 Indoor unit 5 Series

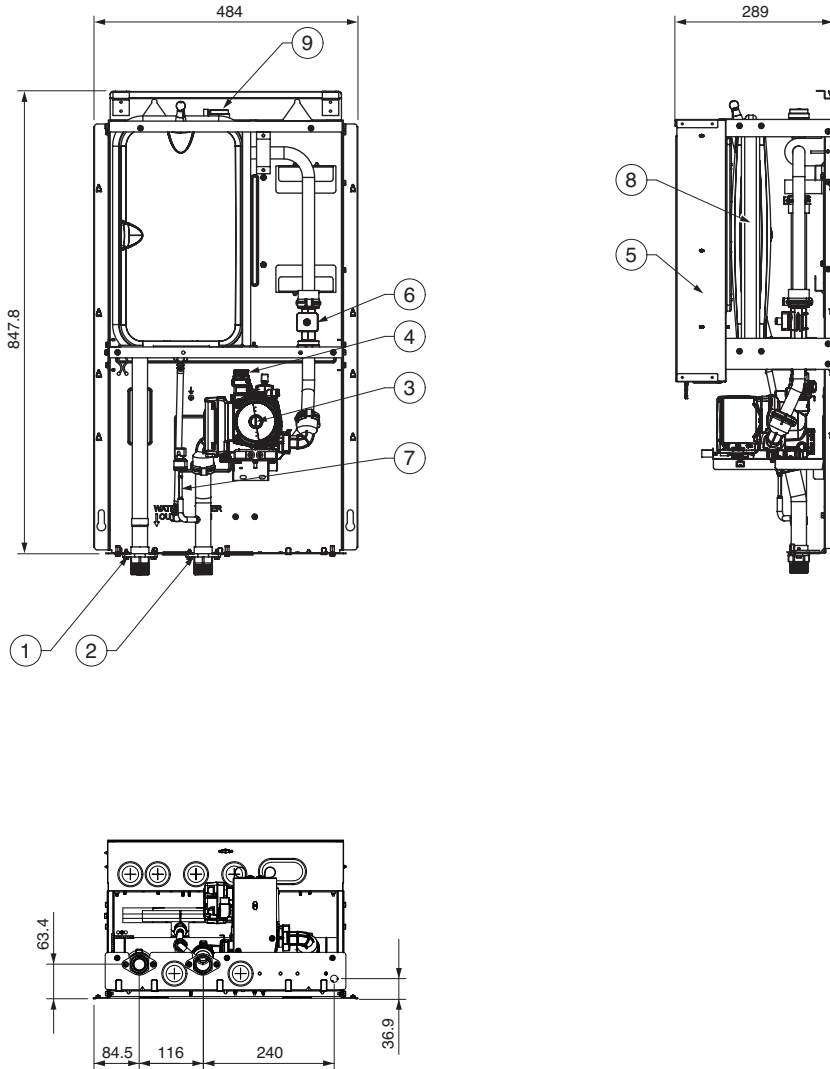
(unit : mm)



Indoor unit : Internal

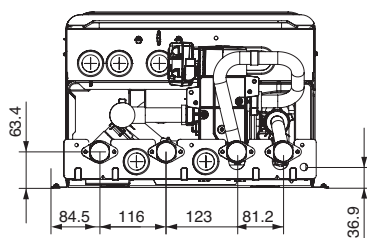
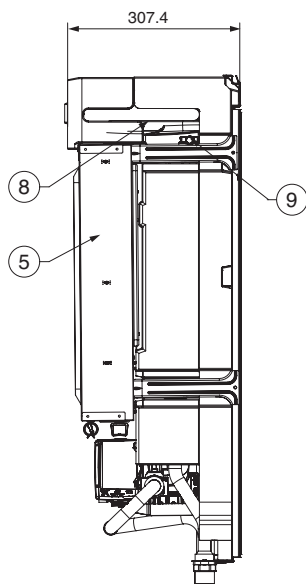
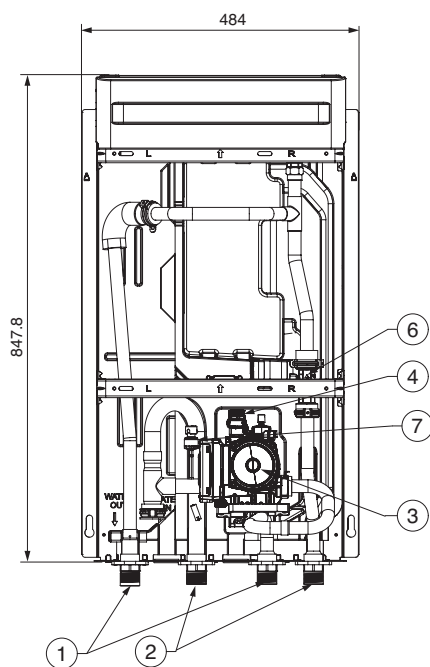
- For Hydrosplit 1-pipe

(unit : mm)



- For Hydrosplit 2-pipe

(unit : mm)



- For Split

No	Name	Remark
1	Leaving Water Pipe	Male PT 1 inch
2	Entering Water Pipe	Male PT 1 inch
3	Refrigerant Pipe	Ø 9.52 mm
4	Refrigerant Pipe	Ø 15.88 mm
5	Water Pump	Max Head 9.5 / 7 / 6 m
6	Safety Valve	Open at water pressure 3 bar
7	Control Box	PCB and terminal blocks
8	Thermal switch	Cut-off power input to backup heater at 90 °C (manual return at 55 °C)
9-A	Flow Switch	Minimum operation range at 15 LPM.
9-B	Flow Sensor	Range : 5 ~ 80 L/min
10	Plate Heat Exchanger	Heat exchange between refrigerant and water
11-A	Pressure Gauge	Indicates circulating water pressure
11-B	Pressure Sensor	Detects circulating water pressure
12	Expansion Tank	Absorbing Volume change of heated water
13	Air Vent	Air purging when Charging water
14	Backup heater	Cut-off power input to backup heater at 184 °C (Not Recoverable)
15	Strainer	Filtering and stacking particles inside circulating water
16	Shut-off valve	To drain or to block water when pipe connecting * For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series, For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series (Shut-off valve is not provided for Split 5 series, Hydrosplit)

- For Hydrosplit

No	Name	Remark
1	Leaving Water Pipe	Male PT 1 inch
2	Entering Water Pipe	Male PT 1 inch
3	Water Pump	Circulating the water
4	Safety Valve	Open at water pressure 3 bar
5	Control Box	PCB and terminal blocks
6	Flow Sensor	Range : 5 ~ 80 L/min
7	Pressure Sensor	Detects circulating water pressure
8	Expansion Tank	Absorbing Volume change of heated water
9	Air Vent	Air Pumping when Charging water

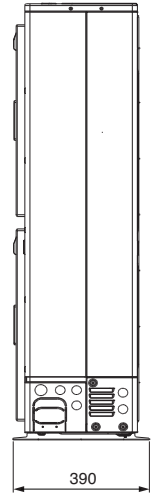
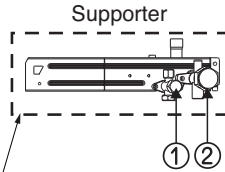
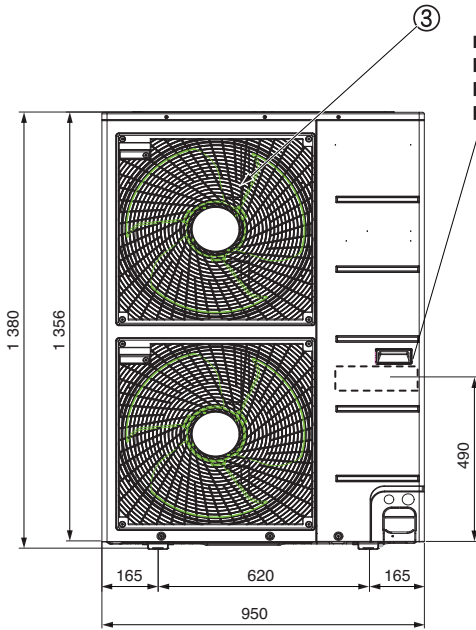
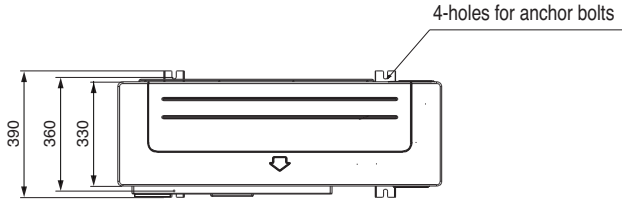
Outdoor unit : External

- For Split

Product Heating Capacity : 12 kW, 14 kW, 16 kW

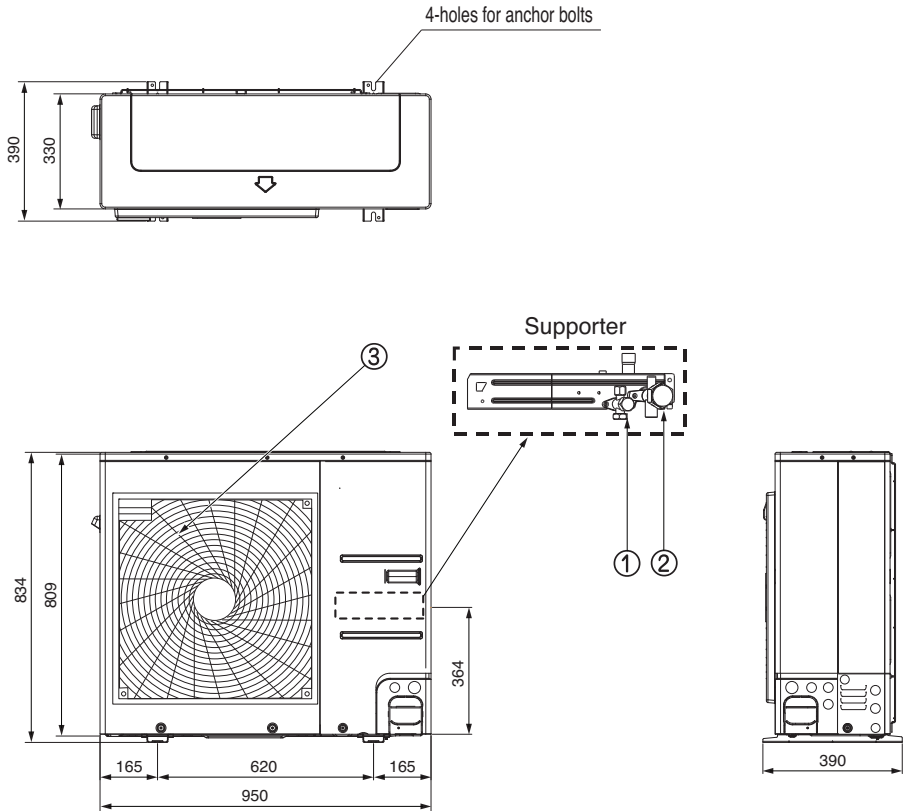
Chassis : U60A

(unit : mm)



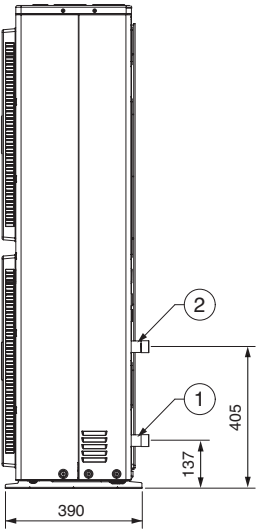
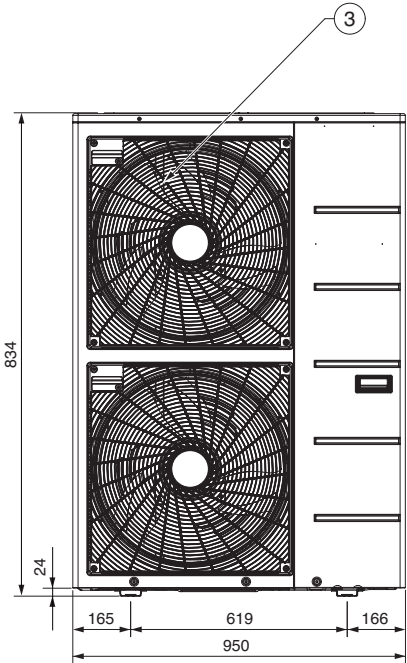
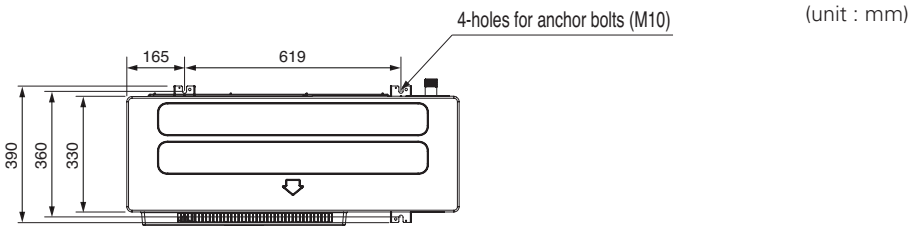
Product Heating Capacity : 5 kW, 7 kW, 9 kW
Chassis : U36A

(unit : mm)



Outdoor unit : External

- For Hydrosplit
 Product Heating Capacity : 12 kW, 14 kW, 16 kW
 Chassis : U60A



Description

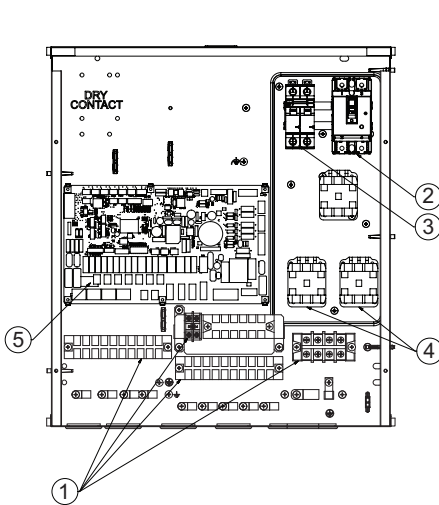
No	Name
1	Entering Water Pipe
2	Leaving Water Pipe
3	Air discharge Grille

Control Parts (For Split)

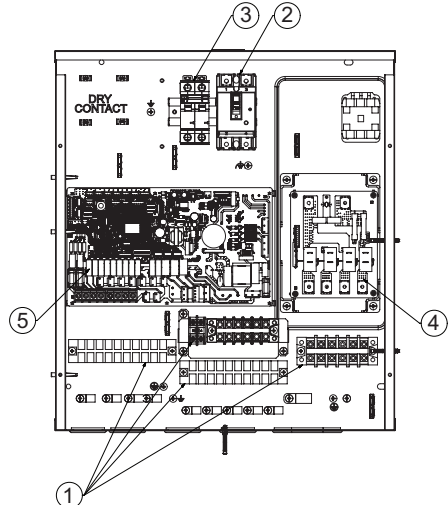
Control Box : Indoor Unit

1Ø Electric Heater Model

(For R32 Indoor unit 4 Series, For R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)



With magnet switch
(Production date : Until Sep. 30, 2019)

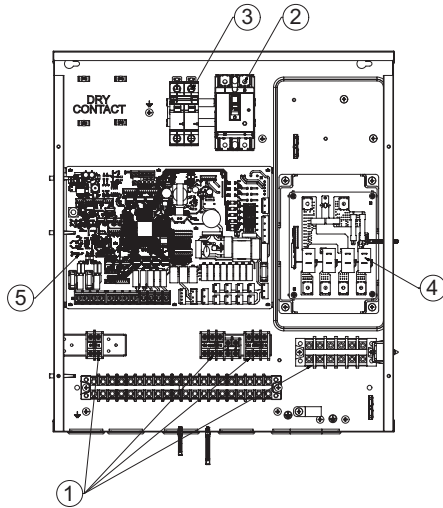


With heater PCB
(Production date : From Oct. 1, 2019)

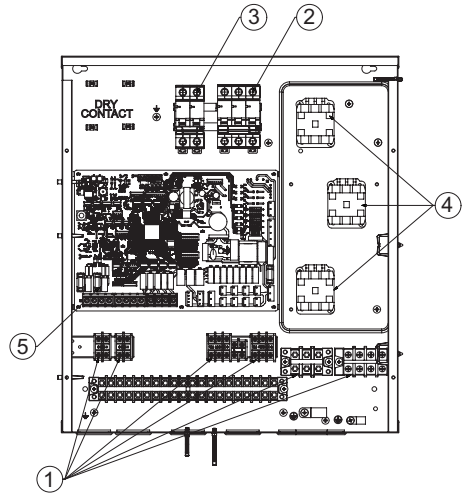
Description

No	Name	Remark
1	Terminal blocks	The terminal blocks allow easy connection of field wiring
2	Unit ELB	The ELB protects the unit against overload or short circuit
3	Booster heater ELB (optional)	The ELB protects the booster heater in DHW tank against overload or short circuit
4	Magnet switch	Magnet switch / Heater PCB(Printed Circuit Board) controls the functioning of the backup heater
	Heater PCB (Relay)	
5	Main PCB	The main PCB(Printed Circuit Board) controls the functioning of the unit

1Ø Electric Heater Model
(For R32 Indoor unit 5 Series,
For R410A Indoor unit 5 Series)



3Ø Electric Heater Model
(For R410A Indoor unit 5 Series)

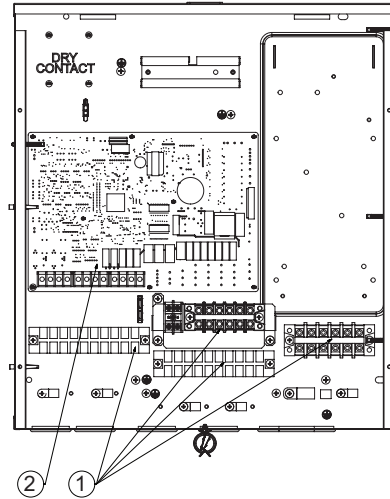


Description

No	Name	Remark
1	Terminal blocks	The terminal blocks allow easy connection of field wiring
2	Unit ELB	The ELB protects the unit against overload or short circuit
3	Booster heater ELB (optional)	The ELB protects the booster heater in DHW tank against overload or short circuit.
4	Heater PCB (Relay)	Heater PCB(Printed Circuit Board) controls the functioning of the backup heater
5	Main PCB	The main PCB(Printed Circuit Board) controls the functioning of the unit

Control Parts (For Hydrosplit 1-Pipe)

Control Box : Indoor Unit

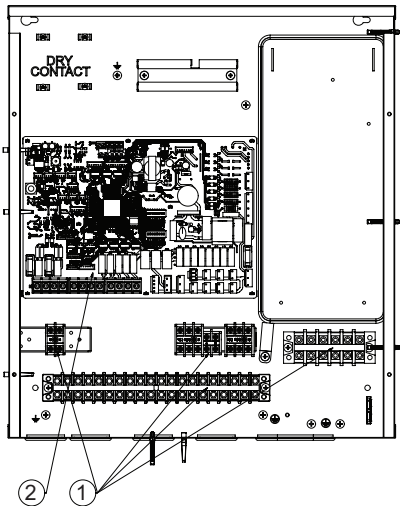


Description

No	Name	Remark
1	Terminal blocks	The terminal blocks allow easy connection of field wiring
2	Main PCB	The Main PCB(Printed Circuit Board) controls the functioning of the unit

Control Parts (For Hydrosplit 2-Pipe)

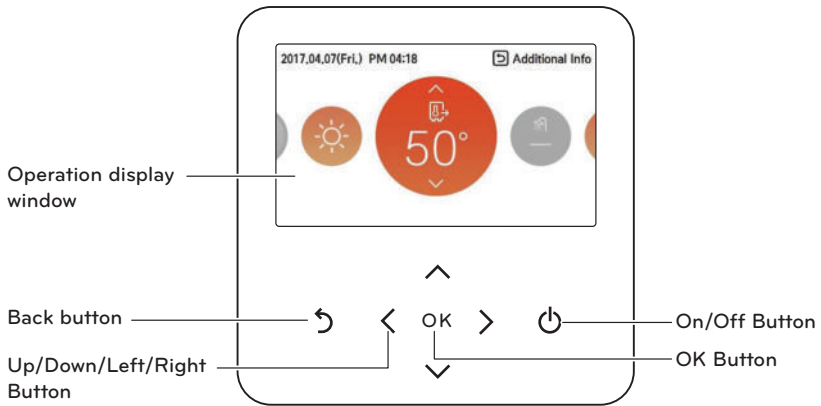
Control Box : Indoor Unit



Description

No	Name	Remark
1	Terminal blocks	The terminal blocks allow easy connection of field wiring
2	Main PCB	The Main PCB(Printed Circuit Board) controls the functioning of the unit

Control Panel



Operation display window	Operation and Settings status display
Back button	When you move to the previous stage from the menu's setting stage
Up/down/left/right button	When you change the menu's setting value
OK button	When you save the menu's setting value
On/Off button	When you turn ON/OFF the AWHP

Typical Installation Example

CAUTION

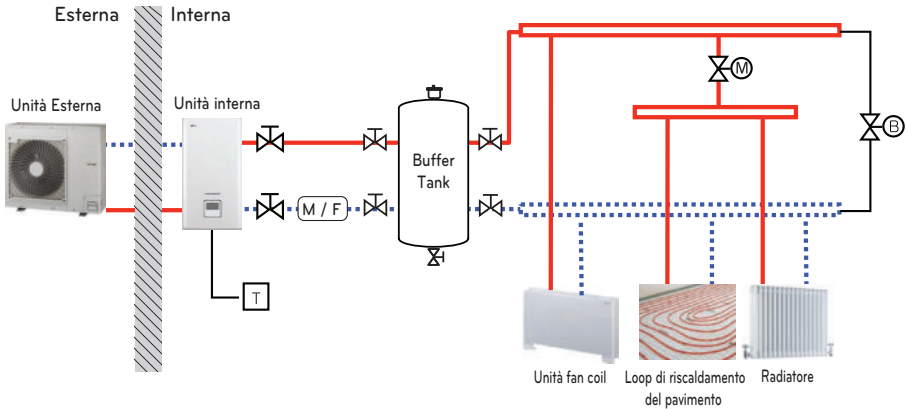
If **THERMAV** is installed with pre-existing boiler, the boiler and **THERMAV** should not be operated together. If entering water temperature of **THERMAV** is above 55 °C, the system will stop operation to prevent mechanical damage of the product. For detailed electric wiring and water piping, please contact authorized installer.

Some installation scenes are presented for example. As these scenes are conceptual figures, installer should optimize the installation scene according to the installation conditions.

Note that buffer tank should be installed.

CASE 1: Connecting Heat Emitters for Heating and Cooling

(Under floor loop, Fan Coil Unit, and Radiator)

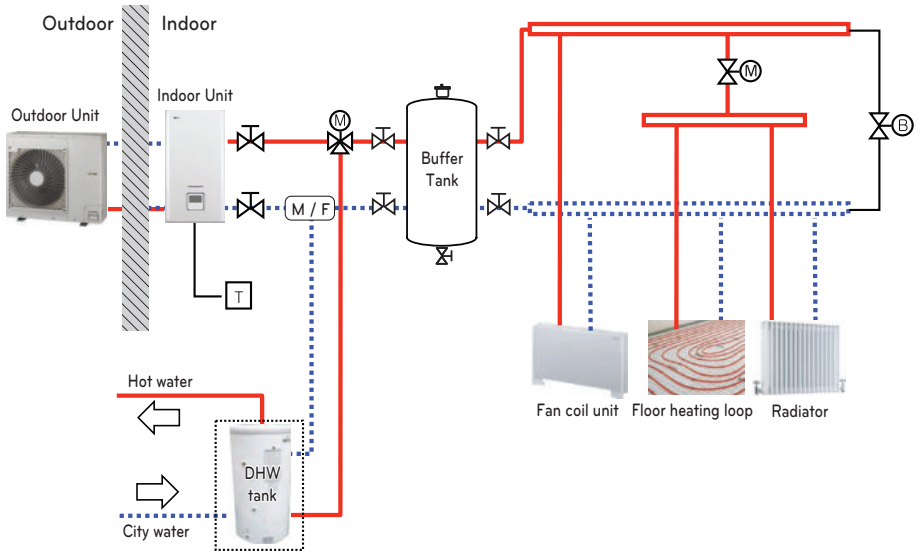


NOTE

- Room thermostat
 - Type of thermostat and specification should be complied with **THERMAV** installation manual.
- 2way valve
 - It is important to install 2way valve to prevent dew condensation on the floor and radiator while cooling mode.
 - Type of 2way control valve and specification should be complied with **THERMAV** installation manual.
 - 2way valve should be installed at the supply side of the collector.
- By-pass valve
 - To secure enough water flow rate, by-pass valve should be installed at the collector.
 - By-pass valve should guarantee minimum water flow rate in any case. Minimum water flow rate is described in water pump characteristics curve.

— High Temperature Low Temperature (M/F) Magnetic Filter (Mandatory)	(M) 2way valve (Field supply) (B) By-pass valve (Field supply)	(X) Shut-off valve (T) Room Thermostat (Field supply)
--	--	---

CASE 2: Connecting DHW Tank

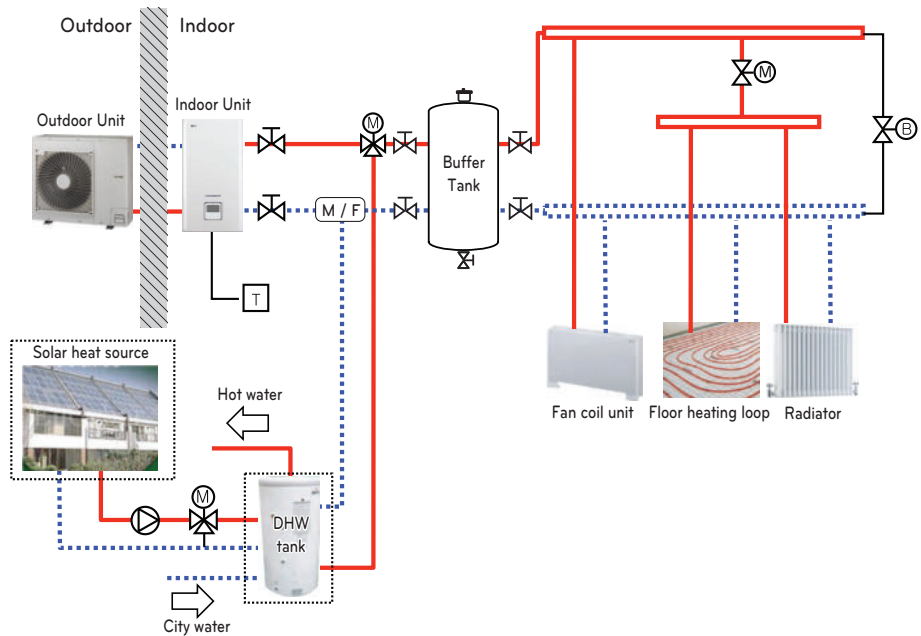


NOTE

- DHW tank
 - It should be equipped with booster heater to generate sufficient heat energy in very cold season.
 - DHW : Domestic Hot Water
- 3way valve
 - Type of 3way valve and specification should be complied with **THERMAV** installation manual.

— High Temperature	2way valve (Field supply)	Shut-off valve
.... Low Temperature	3way valve (Field supply)	Room Thermostat (Field supply)
Magnetic Filter (Mandatory)	By-pass valve (Field supply)	

CASE 3: Connecting Solar thermal system

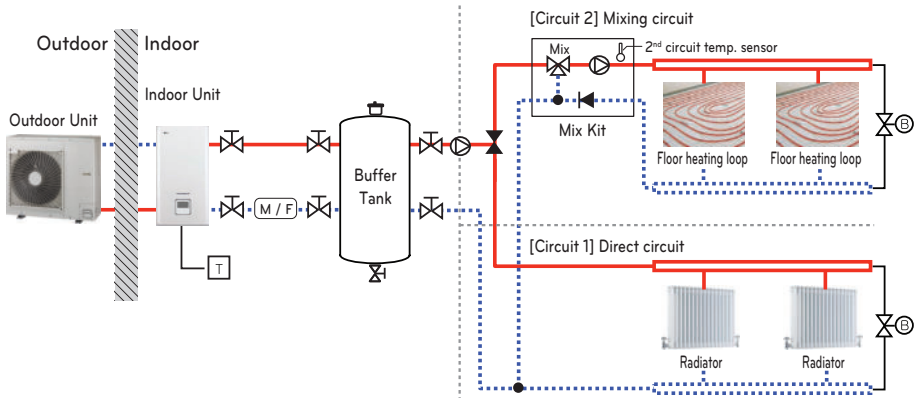


NOTE

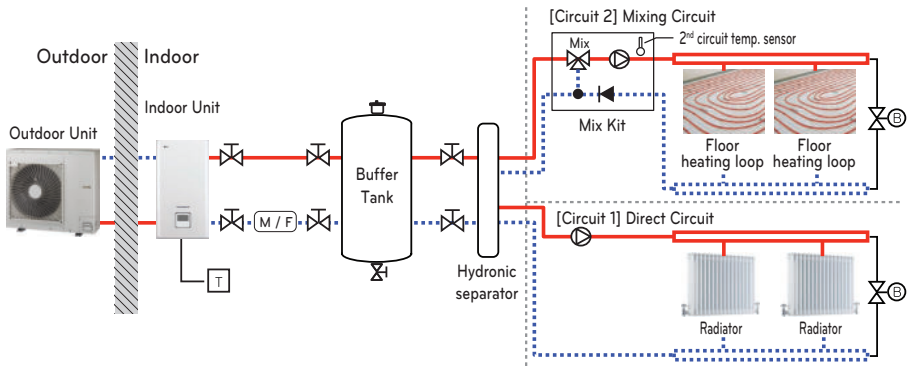
- DHW tank
 - It should be equipped with booster heater to generate sufficient heat energy in very cold season.
 - DHW : Domestic Hot Water
- Pump
 - Maximum power consumption of pump should be less than 0.25 kW.

— High Temperature	2way valve (Field supply)	Shut-off valve
.... Low Temperature	3way valve (Field supply)	Room Thermostat (Field supply)
Magnetic Filter (Mandatory)	By-pass valve (Field supply)	Pump (Field supply)

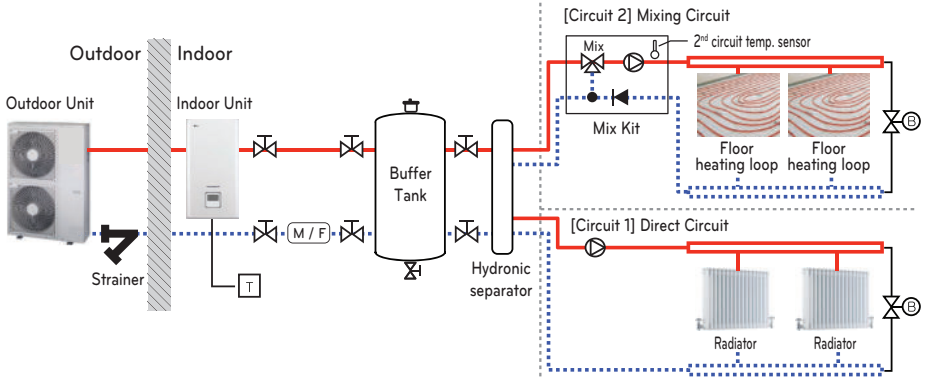
CASE 4-1: Connecting 2nd Circuit (For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series, For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)



CASE 4-2: Connecting 2nd Circuit (For Split Indoor unit 5 Series)



CASE 4-3: Connecting 2nd Circuit (For Hydrosplit)



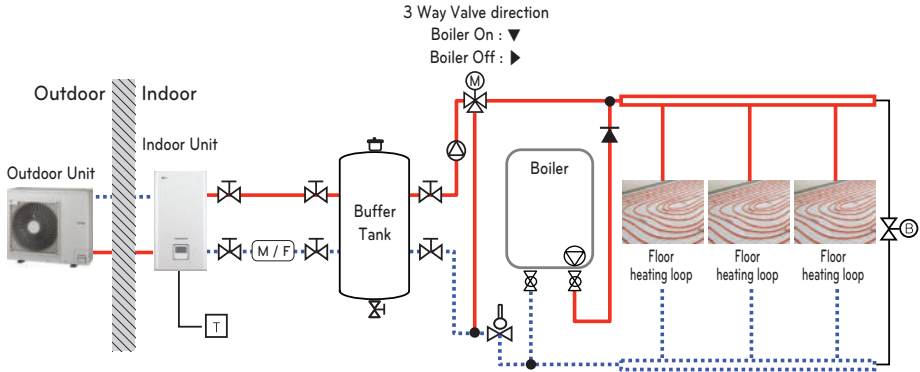
✳ Water In / Water Out installation scene may vary depending on the model.

NOTE

- Mix Kit
 - You can install it when you want to set the temperature of two rooms individually
 - When heating, Circuit 2 can not be higher than Circuit 1.
 - When cooling, Circuit 2 can not be lower than Circuit 1.
 - The types and specifications of the Mix Kit are to comply with **THERMAV** Installation Manual.

High Temperature	2way valve (Field supply)	Room Thermostat (Field supply)
Low Temperature	3way valve (Field supply)	Air vent (Field supply)
Magnetic Filter (Mandatory)	By-pass valve (Field supply)	Pressure Regulation valve (Field supply)
Shut-off valve	Pump (Field supply)	Mix Kit (Field supply)

CASE 5: Connecting 3rd Party Boiler



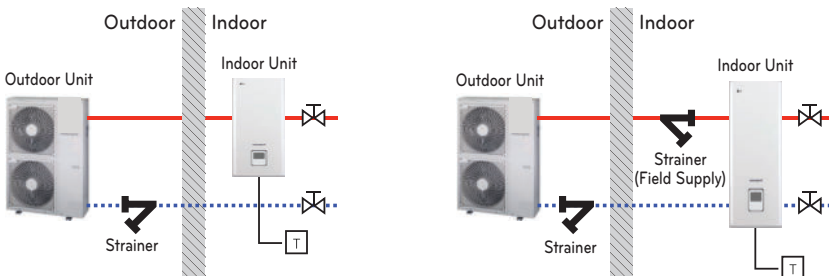
NOTE

- 3rd Party Boiler
 - 3rd party boiler can be controlled by manually via remote controller or automatically itself by means of comparing the outside air temperature and the pre-set temperature.
- 3way valve
 - Type of 3way valve and specification should be complied with **THERMAV** installation manual.

— High Temperature	⊗ 2way valve (Field supply)	⊞ Room Thermostat (Field supply)
.... Low Temperature	⊗ 3way valve (Field supply)	⊞ Air vent (Field supply)
M / F Magnetic Filter (Mandatory)	⊗ By-pass valve (Field supply)	⊞ Aquastat Valve
⊞ Shut-off valve	⊞ Pump (Field supply)	⊞ Check Valve

(For Hydrosplit)

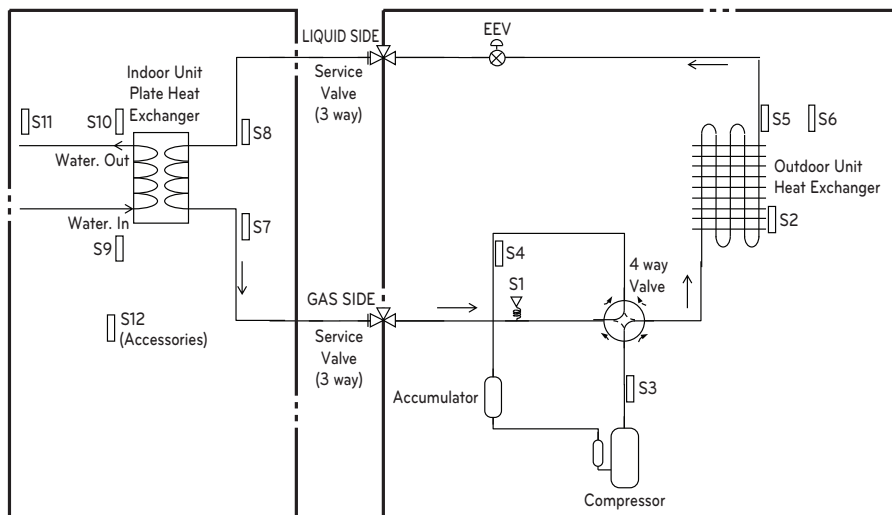
To protect the product, be sure to install a strainer on the water inlet pipe.



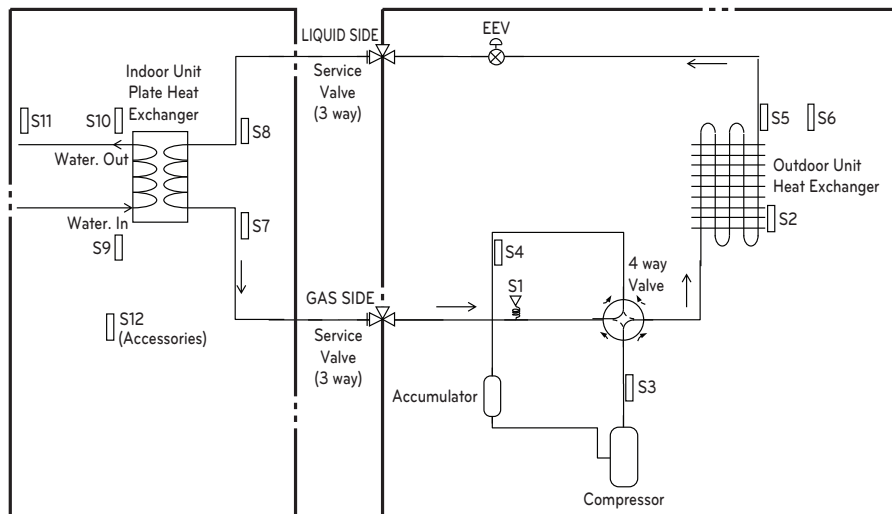
* Water In / Water Out installation scene may vary depending on the model.

Cycle Diagram (For R410A)

Outdoor unit 3 Series



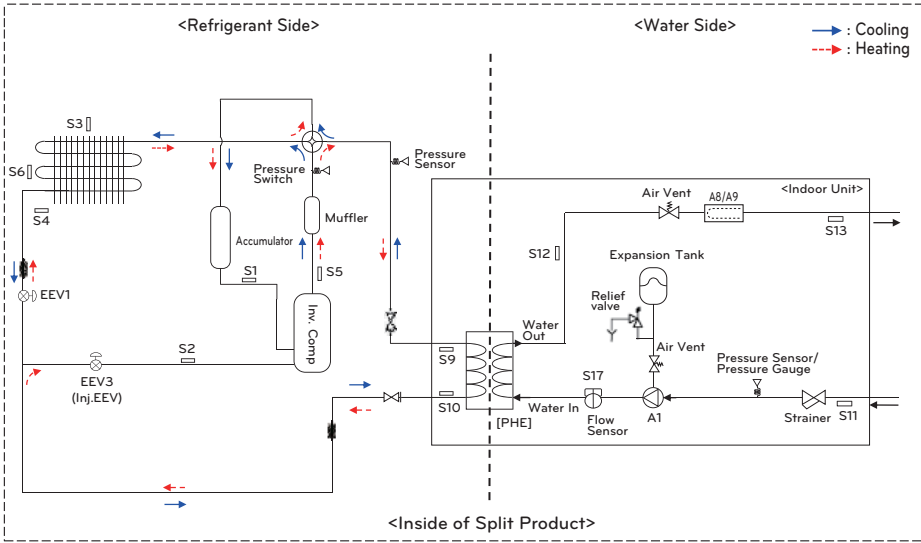
Outdoor unit 4 Series



Description

Category	Symbol	Meaning	PCB Connector	Remarks
Outdoor Unit	S1	Pressure sensor	CN_H_PRESS	
	S2	Condenser middle temperature sensor	CN_MID	
	S3	Compressor-discharge pipe temperature sensor	CN_DISCHA	
	S4	Compressor-suction pipe temperature sensor	CN_SUCTION	
	S5	Condenser temperature sensor	CN_C_PIPE	- Description is expressed based on Cooling mode.
	S6	Outdoor air temperature sensor	CN_AIR	
	EEV	Electronic Expansion Valve	CN_EEV1_WH	
Indoor Unit	S7	PHEX gas temp. sensor	CN_PIPE_OUT	- Meaning is expressed based on Cooling mode.
	S8	PHEX liquid temp. sensor	CN_PIPE_IN	
	S9	Entering water temperature sensor	CN_TH3	
	S10	Leaving water temperature sensor		
	S11	Electric heater outlet temperature sensor		
	S12	Remote air temperature sensor	CN_ROOM	- Optional accessory (being sold separately) - Not shown in diagram

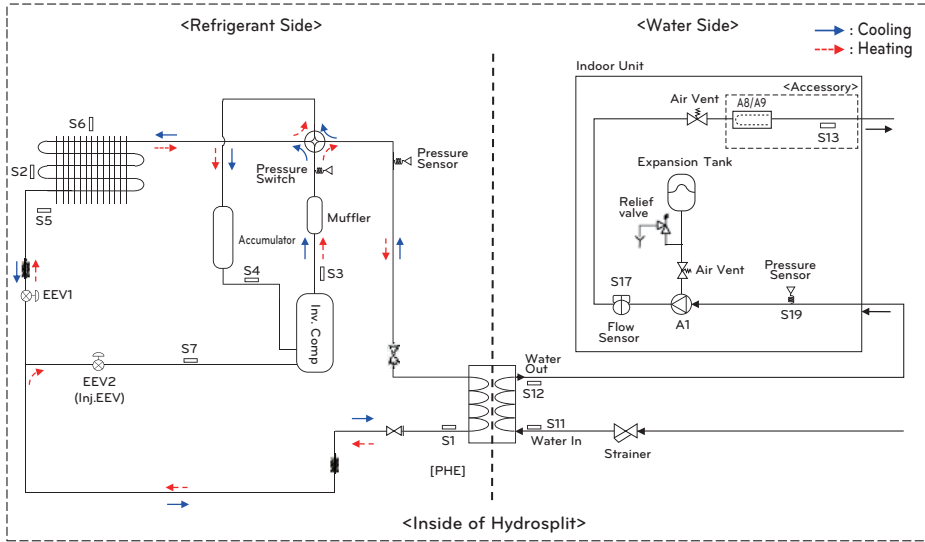
Cycle Diagram (For R32 Split)



Description

Category	Symbol	Meaning	PCB Connector
Refrigerant side	S1	Compressor-suction pipe temperature sensor	CN_SUCTION
	S2	Inlet IHEx temperature sensor	CN_VI_IN
	S3	Outdoor air temperature sensor	CN_AIR
	S4	Outdoor-HEX temp. sensor	CN_C_PIPE
	S5	Compressor-discharge pipe temperature sensor	CN_DISCHARGE
	S6	Outdoor-HEX middle temp. sensor	CN_MID
	S9	PHEX gas temp. sensor	CN_PIPE/OUT
	S10	PHEX liquid temp. sensor	CN_PIPE/IN
	EEV1	Electronic Expansion Valve (Heating)	CN_EEV1
	EEV3	Electronic Expansion Valve (Injection)	CN_EEV3
Water Side	S11	Inlet water temperature sensor	CN_TH3
	S12	Outlet water temperature sensor	
	S13	Backup heater outlet sensor	
	S17	Flow sensor	CN_F_METER
	A1	Main water pump	CN_MOTOR1 CN_W_PUMP_A
	A8	Electric backup heater (Step 1)	CN_E_HEAT_A
	A9	Electric backup heater (Step 2)	CN_E_HEAT_B

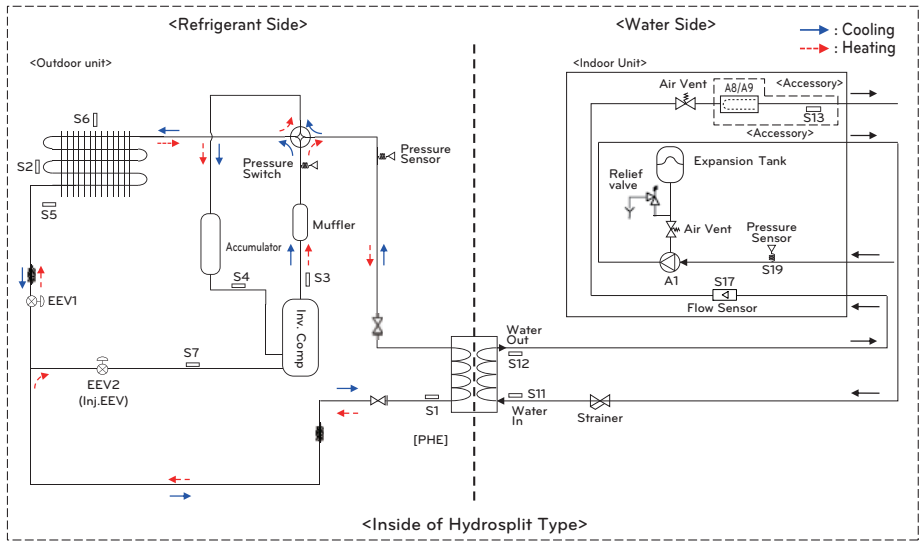
Cycle Diagram (For Hydrosplit 1-Pipe)



Description

Category	Symbol	Meaning	PCB Connector
Refrigerant side	S1	PEHEX liquid temperature sensor	CN_PIPE_IN
	S2	Outdoor-HEX middle temperature sensor	CN_MID
	S3	Compressor-discharge pipe temperature sensor	CN_DISCHARGE
	S4	Compressor-suction pipe temperature sensor	CN_SUCTION
	S5	Outdoor-HEX temperature sensor	CN_C_PIPE
	S6	Outdoor air temperature sensor	CN_AIR
	S7	Compressor-injection pipe temperature sensor	CN_VI_IN
	EEV1	Electronic Expansion Valve (Heating/Cooling)	CN_EEV1
	EEV2	Electronic Expansion Valve (Injection)	CN_EEV_MAIN
Water Side	S12	Outlet water temperature sensor	CN_WATER_OUT
	S11	Inlet water temperature sensor	CN_WATER_IN
	S13	Backup heater outlet temperature sensor	CN_TH3
	S17	Flow sensor	CN_F_SENSOR
	S19	Water pressure sensor	CN_H2O_PRESS
	A1	Main Water Pump	CN_PUMP_A1 CN_MOTOR1
	A8	Electric backup heater (1Ø, Optional accessory)	CN_HEATER_PCB
	A9	Electric backup heater (3Ø, Optional accessory)	HEATER1

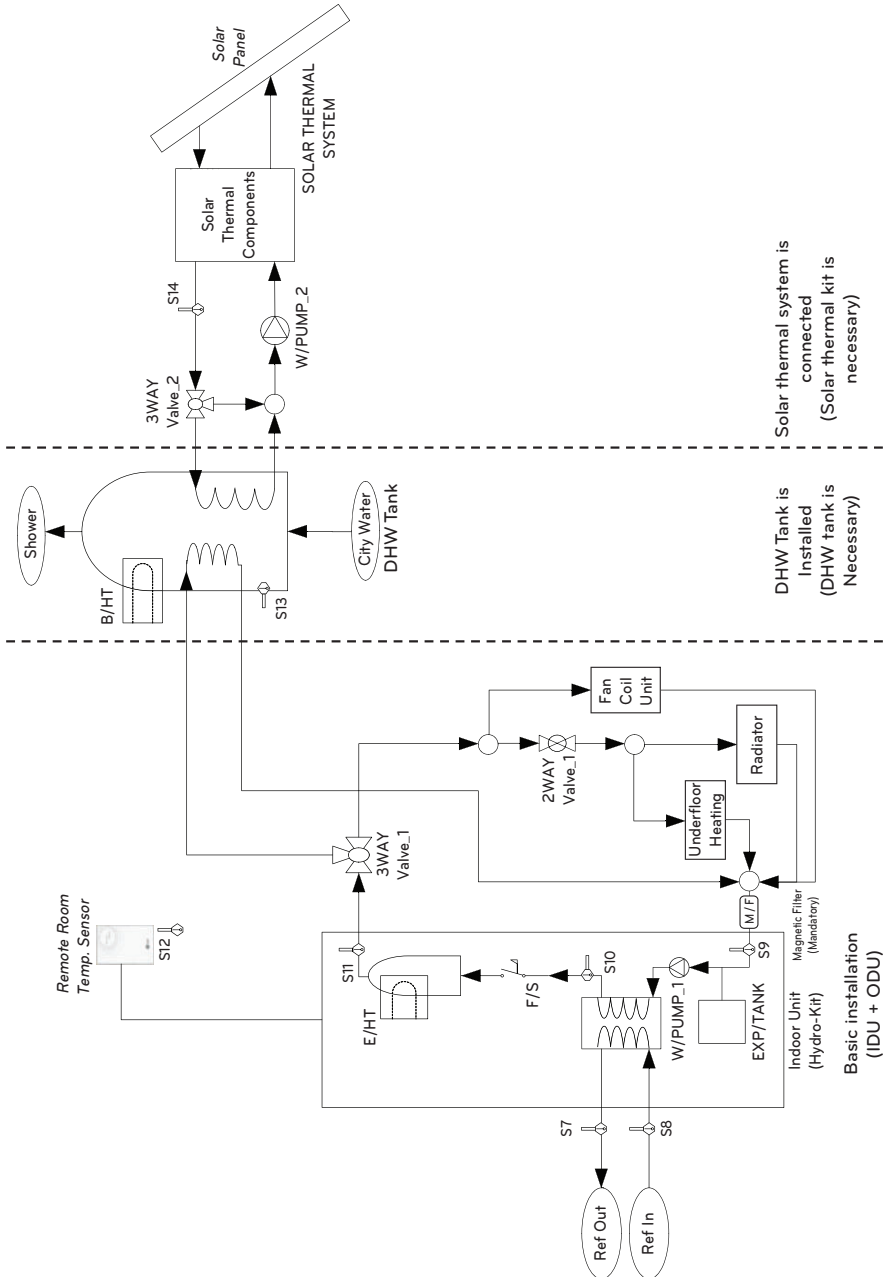
Cycle Diagram (For Hydrosplit 2-Pipe)



Description

Category	Symbol	Meaning	PCB Connector
Refrigerant side	S1	PHEX liquid temperature sensor	CN_PIPE_IN
	S2	Outdoor-HEX middle temperature sensor	CN_MID
	S3	Compressor-discharge pipe temperature sensor	CN_DISCHARGE
	S4	Compressor-suction pipe temperature sensor	CN_SUCTION
	S5	Outdoor-HEX temperature sensor	CN_C_PIPE
	S6	Outdoor air temperature sensor	CN_AIR
	S7	Compressor-injection pipe temperature sensor	CN_VI_IN
	EEV1	Electronic Expansion Valve (Heating/Cooling)	CN_EEV1
	EEV2	Electronic Expansion Valve (Injection)	CN_EEV_MAIN
Water Side	S12	Outlet water temperature sensor	CN_WATER_OUT
	S11	Inlet water temperature sensor	CN_WATER_IN
	S13	Backup heater outlet temperature sensor	CN_TH3
	S17	Flow sensor	CN_F_SENSOR
	S19	Water pressure sensor	CN_H2O_PRESS
	A1	Main Water Pump	CN_PUMP_A1 CN_MOTOR1
	A8	Electric backup heater (1Ø, Optional accessory)	CN_HEATER_PCB
	A9	Electric backup heater (3Ø, Optional accessory)	HEATER1

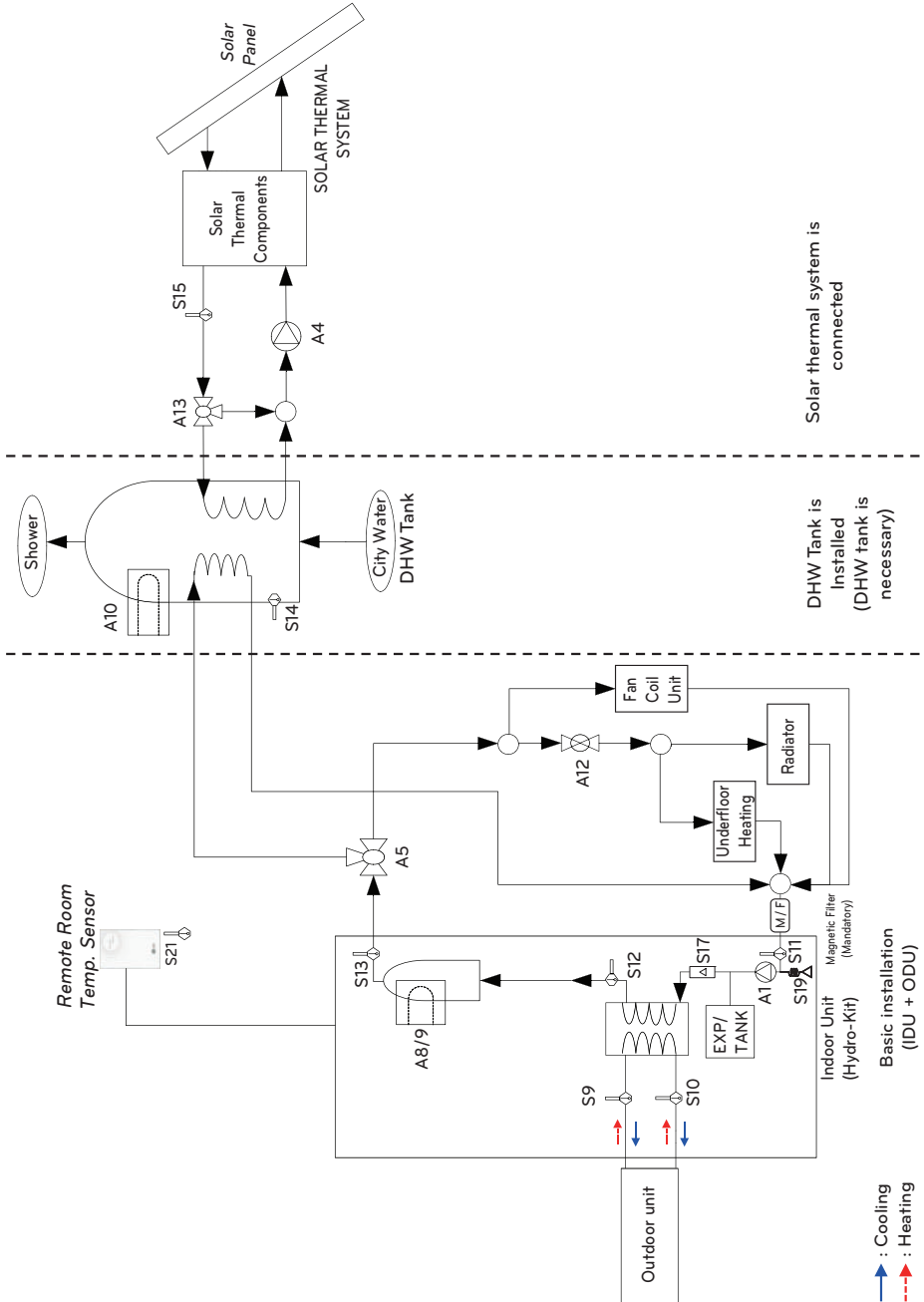
Water cycle (For R410A)



Description (For R410A)

Category	Symbol	Meaning	PCB Connector	Remarks
Indoor Unit	S7	Refrigerant temperature sensor (Gas side)	CN_PIPE_OUT	- Meaning is expressed based on Cooling mode.
	S8	Refrigerant temperature sensor (Liquid side)	CN_PIPE_IN	
	S9	Entering Water temperature sensor	CN_TH3	- S9, S10 and S11 are connected at 6 pin type connector CN_TH3.
	S10	Leaving Water temperature sensor		
	S11	Electric heater outlet temperature sensor		
	F/S	Flow Switch	CN_FLOW1	
	E/HT	Backup heater	CN_E/HEAT(A) CN_E/HEAT(B)	- Heating capacity is divided into two level : partial capacity by E/HEAT(A) and full capacity by E/HEAT(A) + E/HEAT(B). - Operating power(230 V AC 50 Hz) of E/HEAT(A) and E/HEAT(B) are supplied by external power source via relay connector and ELB.
	W_PUMP1	Internal Water Pump	CN_MOTOR1	- Water Pump is connected at CN_MOTOR1
	EXP/TANK	Expansion Tank	(no connector)	- Absorb volume change of heated water,
	S12	Remote Air temperature sensor	CN_ROOM	- Optional accessory (sold separately) - Model : PQRSTA0
	CTR/PNL	Control Panel (or 'Remote Controller')	CN_REMO	- Pre built-in at indoor unit
	2WAY Valve_1	To control water flow for Fan Coil Unit	CN_2WAY(A)	- 3 rd party accessory and Field installation (sold separately) - 2 wire NO or NC type 2way valve is supported.
Water Heating	M / F	Magnetic Filter	(No connector)	- 3 rd party accessory and Field installation (sold separately) - It is Mandatory to install an additional filter on the heating water circuit.
	W/TANK	DHW Tank	(No connector)	- 3 rd party accessory and Field installation (sold separately) - Generating and storing DHW by AWHP or built-in electric heater
	B/HT	Booster heater	CN_B/HEAT(A)	- 3 rd party accessory and Field installation (usually built-in at W/TANK) - Supplying additional water heating capacity.
	3WAY Valve_1	- Flow control for water which is leaving from indoor unit. - Flow direction switching between underfloor and water tank	CN_3WAY(A)	- 3 rd party accessory and Field installation (sold separately) - SPDT type 3way valve is supported.
	CITY WATER	Water to be heated by Indoor unit and B/HT of W/TANK	(no connector)	- Field installation
	SHOWER	Water supplied to end-user	(no connector)	- Field installation
Solar Heating	S13	W/TANK water temperature sensor	CN_TH4	- S13 and S14 are connected at 4 pin type connector CN_TH4. - S13 is a part of DHW tank kit. (Model : PHLTA, PHLTC) - S14 is a part of solar thermal kit (Model:PHLLA)
	S14	Solar-heated water temperature sensor		
	3WAY Valve_2	- Flow control for water which is heated and circulated by SOLAR THERMAL SYSTEM. - Flow direction switching between SOLAR THERMAL SYSTEM and W/TANK	CN_3WAY(B)	- 3 rd party accessory and Field installation (sold separately) - SPDT type 3way valve is supported.
	W_PUMP/2	External Water Pump	CN_W/PUMP(B)	- 3 rd party accessory and Field installation (sold separately) - If water pump of SOLAR THERMAL SYSTEM is incapable of circulation,external water pump can be used.
SOLAR THERMAL SYSTEM		- This system can include following components : Solar panel, Sensors, Thermostats, Interim heat exchanger, Water pump, etc. - To utilized hot water heated by SOLAR THERMAL SYSTEM, end-user must install Solar-Kit accessory (PHLLA) provided by LG	(no connector)	- 3 rd party accessory and Field installation (sold separately)

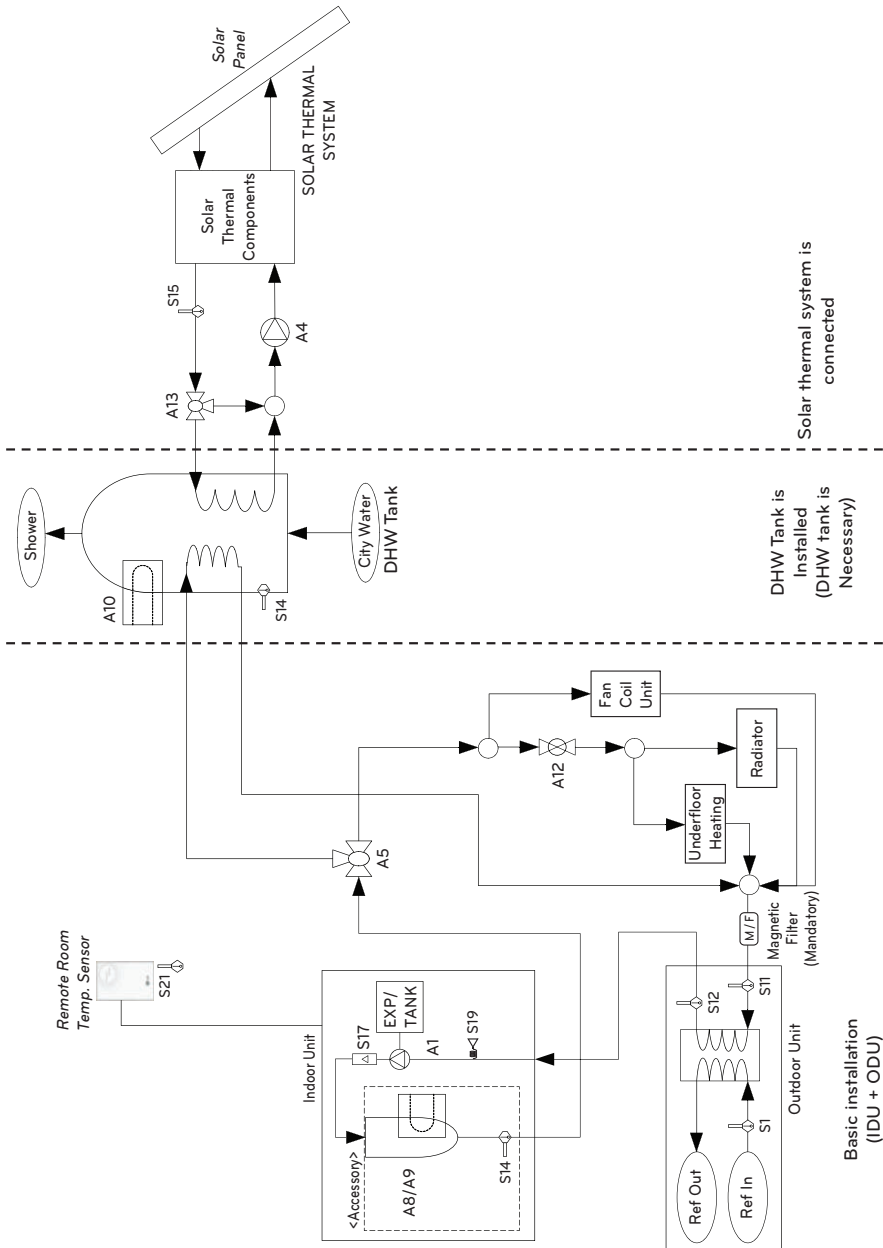
Water cycle (For Split R32)



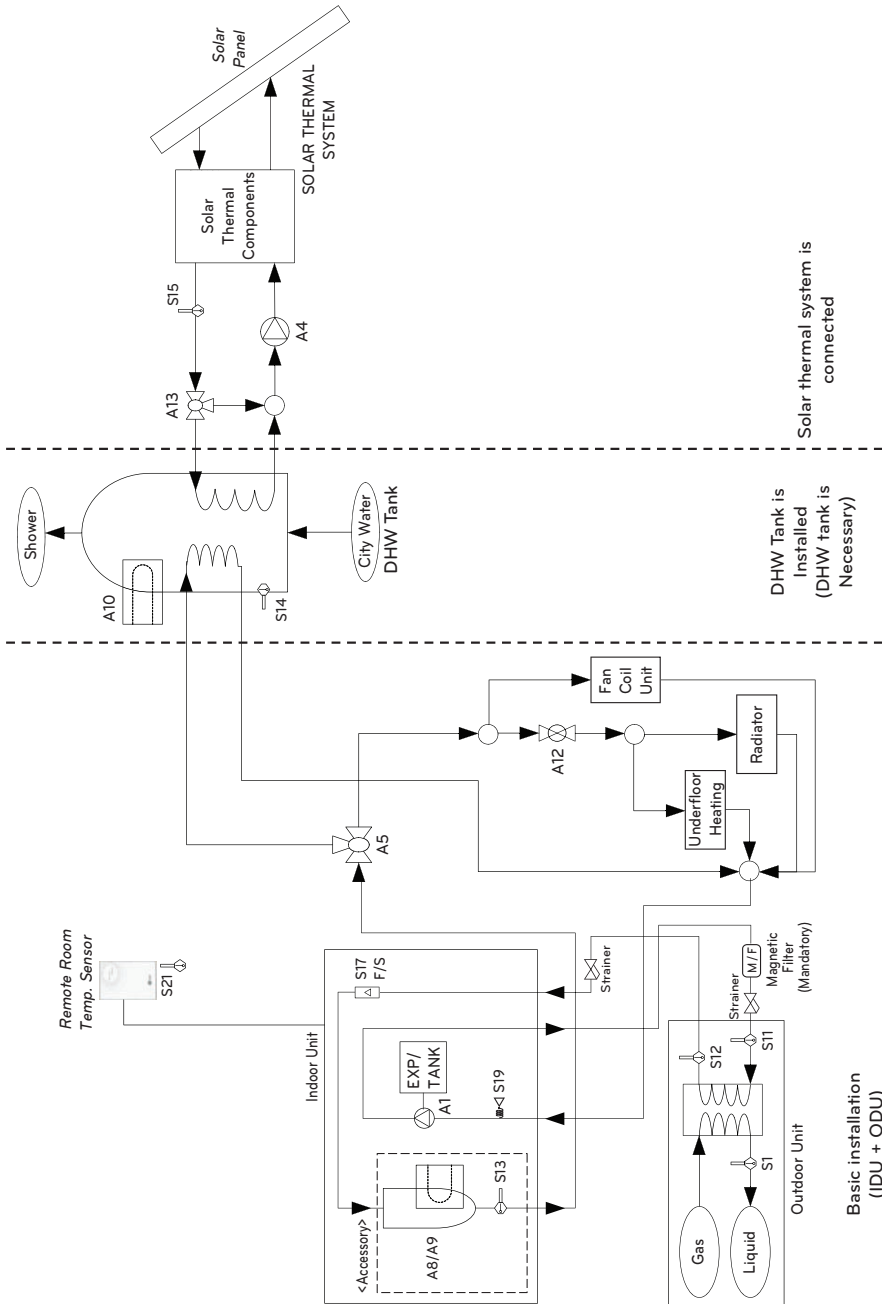
Description (For Split R32)

Category	Symbol	Meaning	PCB Connector	Remarks
Indoor unit / Main circuit	S9	Refrigerant temperature sensor (Gas side)	CN_PIPE_OUT	- NTC5kOhm
	S10	Refrigerant temperature sensor (Liquid side)	CN_PIPE_IN	- NTC5kOhm
	S11	Entering water temperature sensor	CN_TH3 (WATER IN)	- NTC5kOhm - S11,S12 and S13 are connected at 6-pin-type connector CN_TH3
	S12	Leaving water temperature sensor	CN_TH3 (PHEX OUT)	
	S13	Backup heater outlet temperature sensor	CN_TH3 (HEATER OUT)	
	S17	Flow Sensor	CN_F_SENSOR	- to monitor water flow rate
	S19	Entering Water Pressure sensor	CN_H2O_PRESS	- to monitor water pressure
	S20	Reserved	TB_SENSOR (AMBIENT)	
	S21	Remote room air sensor (Direct circuit)	CN_ROOM1	- Accessory: PORSTA0 - NTC10kOhm
	A1	Internal water pump	CN_PUMP_A1 CN_MOTOR1	- Power is supplied via CN_PUMP_A1 - PWM signal is supplied via CN_MOTOR1
	A2	External pump	TB_EXT (PUMP A2)	- voltage-free contact - External water pump if head of internal pump is not sufficient or if parallel buffer tank is used
	A8 / A9	Backup heater (2 steps)	Coil 1: CN_L1, CN_N1 Coil 2: CN_L2, CN_N2 on HEATER-PCB	- Operating power(230 V AC 50 Hz) is supplied by external power source via Terminal block
	A12	2-way valve to block underfloor circuit from cooling water	CN_2WAY_A	- 3rd party accessory and Field installation (sold separately) - 2-wire NO- or NC-type 2-way valve is supported.
	EXP/TANK	Expansion vessel	-	- Absorbs volume change of eating water
	CTR/PNL	Control panel / Remote controller	CN_REMO	
Domestic hot water circuit	M/F	Magnetic filter	-	- 3rd party accessory and Field installation (sold separately) - It is Mandatory to install an additional filter on the heating water circuit.
	S14	DHW tank temperature	CN_TH4 (BOOST)	- S14 is connected at 4-pin-type connector CN_TH4 - Accessory: PHRSTA0 - S14 is a part of DHW tank kit (Model : PHLTA)
	A5	3-way valve for changing between heating (cooling) and DHW tank	CN_3WAY_A	- 3rd party accessory and Field installation (sold separately) - SPDT type 3way valve is supported.
	A10	DHW booster heater	CN_TANK_HEATER	- 3rd party accessory and Field installation (sold separately) - Operating power (230 V AC 50 Hz) is supplied by external power source via Terminal block - Accessory: PHLTA (Relay, harness and DHW sensor)
	W/TANK	Domestic hot water tank	-	- Accessory (OSHW-series) or third-party tank suitable for heat pumps
	A15	Reserved	CN_PUMP_A15	
Solar thermal circuit	S23	Reserved	CN_RECIRC	
	S15	Solar collector sensor	TB_SENSOR (SOLAR)	- 3rd party accessory and Field installation (sold separately) - PT100
	S16	Reserved	CN_TH4 (SOLAR)	- for solar collector sensor use S15
	A4	Solar collector pump	CN_PUMP_A4	- 3rd party accessory and Field installation (sold separately)
	A13	3way-valve Solar	CN_3WAY_B	- 3rd party accessory and Field installation (sold separately) - SPDT type 3way valve is supported.
Solar thermal system	Solar thermal equipment such as collector, solar pump, PT1000 sensor, solar heat-exchanger		-	- 3rd party accessory and Field installation (sold separately)

Water cycle (For Hydrosplit 1-Pipe)



Water cycle (For Hydrosplit 2-Pipe)



Solar thermal system is connected

DHW Tank is Installed (DHW tank is Necessary)

Basic installation (IDU + ODU)

Description (For Hydrosplit)

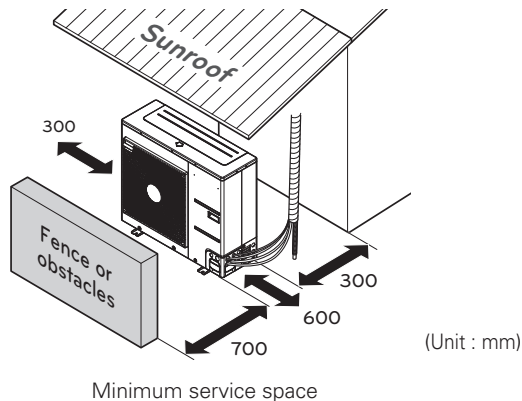
Category	Symbol	Meaning	PCB Connector	Remarks
Outdoor Unit	S1	Refrigerant temperature sensor (Liquid side)	CN_PIPE_IN	Meaning is expressed based on Cooling mode.
	S11	Inlet water temperature sensor	CN_WATER_IN	Entering water temperature sensor
	S12	Outlet water temperature sensor	CN_WATER_OUT	Leaving water temperature sensor
	M/F	Magnetic Filter	(No connector)	- 3rd party accessory and Field installation (sold separately) - It is Mandatory to install an additional filter on the heating water circuit.
Indoor Unit	S19	Entering Water Pressure sensor	CN_H2O_PRESS	
	A8/A9	Backup Heater	(No connector)	- Optional accessory (sold separately) - HA061B E1 : 1Ø, HA063B E1 : 3Ø
	S13	Backup heater outlet temperature sensor	CN_TH3	- Accessory supplied with Backup heater
	A1	Internal Water Pump	CN_MOTOR1 CN_PUMP_A1	- Water Pump is connected at CN_MOTOR1 and CN_PUMP_A1
	A2	External pump	TB_EXT (PUMP A2)	- voltage-free contact - External water pump if head of internal pump is not sufficient or if parallel buffer tank is used
	EXP/TANK	Expansion Tank	(No connector)	- Absorb volume change of heated water.
	S17	Flow sensor	CN_F_SENSOR	
	S21	Remote room air sensor (Direct circuit)	CN_ROOM2	- Optional accessory (sold separately) - PORSTA0
	CTR/PNL	Control Panel (or 'Remote Controller')	CN_REMO	- Pre built-in at indoor unit
	A12	To control water flow for Fan Coil Unit	CN_2WAY_A	- 3 rd party accessory and Field installation (sold separately) - 2 wire NO or NC type 2way valve is supported
Water Heating	W/TANK	DHW Tank	(No connector)	- 3 rd party accessory and Field installation (sold separately) - Generating and storing DHW by AWHF or built-in electric heater
	A10	Booster Heater	CN_TANK_HEATER	- 3 rd party accessory and Field installation (usually built-in at W/TANK) - Supplying additional water heating capacity
	A5	- Flow control for water which is leaving from indoor unit. - Flow direction switching between underfloor and water tank.	CN_3WAY_A	- 3 rd party accessory and Field installation (sold separately)
	CITY WATER	Water to be heated by indoor unit and B/HT of W/TANK	(No connector)	- Field installation
	SHOWER	Water supplied to end-user	(No connector)	- Field installation
	S14	W/TANK water temperature sensor	CN_TH4	- S14 are connected at 4 pin type connector CN_TH4 - S14 is a part of DHW tank kit (Model : PHLTA, PHLTC)
Solar Heating	S15	Solar-heated water temperature sensor	TB_SENSOR SOLAR	- 3rd party accessory and Field installation (sold separately) - PT1000
	A13	- Flow control for water which is heated and circulated by SOLAR THERMAL SYSTEM. - Flow direction switching between SOLAR THERMAL SYSTEM and W/TANK	CN_3WAY_B	- 3 rd party accessory and Field installation (sold separately) - SPDT type 3way valve is supported
	A4	Solar collector pump	CN_PUMP_A4	- 3 rd party accessory and Field installation (sold separately) - If water pump of SOLAR THERMAL SYSTEM is incapable of circulation, external water pump can be used.
	SOLAR THERMAL SYSTEM	- This system can include following components : Solar panel, Sensor, Thermostats, Interim heat exchanger, Water pump, etc.	(No connector)	- 3 rd party accessory and Field installation (sold separately)

INSTALLATION OF OUTDOOR UNIT

The outdoor unit of **THERMAV™** is installed outside to exchange heat with ambient air. Therefore, it is important to secure proper space around the outdoor unit and care for specific external conditions. This chapter presents a guide to install the outdoor unit, make a route to connect with the indoor, and what to do when installed around seaside.

Conditions where Outdoor Unit is Installed

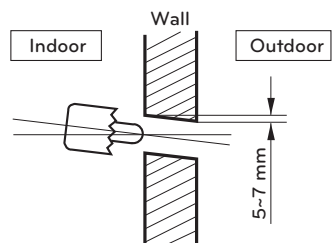
- If a sunroof is built over the unit to prevent direct sunlight or rain exposure, make sure that heat radiation from the heat exchanger is not restricted.
- Ensure that the spaces indicated by arrows around front, back and side of the unit.
- Do not place animals and plants in the path of the warm air.
- Take the weight of the outdoor unit into account and select a place where noise and vibration are minimum.
- Select a place so that the warm air and noise from the outdoor unit do not disturb neighbors.
- Place that can sufficiently endure the weight and vibration of the outdoor unit and where even Installation is possible.
- Place that has no direct influence of snow or rain.
- Place with no danger of snowfall or icicle drop.
- Place without weak floor of base such as decrepit part of the building or with a lot of snow accumulation.
- In places where there is a lot of snow, place the unit higher than the snow can be accumulated.



※ The feature may be vary according to the type of model.

Drill a Hole in the Wall (For Split)

- If making a hole to the wall is required to connect pipe between the indoor unit and the outdoor unit, please follow below descriptions.
Drill the piping hole with a $\varnothing 70$ mm hole core drill.
Piping hole should be slightly slant to the outdoor side to prevent raindrop into indoor side.

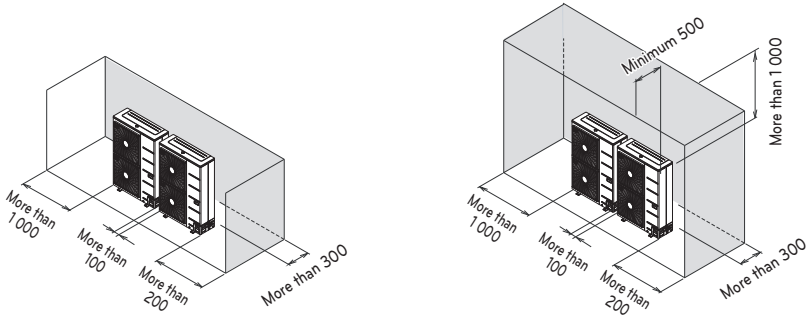


Multiple installation

When installing two or more units, please observe the installation space.

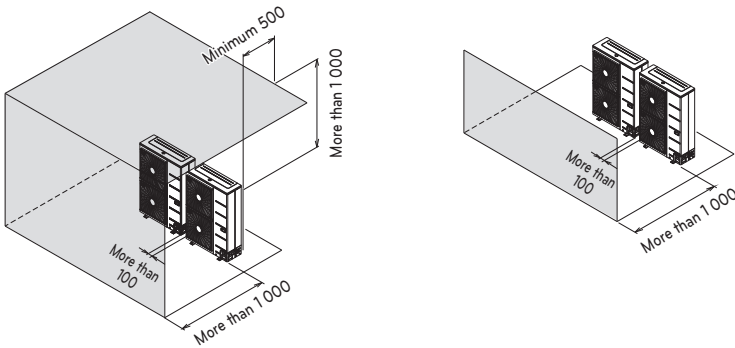
- If there is an obstruction in the intake

Unit : mm



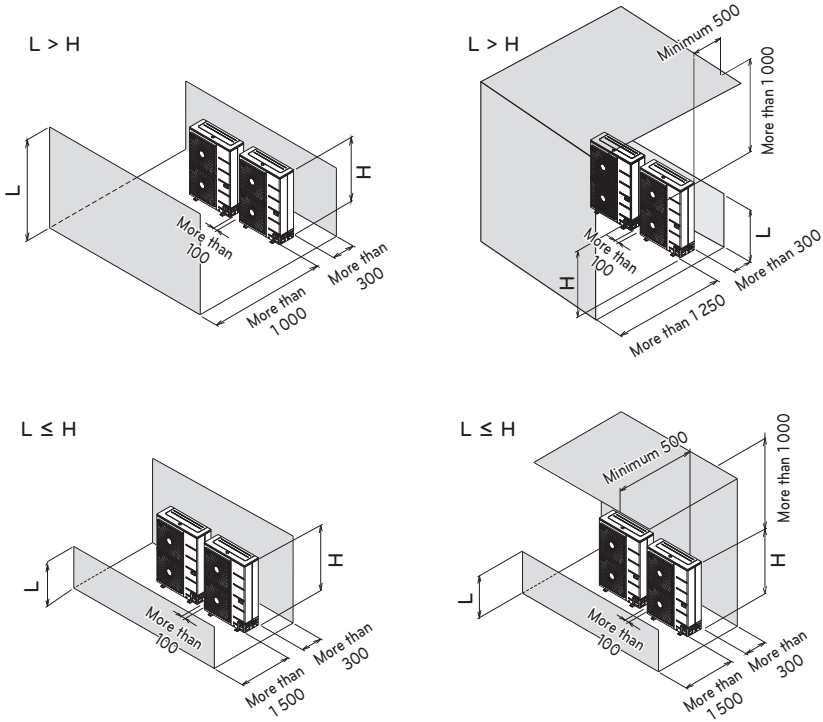
- If there is an obstruction in the discharge part

Unit : mm



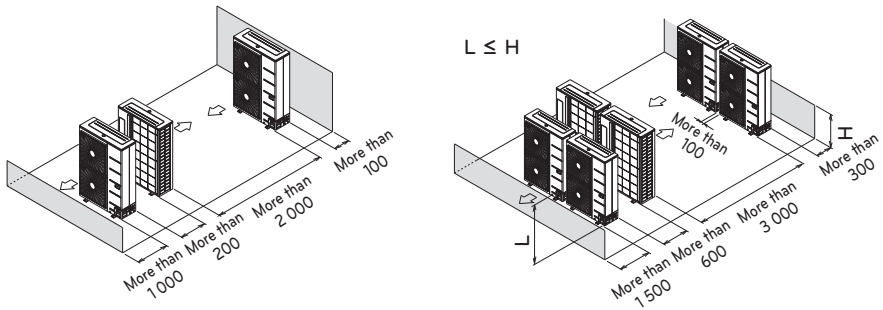
- When there is an obstacle in the suction or discharge part

Unit : mm



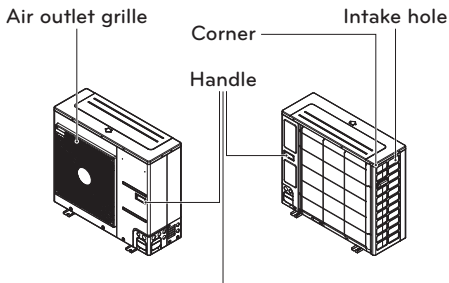
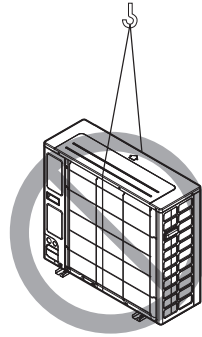
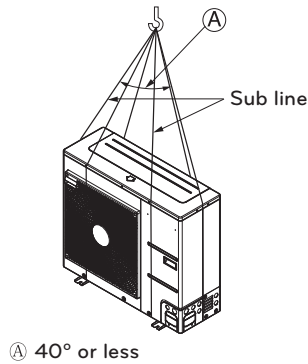
- Multiple installation on the roof

Unit : mm

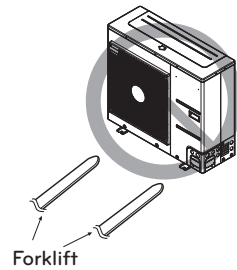


Transporting the Unit

- When carrying the suspended unit, pass the ropes between legs of base panel under the unit.
- Always lift the unit with ropes attached at four points so that impact is not applied to the unit.
- Attach the ropes to the unit at an angle $\textcircled{A}$ of 40° or less.
- Use only accessories and parts which are of the designated specification when installing.
- Forklift trucks are not available without a palette.
- Be careful not to damage the product when moving the forklift.



Always hold the unit by the corners, as holding it by the side intake holes on the casing may cause them to deform.





CAUTION

Be very careful while carrying the product.

- Do not have only one person carry product if it is more than 20 kg.
- PP bands are used to pack some products. Do not use them as a mean for transportation because they are dangerous.
- Do not touch heat exchanger fins with your bare hands. Otherwise you may get a cut in your hands.
- Tear plastic packaging bag and scrap it so that children cannot play with it. Otherwise plastic packaging bag may suffocate children to death.
- When carrying in Unit, be sure to support it at four points. Carrying in and lifting with 3-point support may make Outdoor Unit unstable, resulting in a fall.
- Use 2 belts of at least 8 m long.
- Place extra cloth or boards in the locations where the casing comes in contact with the sling to prevent damage.
- Hoist the unit making sure it is being lifted at its center of gravity.

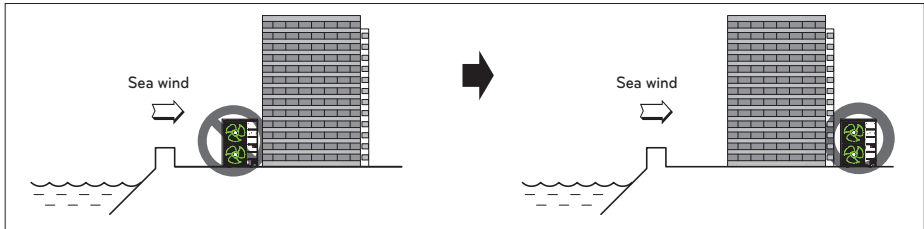
Installation at Seaside

⚠ CAUTION

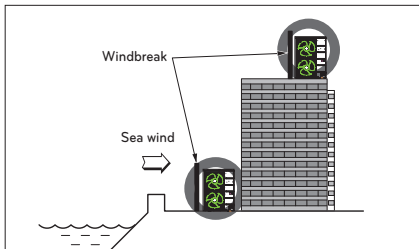
- Unit should not be installed in areas where corrosive gases, such as acid or alkaline gas, are produced.
- Do not install the product where it could be exposed to sea wind (salty wind) directly. It can result corrosion on the product. Corrosion, particularly on the condenser and evaporator fins, could cause product malfunction or inefficient performance.
- If outdoor unit is installed close to the seaside, it should avoid direct exposure to the sea wind. Otherwise it needs additional anti-corrosion treatment on the heat exchanger.

Selecting the location(Outdoor Unit)

- If the outdoor unit is to be installed close to the seaside, direct exposure to the sea wind should be avoided. Install the outdoor unit on the opposite side of the sea wind direction.



- In case, to install the outdoor unit on the seaside, set up a windbreak not to be exposed to the sea wind.



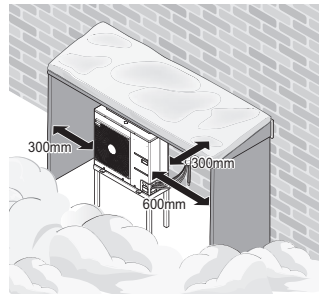
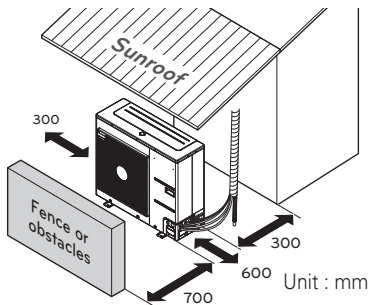
- It should be strong enough like concrete to prevent the sea wind from the sea.
- The height and width should be more than 150% of the outdoor unit.
- It should be keep more than 700 mm of space between outdoor unit and the windbreak for easy air flow.

- Select a well-drained place.
Periodic (more than once/year) cleaning of the dust or salt particles stuck on the heat exchanger by using water.
- If you can't meet above guide line in the seaside installation, please contact your supplier for the additional anti-corrosion treatment.

Seasonal Wind and Cautions in Winter

In areas with low ambient temperature, high humidity, or heavy snowfall, particular measures are required to ensure that the unit operates properly.

- Install the unit so that it does not come into direct contact with snow. If snow accumulates and freezes in the air inlet, the system may malfunction. When installing in an area with heavy snowfall, attach the hood to the system.
- Install the suction and discharge ducts to prevent the entry of snowfall or rainfall.
- When installing in an area with heavy snowfall, install it on an installation console which is 500mm higher than the average snowfall (annual average snowfall).
- The height of the H frame must be at least twice the amount of snowfall and its width must not exceed the width of the unit. (Snow may accumulate if the width of the frame is wider than the width of the unit.)
- If condensed water from the outdoor unit freezes around the product, the floor/ground may become slippery and cause an accident, so do not install the outdoor unit near a sidewalk. If it is unavoidable, install a water channel or drainage pipe to prevent condensed water from flowing onto the sidewalk.
- Use "Rapid Defrost Mode" in sites with snowfall or low temperatures and high humidity.
 - * The Rapid Defrost Mode is a rapid defrost mode designed to prevent accumulated icing in sites with snowfall or low temperatures and high humidity. Refer to "Dip Switch Setting".
- If more than 100mm of snow has accumulated on the top of the product, be sure to remove the snow before carrying out any work on the unit.
- Do not install the inlet or outlet of the unit so that they face seasonal winds.
- Make preparations for snow and/or seasonal winter winds in all areas in which the unit is installed.



INSTALLATION OF INDOOR UNIT

The indoor unit of **THERMAV** is installed inside where terminal of under floor water pipe cycle and refrigerant pipe from the outdoor unit are accessible at the same time.

In this chapter conditions for installation place is described. In addition, considerations when installing accessories or 3rd party accessories are described, too.

Conditions where Indoor Unit is Installed

Specific conditions are required for installation place such as service space, wall mounting, water pipe length and height, total volume of water, adjusting expansion vessel, and water quality.

General Considerations

Followings are should be considered before the installation of the indoor unit.

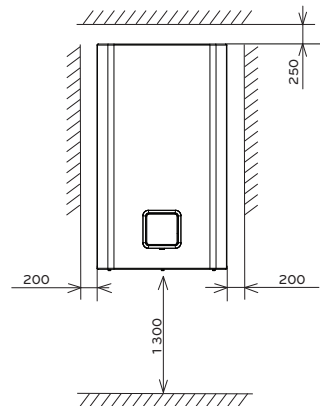
- The installation place should be free from outdoor weather conditions such as rain, snow, wind, frost, etc.
- Choose the place where is water-resistant or good drainage.
- Service space should be secured.
- No flammable materials around the indoor unit.
- Mice can not be appeared to prevent entering the indoor unit or attacking wires.
- Do not place anything in front of the indoor unit to ensure air circulation around the indoor unit.
- Do not locate anything under the indoor unit to be free from unexpected water out.
- In case of water pressure increasing to 3 bar, water drainage should be treated when water is drained by safety valve.

Service Space

- Ensure that the spaces indicated by arrows around bottom, side, and top side.
- Wider spaces are preferred for easy maintenance and piping.
- If minimum service space is not secured, air circulation can be troubled and internal parts of the indoor unit can be damaged by overheating.

NOTE

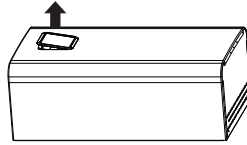
- The default setting of the product is for heating only. To use the cooling system together, DIP S / W 4 should be turned ON and additional drain pan accessory should be installed.



Minimum service space
(unit : mm)

Mounting to Wall

Step 1. Disconnect the remote control case from the front panel and disconnect the remote control cable.

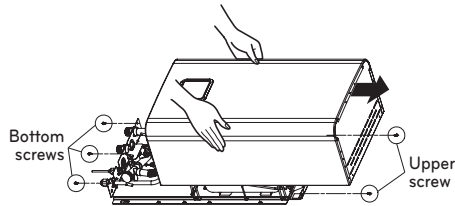
**CAUTION**

After installation is completed, return the remote control to its original state.

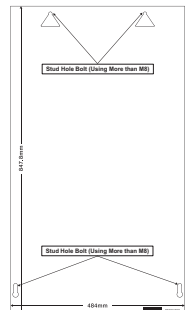
NOTE

Use a flat-blade screwdriver or a coin to remove the remote control case.

Step 2. After releasing five screws, detach front cover from the indoor unit. While detaching the front cover, grab the left and right sides of the front cover. Then pull into upward direction.



Step 3. Attach "Installation Sheet" to the wall and mark the location of bolts. This sheet helps to find correct location to the bolts.

**CAUTION**

The attached "Installation sheet" should be level.

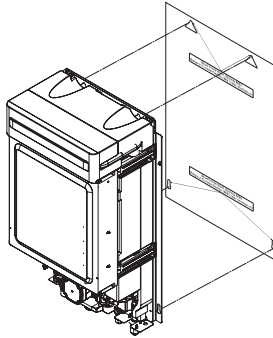
If not, the supporting plate and the indoor unit will not be mounted correctly.

Step 4. Detach the Installation sheet. Screw bolts at the hole marks on the wall.
When screwing bolts, use M8 ~ M11 anchor bolts to secure hanging the indoor unit.

NOTE

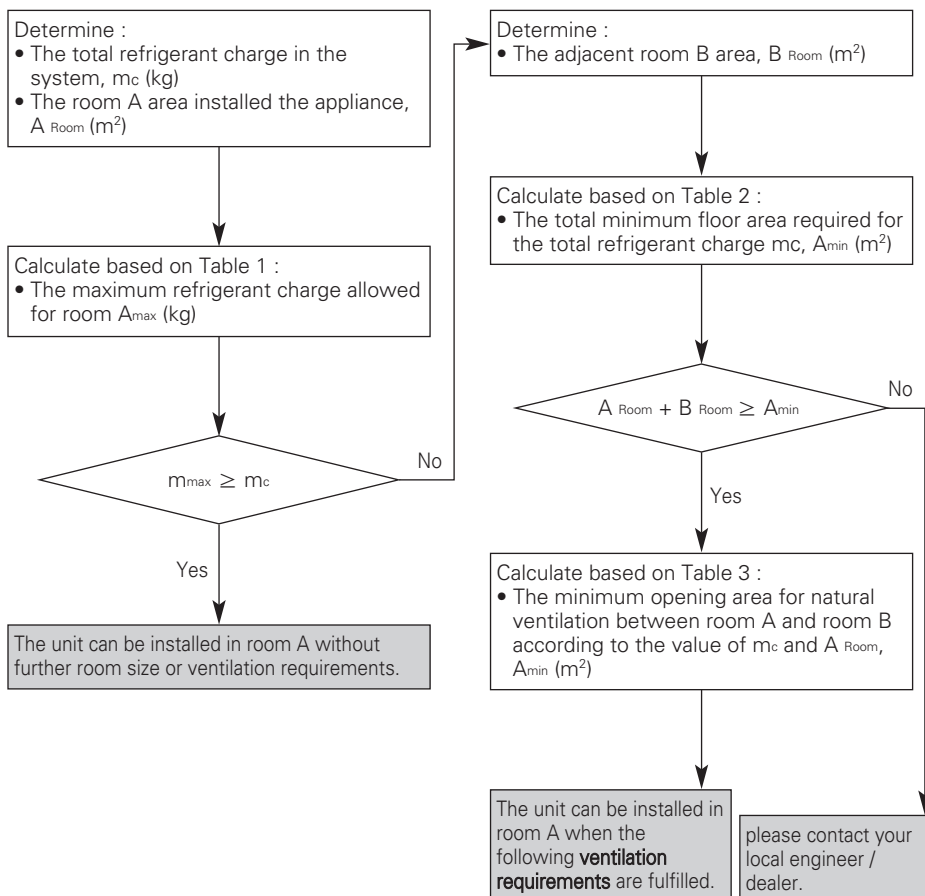
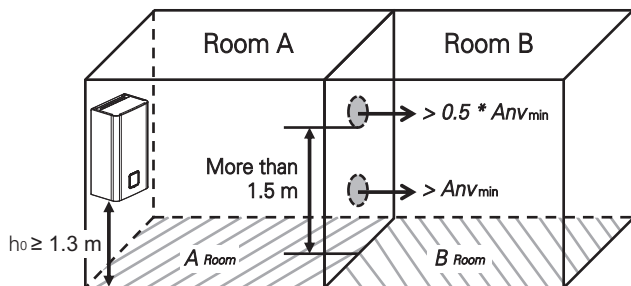
Self drilling screw can be used as alternatives of M8 ~ M11 anchor bolts. But M8 ~ M11 anchor bolts are more preferred.

Step 5. Hang the indoor unit at the supporting plate.



Floor area requirement : indoor unit (For R32 Split)

- If the total refrigerant charge (m_c) is in system ≥ 1.842 kg, additional minimum floor area requirements is complied in the following flow chart.



Ventilation requirements

- Two ventilation openings, one at bottom, another at top, for ventilation purposes are made between room A and room B.
- **Bottom opening :**
 - Must comply to the minimum area requirement of Anv_{min} .
 - Opening must be located 300 mm from the floor.
 - At least 50 % of required opening area must be 200 mm from the floor.
 - The bottom of the opening shall not be higher than the point of release when the unit is installed and must be situated 100 mm above the floor.
 - Must be as close as possible to the floor and lower than h_0 .
(h_0 = Installation height)
- **Top opening :**
 - The total size of the Top opening must be more than 50 % of Anv_{min} .
 - Opening must be located 1 500 mm above the floor.
- The height of the openings between the wall and floor which connect the rooms are not less than 20 mm.
- Ventilation openings to the outside are NOT considered suitable ventilation openings (the user can block them when it is cold).

Table 1 - Maximum refrigerant charge allowed in a room

A_{room} (m ²)	Maximum refrigerant charge in a room m_{max} (kg)					
	Based on h_0 (m)					
	1.3	1.4	1.5	1.6	1.7	1.8
1	0.30	0.32	0.35	0.37	0.39	0.41
2	0.60	0.64	0.69	0.74	0.78	0.83
3	0.90	0.97	1.04	1.11	1.17	1.24
4	1.20	1.29	1.38	1.47	1.57	1.66
5	1.50	1.61	1.73	1.84	1.96	2.07
6	1.80	1.93	2.07	2.21	2.35	2.49
7	1.96	2.12	2.27	2.42	2.57	2.72
8	2.10	2.26	2.42	2.59	2.75	2.91
9	2.23	2.40	2.57	2.74	2.91	3.09
10	2.35	2.53	2.71	2.89	3.07	3.25
11	2.46	2.65	2.84	3.03	3.22	3.41
12	2.57	2.77	2.97	3.17	3.36	3.56
13	2.68	2.88	3.09	3.30	3.50	3.71
14	2.78	2.99	3.21	3.42	3.63	3.85
15	2.88	3.10	3.32	3.54	3.76	3.98
16	2.97	3.20	3.43	3.66	3.88	4.11
17	3.06	3.30	3.53	3.77	4.00	4.24
18	3.15	3.39	3.64	3.88	4.12	4.36

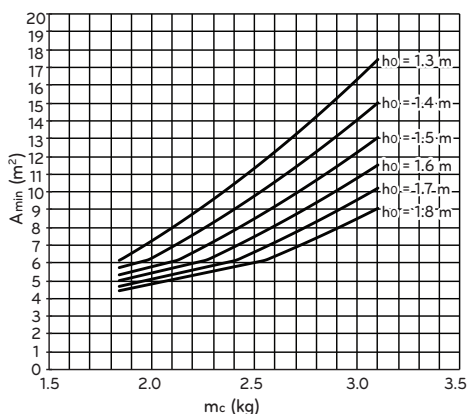
NOTE

- h_0 : Installation height, height measured from the bottom of the casing to the floor
- For intermediate $A_{room A}$ values, the value that corresponds to the lower $A_{room A}$ value from the table is considered.
(If $A_{room A}=10.5$ m², consider the value that corresponds to $A_{room A} = 10$ m².)

Table 2 - Minimum floor area

Total Ref. Amount m_c (kg)	Minimum Floor Area A_{min} (m ²)					
	Based on h_o (m)					
	1.3	1.4	1.5	1.6	1.7	1.8
1.84	6.15	5.71	5.33	4.99	4.70	4.44
1.86	6.27	5.77	5.39	5.05	4.75	4.49
1.88	6.41	5.83	5.44	5.10	4.80	4.54
1.90	6.54	5.89	5.50	5.16	4.85	4.58
1.92	6.68	5.96	5.56	5.21	4.91	4.63
1.94	6.82	6.02	5.62	5.27	4.96	4.68
1.96	6.96	6.08	5.67	5.32	5.01	4.73
1.98	7.11	6.14	5.73	5.37	5.06	4.78
2.00	7.25	6.25	5.79	5.43	5.11	4.83
2.02	7.40	6.38	5.85	5.48	5.16	4.87
2.04	7.54	6.51	5.91	5.54	5.21	4.92
2.06	7.69	6.63	5.96	5.59	5.26	4.97
2.08	7.84	6.76	6.02	5.65	5.31	5.02
2.10	8.00	6.89	6.08	5.70	5.37	5.07
2.12	8.15	7.03	6.14	5.75	5.42	5.12
2.14	8.30	7.16	6.24	5.81	5.47	5.16
2.16	8.46	7.29	6.35	5.86	5.52	5.21
2.18	8.62	7.43	6.47	5.92	5.57	5.26
2.20	8.77	7.57	6.59	5.97	5.62	5.31
2.22	8.93	7.70	6.71	6.03	5.67	5.36
2.24	9.10	7.84	6.83	6.08	5.72	5.40
2.26	9.26	7.98	6.96	6.13	5.77	5.45
2.28	9.42	8.13	7.08	6.22	5.82	5.50
2.30	9.59	8.27	7.20	6.33	5.88	5.55
2.32	9.76	8.41	7.33	6.44	5.93	5.60
2.34	9.93	8.56	7.46	6.55	5.98	5.65
2.36	10.10	8.71	7.58	6.67	6.03	5.69
2.38	10.27	8.85	7.71	6.78	6.08	5.74
2.40	10.44	9.00	7.84	6.89	6.13	5.79
2.42	10.62	9.15	7.97	7.01	6.21	5.84
2.44	10.79	9.31	8.11	7.13	6.31	5.89
2.46	10.97	9.46	8.24	7.24	6.42	5.94
2.48	11.15	9.61	8.38	7.36	6.52	5.98
2.50	11.33	9.77	8.51	7.48	6.63	6.03
2.52	11.51	9.93	8.65	7.60	6.73	6.08
2.54	11.70	10.09	8.79	7.72	6.84	6.13
2.56	11.88	10.24	8.92	7.84	6.95	6.20
2.58	12.07	10.41	9.06	7.97	7.06	6.29
2.60	12.26	10.57	9.21	8.09	7.17	6.39
2.62	12.44	10.73	9.35	8.22	7.28	6.49
2.64	12.64	10.89	9.49	8.34	7.39	6.59
2.66	12.83	11.06	9.64	8.47	7.50	6.69
2.68	13.02	11.23	9.78	8.60	7.61	6.79
2.70	13.22	11.40	9.93	8.72	7.73	6.89
2.72	13.41	11.57	10.07	8.85	7.84	7.00
2.74	13.61	11.74	10.22	8.99	7.96	7.10
2.76	13.81	11.91	10.37	9.12	8.08	7.20
2.78	14.01	12.08	10.52	9.25	8.19	7.31
2.80	14.21	12.26	10.68	9.38	8.31	7.41

Total Ref. Amount m_c (kg)	Minimum Floor Area A_{min} (m ²)					
	Based on h_o (m)					
	1.3	1.4	1.5	1.6	1.7	1.8
2.82	14.42	12.43	10.83	9.52	8.43	7.52
2.84	14.62	12.61	10.98	9.65	8.55	7.63
2.86	14.83	12.79	11.14	9.79	8.67	7.74
2.88	15.04	12.97	11.29	9.93	8.79	7.84
2.90	15.25	13.15	11.45	10.07	8.92	7.95
2.92	15.46	13.33	11.61	10.20	9.04	8.06
2.94	15.67	13.51	11.77	10.34	9.16	8.17
2.96	15.88	13.70	11.93	10.49	9.29	8.29
2.98	16.10	13.88	12.09	10.63	9.41	8.40
3.00	16.32	14.07	12.26	10.77	9.54	8.51
3.02	16.53	14.26	12.42	10.92	9.67	8.62
3.04	16.75	14.45	12.58	11.06	9.80	8.74
3.06	16.98	14.64	12.75	11.21	9.93	8.85
3.08	17.20	14.83	12.92	11.35	10.06	8.97
3.10	17.42	15.02	13.09	11.50	10.19	9.09

**NOTE**

- h_o : Installation height, height measured from the bottom of the casing to the floor
- For intermediate m_c values, the value that corresponds to the higher m_c value from the table is considered. (If $m_c = 1.85$ kg, the value that corresponds to $m_c = 1.86$ kg is considered.)
- Systems with total refrigerant charge lower than 1.84 kg are not subjected to any room area requirements.
- Charges above 3.10 kg are not allowed in the unit.

[illegible][illegible]

A_{room} (m^2)	Minimum opening area $A_{nv\min}$ (cm^2) (Based on h_o 1.7 m)												
	Total Ref. Amount m_c (kg)												
	3.1	3.0	2.9	2.8	2.7	2.6	2.5	2.4	2.3	2.2	2.1	2.0	1.9
1	651	627	603	579	555	531	507	483	459	435	411	387	363
2	557	533	509	485	461	437	413	389	365	341	317	293	268
3	463	439	415	391	367	343	319	295	271	247	222	198	174
4	369	345	321	297	273	249	225	201	176	152	128	104	80
5	275	251	227	203	179	155	130	106	82	58	34	10	
6	181	157	133	108	84	60	36	12					
7	132	107	82	57	32	8							
8	91	65	39	14									
9	49	23											
10	8												

A_{room} (m^2)	Minimum opening area $A_{nv\min}$ (cm^2) (Based on h_o 1.8 m)												
	Total Ref. Amount m_c (kg)												
	3.1	3.0	2.9	2.8	2.7	2.6	2.5	2.4	2.3	2.2	2.1	2.0	1.9
1	627	604	581	557	534	510	487	464	440	417	394	370	347
2	530	507	484	460	437	414	390	367	344	320	297	274	250
3	434	410	387	364	340	317	294	270	247	223	200	177	153
4	337	313	290	267	243	220	197	173	150	127	103	80	57
5	240	217	193	170	147	123	100	77	53	30	6		
6	143	120	97	73	50	26	3						
7	91	67	43	19									
8	48	23											
9	4												

NOTE

- h_o : Installation height, height measured from the bottom of the casing to the floor
- For intermediate $A_{\text{room A}}$ values, the value that corresponds to the lower $A_{\text{room A}}$ value from the table is considered.
(If $A_{\text{room A}} = 10.5 \text{ m}^2$, consider the value that corresponds to $A_{\text{room A}} = 10 \text{ m}^2$.)
- For intermediate m_c values, the value that corresponds to the higher m_c value from the table is considered. (If $m_c = 2.15 \text{ kg}$, the value that corresponds to $m_c = 2.2 \text{ kg}$ is considered.)

Electrical Wiring

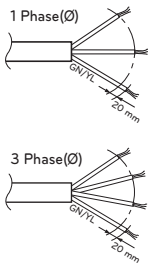
Two kind of cables should be connected to the outdoor unit : One is 'Power cable', the other one is 'Connecting cable'. Power cable is a cable which is used to supply external electricity to the outdoor unit. This cable is generally connected between external power source (such as main electric power distribution panel of user's house) and the outdoor unit. Connecting cable is, on the other hand, used to connect between the outdoor unit and the indoor unit to supply electric power to the indoor unit and to establish the communication between the outdoor unit and the indoor unit.

Procedure for wiring to the outdoor unit is four steps. Before starting wiring, check if wire specification is suitable and read following directions and cautions VERY carefully.



CAUTION

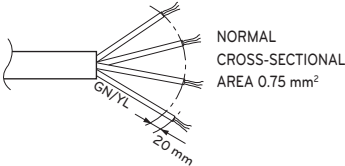
The power cord connected to the outdoor unit should be complied with IEC 60245 or HD 22.4 S4 (This equipment shall be provided with a cord set complying with the national regulation.)



NORMAL CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA

Model Name		Area (mm²)	Cable Type
Phase (Ø)	Capacity (kW)		
1	5	4	H07RN-F
	7		
	9		
	12	6	
	14		
16	2.5		
3		12	
		14	
	16		

The connecting cable connected to the outdoor unit should be complied with IEC 60245 or HD 22.4 S4 (This equipment shall be provided with a cord set complying with the national regulation.)



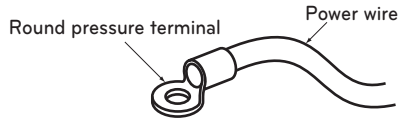
When the connection line between the indoor unit and outdoor unit is over 40 m, connect the telecommunication line and power line separately.

In order to avoid a hazard due to inadvertent resetting of the thermal cut-out, this appliance must not be supplied through an external switching device, such as a timer, or connected to a circuit that is regularly switched on and off by the utility.

If the supply cord is damaged, it must be replaced by the manufacturer, its service agent or similarly qualified persons in order to avoid a hazard.

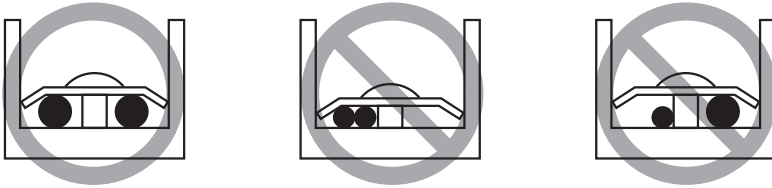
Precautions when laying power wiring

Use round pressure terminals for connections to the power terminal block.



When none are available, follow the instructions below.

- Do not connect wiring of different thicknesses to the power terminal block. (Slack in the power wiring may cause abnormal heat.)
- When connecting wiring which is the same thickness, do as shown in the figure below.



- For wiring, use the designated power wire and connect firmly, then secure to prevent outside pressure being exerted on the terminal block.
- Use an appropriate manual screwdriver instead of electric screwdriver for tightening the terminal screws. A screwdriver with a small head will strip the head and make proper tightening impossible.
- Over-tightening the terminal screws may break them.



WARNING

Make sure that the screws of the terminal are free from looseness.

Point for attention regarding quality of the public electric power supply

- European/International Technical Standard setting the limits for voltage changes, voltage fluctuations and flicker in public low-voltage supply systems for equipment with rated current ≤ 75 A.
- European/International Technical Standard setting the limits for harmonic currents produced by equipment connected to public low-voltage systems with input current ≤ 16 A of > 75 A per phase.

R410A Split 3 series**For 1 Phase (5, 7, 9 kW)**

This equipment complies with IEC (EN) 61000-3-12 in harmonic currents emission limits corresponding $R_{sce} = 33$.

This device is intended for the connection to a power supply system with a maximum permissible system impedance Z_{MAX} of 0.3410Ω at the interface point (power service box) of the user's supply. The user has to ensure that this device is connected only to a power supply system which fulfills the requirement above. If necessary, the user can ask the public power supply company for the system impedance at the interface point.

For 1 Phase (12, 14, 16 kW)

This equipment complies with IEC (EN) 61000-3-12 in harmonic currents emission limits corresponding $R_{sce} = 33$.

This device is intended for the connection to a power supply system with a maximum permissible system impedance Z_{MAX} of 0.3138Ω at the interface point (power service box) of the user's supply. The user has to ensure that this device is connected only to a power supply system which fulfills the requirement above. If necessary, the user can ask the public power supply company for the system impedance at the interface point.

For 3 Phase (12, 14, 16 kW)

This equipment complies with IEC (EN) 61000-3-12 provided that the short-circuit power S_{sc} is greater than or equal to 1421 kVA at the interface point between the user's supply and the public system. It is the responsibility of the installer or user of the equipment to ensure, by consultation with the distribution network operator if necessary, that the equipment is connected only to a supply with a short-circuit power S_{sc} greater than or equal to 1421 kVA.

This equipment complies with IEC (EN) 61000-3-3.

R410A Split 4 series

For 1 Phase (12, 14, 16 kW)

This equipment complies with IEC (EN) 61000-3-12 in harmonic currents emission limits corresponding $R_{sce} = 33$.

This device is intended for the connection to a power supply system with a maximum permissible system impedance Z_{MAX} of 0.3689Ω at the interface point (power service box) of the user's supply. The user has to ensure that this device is connected only to a power supply system which fulfills the requirement above. If necessary, the user can ask the public power supply company for the system impedance at the interface point.

For 3 Phase (12, 14, 16 kW)

This equipment complies with IEC (EN) 61000-3-12 provided that the short-circuit power S_{sc} is greater than or equal to 2088 kVA at the interface point between the user's supply and the public system. It is the responsibility of the installer or user of the equipment to ensure, by consultation with the distribution network operator if necessary, that the equipment is connected only to a supply with a short-circuit power S_{sc} greater than or equal to 2088 kVA.

This equipment complies with IEC (EN) 61000-3-3.

R32 Split

For 1 Phase (5, 7, 9 kW)

This equipment complies with IEC (EN) 61000-3-12 in harmonic currents emission limits corresponding $R_{sce} = 33$.

This device is intended for the connection to a power supply system with a maximum permissible system impedance Z_{MAX} of 0.4305Ω at the interface point (power service box) of the user's supply. The user has to ensure that this device is connected only to a power supply system which fulfills the requirement above. If necessary, the user can ask the public power supply company for the system impedance at the interface point.

Hydrosplit

For 1 Phase (12, 14, 16 kW)

This equipment complies with IEC (EN) 61000-3-12 in harmonic currents emission limits corresponding $R_{sce} = 33$.

This equipment complies with reference impedance for IEC (EN) 61000-3-11.

This device is intended for the connection to a power supply system with a maximum permissible system impedance Z_{MAX} of 0.4512Ω at the interface point (power service box) of the user's supply. The user has to ensure that this device is connected only to a power supply system which fulfills the requirement above. If necessary, the user can ask the public power supply company for the system impedance at the interface point.

For 3 Phase (12, 14, 16 kW)

This equipment complies with IEC (EN) 61000-3-12 provided that the short-circuit power S_{sc} is greater than or equal to 1959 kVA at the interface point between the user's supply and the public system. It is the responsibility of the installer or user of the equipment to ensure, by consultation with the distribution network operator if necessary, that the equipment is connected only to a supply with a short-circuit power S_{sc} greater than or equal to 1959 kVA.

This equipment complies with IEC (EN) 61000-3-3.

Circuit Breaker Specification

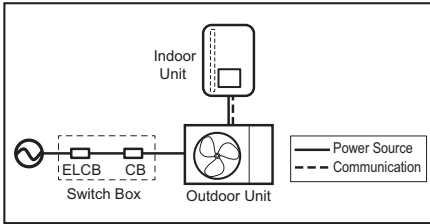
Perform the electrical wiring work according to the electrical wiring connection.

- All wiring must comply with local requirements.
- Select a power source that is capable of supplying the current required by the unit.
- Use a recognized ELCB(Electric Leakage Circuit Breaker) between the power source and the unit. A disconnection device to adequately disconnect all supply lines must be fitted.
- Model of circuit breaker recommended by authorized personnel only

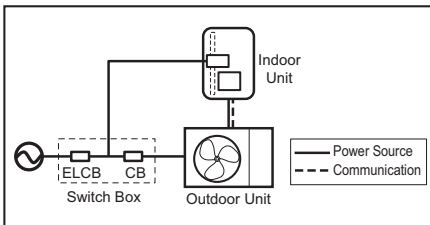
*Pipes and wires should be purchased separately for installation of the product.

Heat Pump							Backup Heater				
Type	Refrigerant	Indoor Unit Series	Phase [Ø]	Capacity [kW]	Power Supply	Outdoor Unit ELCB [A]	Phase [Ø]	Capacity [kW]	Power Supply	Area [mm ²]	ELCB [A]
Split	R32	4	1	5 / 7 / 9	220-240 V~50 Hz	16 / 20 / 25	1	6 (3+3)	220-240 V~50 Hz	4	40
		5									
	R410A	3	1	5 / 7 / 9	220-240 V~50 Hz	30	1	6 (3+3)	220-240 V~50 Hz	4	40
			1	12 / 14 / 16		40	1	6 (3+3)		6	40
			3	12 / 14 / 16	380-415 V~50 Hz	20	3	9 (3+3+3)	380-415 V~50 Hz	2.5	32
		5	1	12 / 14 / 16	220-240 V~50 Hz	40	1	6 (3+3)	220-240 V~50 Hz	6	40
			3	12 / 14 / 16	380-415 V~50 Hz	20	3	6 (2+2+2)	380-415 V~50 Hz	2.5	32
Hydrosplit	R32	0	1	12 / 14 / 16	220-240 V~50 Hz	40	1	-	-	-	-
			3	12 / 14 / 16	380-415 V~50 Hz	16	3	-	-	-	-

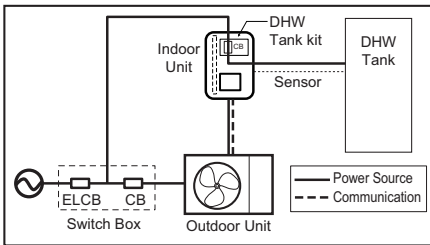
- Power Supply for Heat Pump



- Power Supply for Backup Heater



- Power Supply for DHW Booster Heater



PIPING AND WIRING FOR OUTDOOR UNIT

Procedures about refrigerant piping and electric wiring at the outdoor are described in this chapter. Most of procedures are similar to those of LG Air Conditioner.

*Pipes and wires should be purchased separately for installation of the product.

(For Split)

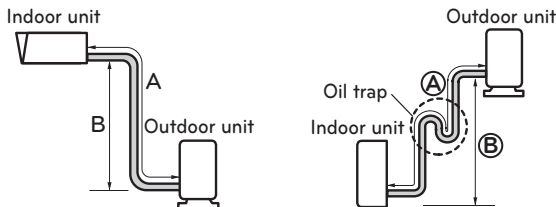
*In the case of Hydrosplit Model, there is no refrigerant piping

Refrigerant Piping

Before starting refrigerant piping, constraints in pipe length and elevation should be examined. After resolving all constraints, some preparations are required to proceed. Then connecting pipe to the outdoor and the indoor unit is beginning.

Constraints in Pipe Length and Elevation

Refrigerant	Capacity (kW)	Pipe Diameter [mm(inch)]		Length A (m)		Elevation B (m)	Additional Refrigerant (g/m)
		Gas	Liquid	Standard	Max.	Max.	
R410A	5/7/9/12/14/16	15.88(5/8")	9.52(3/8")	7.5	50	30	40
R32	5/7/9	15.88(5/8")	9.52(3/8")	5	50	30	40



A trap is necessary when the outdoor unit is installed in a higher position than the indoor unit.

CAUTION

- For R410A products, If the pipe length is longer than 7.5 m, additional charge of the refrigerant is required according to the table.
 - Example : If 16 kW model is installed at a distance of 50 m, 1 700 g of refrigerant should be added according to following formula : $(50-7.5) \times 40 \text{ g} = 1\,700 \text{ g}$
- For R32 products, If the pipe length is longer than 10 m, additional charge of the refrigerant is required according to the table.
 - Example : If R32 9 kW model is installed at a distance of 50 m, 1 600 g of refrigerant should be added according to following formula : $(50-10) \times 40 \text{ g} = 1\,600 \text{ g}$
- Rated capacity of the product is based on standard length and maximum allowable length is based on the product reliability in the operation.
- Improper refrigerant charge may result in abnormal operation.
- Oil trap should be installed every 10 meters, when the outdoor unit is installed in a higher position than the indoor unit.
- Installing a refrigerant pipe that is shorter than the standard length may result in noise or abnormal operation of the product.

NOTE

Fill in the f-gas Label attached on outdoor about the quantity of the fluorinated greenhouse gases (This note about f-gas label may not apply depending on your product type or market.)

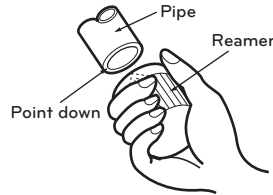
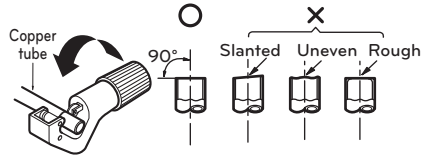
- Manufacturing site (See Model Name label)
- Installation site (If possible being placed adjacent to the service points for the addition or removal of refrigerant)
- The total Charge (① + ②)

Preparation for Piping

- Main cause of gas leakage is defect in flaring work. Carry out correct flaring work in the following procedure.
- Use the de-oxidised copper as piping materials to install.

Step 1. Cut the pipes and the cable.

- Use the accessory piping kit or the pipes purchased locally.
- Measure the distance between the indoor unit and the outdoor unit.
- Cut the pipes a little longer than measured distance.
- Cut the cable 1.5 m longer than the pipe length.

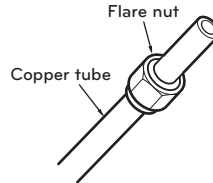


Step 2. Burrs removal

- Completely remove all burrs from the cut cross section of pipe/tube.
- Put the end of the copper tube/pipe to downward direction as you remove burrs in order to avoid to let burrs drop in the tubing.

Step 3. Putting nut on

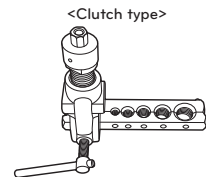
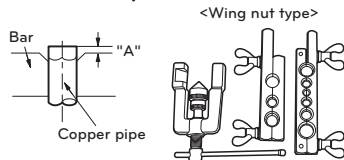
- Remove flare nuts attached to indoor and outdoor units, then put them on pipe/tube having completed burr removal. (Not possible to put them on after flaring work)



Step 4. Flaring work.

- Carry out flaring work using dedicated flaring tool for refrigerant as shown below.

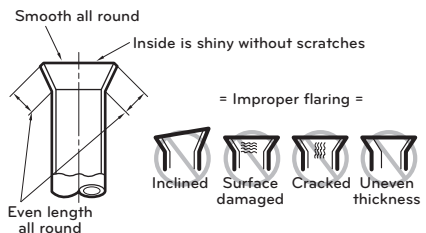
Pipe diameter [inch(mm)]	A inch (mm)	
	Wing nut type	Clutch type
1/4 (6.35)	0.04~0.05(1.1~1.3)	0~0.02 (0~0.5)
3/8 (9.52)	0.06~0.07(1.5~1.7)	
1/2 (12.7)	0.06~0.07(1.6~1.8)	
5/8 (15.88)	0.06~0.07(1.6~1.8)	
3/4 (19.05)	0.07~0.08(1.9~2.1)	



- Firmly hold copper tube in a bar(or die) as indicated dimension in the table above.

Step 5. Check

- Compare the flared work with right figure.
- If flare is seemed to be defective, cut off the flared section and do flaring work again.

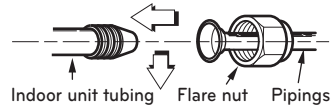


Connecting Pipe to Indoor Unit

Connecting pipe to the indoor unit is two steps. Read following directions carefully.

Step 1. Pre-tightening.

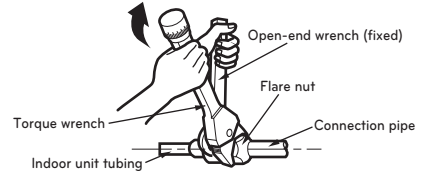
- Align the center of the pipes and sufficiently tighten the flare nut by hand.



Step 2. Tightening.

- Tighten the flare nut with a wrench.
- Tightening torque is as following.

Outside diameter [mm(inch)]	Torque [kgf·m]
6.35 (1/4)	1.8 ~ 2.5
9.52 (3/8)	3.4 ~ 4.2
12.7 (1/2)	5.5 ~ 6.6
15.88 (5/8)	6.6 ~ 8.2
19.05 (3/4)	9.9 ~ 12.1



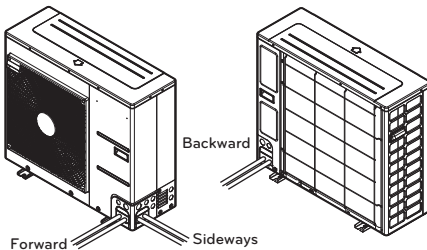
Connecting Pipe to Outdoor Unit

Connecting pipe to the outdoor unit is five steps including PCB setting.

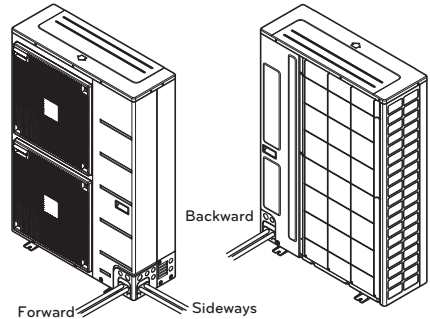
Step 1. Determine direction of pipes.

- The pipes can be connectable in three directions.
- The directions are expressed in below figure.
- Detailed geometry may vary by model.

Product Heating Capacity :
5 kW, 7 kW, 9 kW



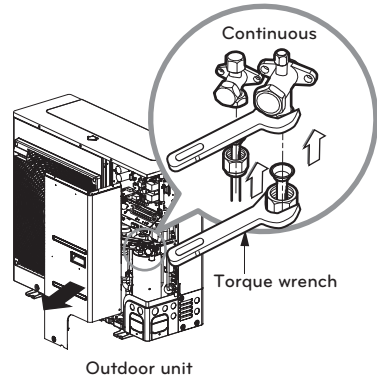
Product Heating Capacity :
12 kW, 14 kW, 16 kW



Step 2. Tightening

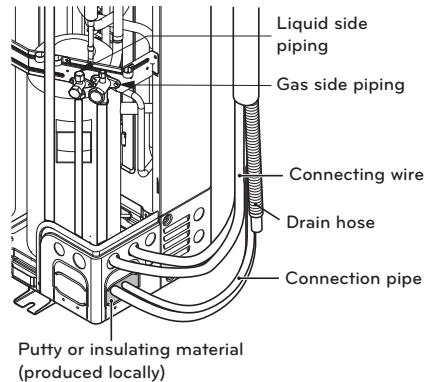
- Align the center of the pipes and sufficiently tighten the flare nut by hand.
- Tighten the flare nut with a wrench until the wrench clicks.
- Tightening torque is as following.

Outside diameter [mm(inch)]	Torque [kgf·m]
6.35 (1/4)	1.8 ~ 2.5
9.52 (3/8)	3.4 ~ 4.2
12.7 (1/2)	5.5 ~ 6.6
15.88 (5/8)	6.6 ~ 8.2
19.05 (3/4)	9.9 ~ 12.1



Step 3. Preventing entering of foreign objects

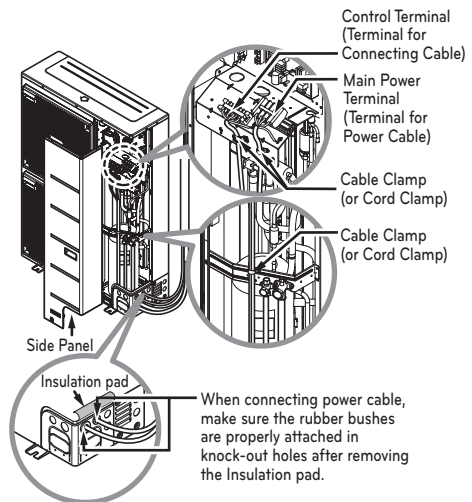
- Plug the pipe through-holes with putty or insulation material (procured locally) to fill up all gaps as shown in right figure.
- If insects or small animals enter the outdoor unit, it may cause a short circuit in the electrical box.
- Finally, form the pipes by wrapping the connecting portion of the indoor unit with insulation material and secure it with two kinds of vinyl tape. Ensuring thermal insulation is very important.



Wiring Procedure for Power Cable and Connecting Cable

Step 1. : Disassemble the side panel from the outdoor unit by loosening screws.

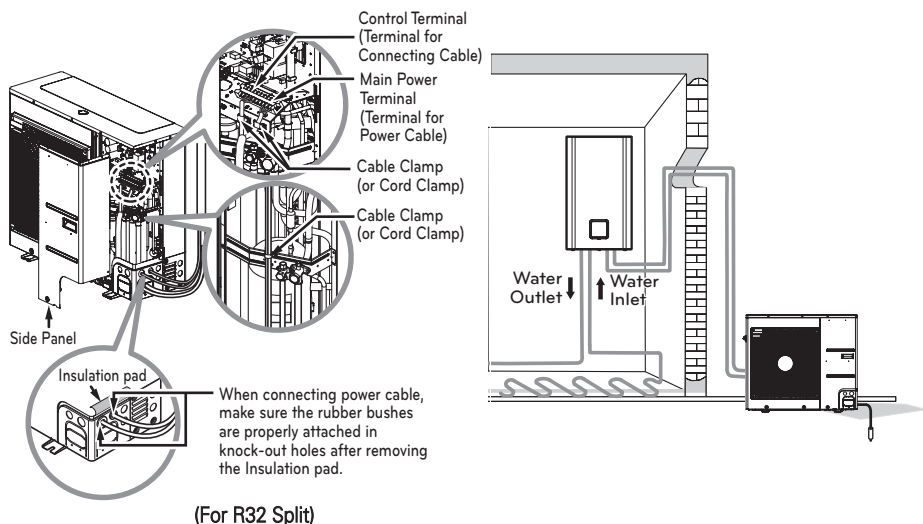
Step 2. : Connect Power cable to Main Power Terminal and Connecting cable to Control Terminal, respectively. See below figure for detailed information. When connecting earth cable, the diameter of cable should be bigger than 1.6 mm² to secure safety. The earth cable is connected to the terminal block where earth symbol $\oplus$ is marked.



(For R410A Split)

Step 3 : Use cable clamps (or cord clamps) to prevent unintended move of Power cable and Connecting cable.

Step 4 : Reassemble the side panel to the outdoor unit by fastening screws.



CAUTION

After checking and confirming following conditions, start wiring work.

- Secure dedicated power source for the Air-to-Water heat pump. The wiring diagram (attached inside the control box of the indoor unit) is presenting related information.
- Provide a circuit breaker switch between power source and the outdoor unit.
- Although it is very rare case, sometimes the screws used to fasten internal wires can be loosen due to the vibration while product transportation. Check these screws and make it sure if they are all fastened tightly. If not tightened, burn-out of the wire can be occurred.
- Check the specification of power source such as phase, voltage, frequency, etc.
- Confirm that electrical capacity is sufficient.
- Be sure that the starting voltage is maintained at more than 90 percent of the rated voltage marked on the name plate.
- Confirm that the cable thickness is as specified in the power sources specification. (Particularly note the relation between cable length and thickness.)
- Provide an ELB(electric leakage breaker) when the installation place is wet or moist.
- The following troubles would be caused by abnormal voltage supply such as sudden voltage increasing or voltage drop-down.
 - Chattering of a magnetic switch. (frequent on and off operation.)
 - Physical damage of parts where magnetic switch is contacted.
 - Break of fuse.
 - Malfunction of overload protection parts or related control algorithms.
 - Failure of compressor start up.
- Ground wire to ground outdoor unit to prevent electrical shock.

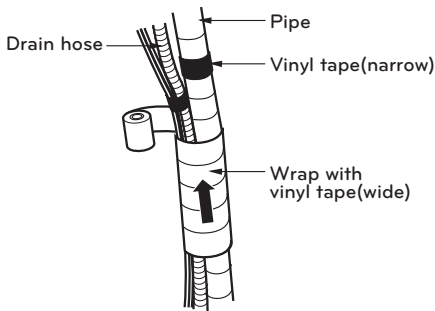
CAUTION

The Power cord connected to the unit should be selected according to the following specifications.

Finalizing

After pipes are connected and electric cables are wired, pipe forming and some tests are remained. Especially, careful attention is required while proceeding leakage test because the leakage of the refrigerant effects degrade of performance directly. Also, it is very hard to find leaked point after all installation procedures are finished.

Pipe Forming

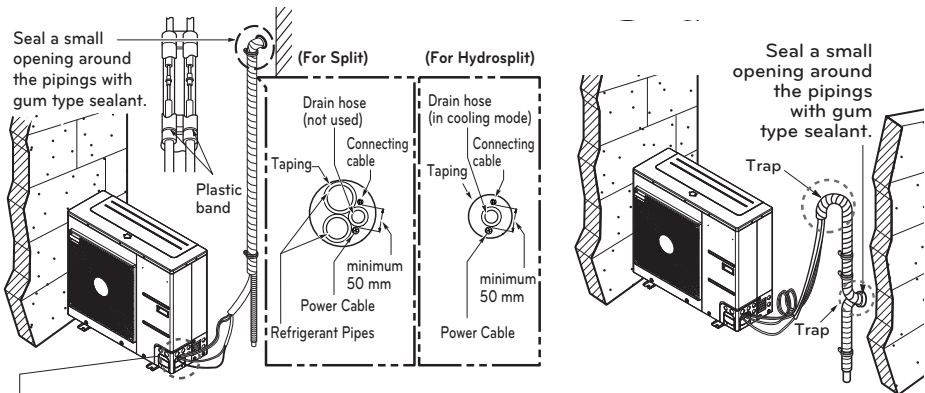


Do pipe forming by wrapping the connecting cable and refrigerant pipe (between the indoor unit and outdoor unit) with thermal insulation material and secure it with two kinds of vinyl tape.

- Tape the refrigerant pipe, power cable and connecting cable from down to up.
- Secure the taped pipe is along with the exterior wall. Form a trap to prevent water entering the room and electrical part.
- Fix the taped pipe onto the wall by saddle or equivalent.

Taping Procedure

- Tape the pipes, connecting cable and power cable from down to up. If taping direction is up to down, rain drop may be sinking into the pipes or cables.
- Secure the taped pipe along the exterior wall using saddle or equivalent.
- Trap is required to prevent water from entering into electrical parts.



Leakage test and Evacuation

Air and moisture remaining in the refrigerant system have undesirable effects as indicated below.

- Pressure in the system rises.
- Operating current rises.
- Cooling(or heating) efficiency drops.
- Moisture in the refrigerant circuit may freeze and block capillary tubing.
- Water may lead to corrosion of parts in the refrigeration system.

Therefore, the indoor/outdoor unit and connecting tube must be checked for leak tight, and vacuumed to remove incondensable gas and moisture in the system.

Preparation

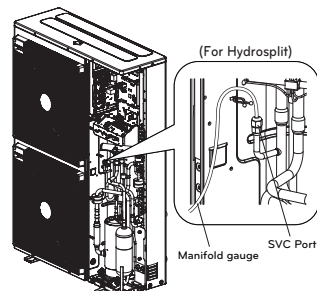
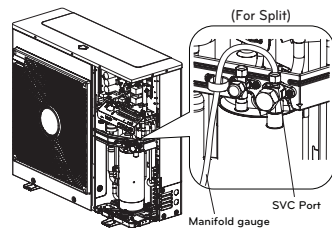
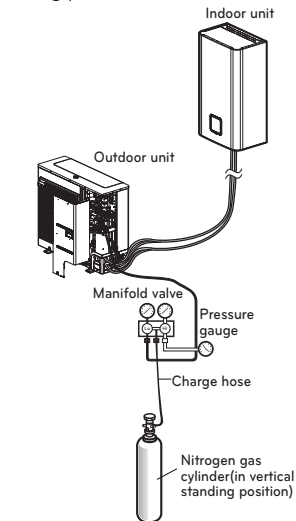
- Check that each tube(both liquid and gas side tubes) between the indoor and outdoor units have been properly connected and all wiring for the test run has been completed. Remove the service valve caps from both the gas and the liquid side on the outdoor unit. Check that both the liquid and the gas side service valves on the outdoor unit are kept closed at this stage.

Leakage test

- Connect the manifold valve(with pressure gauges) and dry nitrogen gas cylinder to this service port with charge hoses.
- Pressurize the system to no more than 3.0 MPa with dry nitrogen gas and close the cylinder valve when the gauge reading reached 3.0 MPa Next, test for leaks with liquid soap.
- Do a leakage test of all joints of the tubing(both indoor and outdoor) and both gas and liquid side service valves. Bubbles indicate a leak. Be sure to wipe off the soap with a clean cloth
- After the system is found to be free of leaks, relieve the nitrogen pressure by loosening the charge hose connector at the nitrogen cylinder. When the system pressure is reduced to normal, disconnect the hose from the cylinder.

! CAUTION

Be sure to use a manifold valve for leakage test. If it is not available, use a stop valve for this purpose. The "Hi" knob of the manifold valve must always be kept close. To avoid nitrogen entering the refrigerant system in a liquid state, the top of the cylinder must be higher than its bottom when you pressurize the system. Usually, the cylinder is used in a vertical standing position.



Evacuation

- Connect the charge hose end described in the preceding steps to the vacuum pump to evacuate the tubing and indoor unit. Confirm the "Lo and Hi" knob of the manifold valve is open. Then, run the vacuum pump. The operation time for evacuation varies with tubing length and capacity of the pump. The following table shows the time required for evacuation.

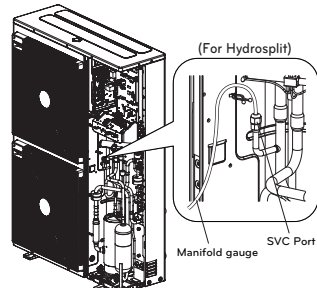
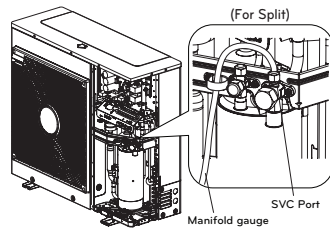
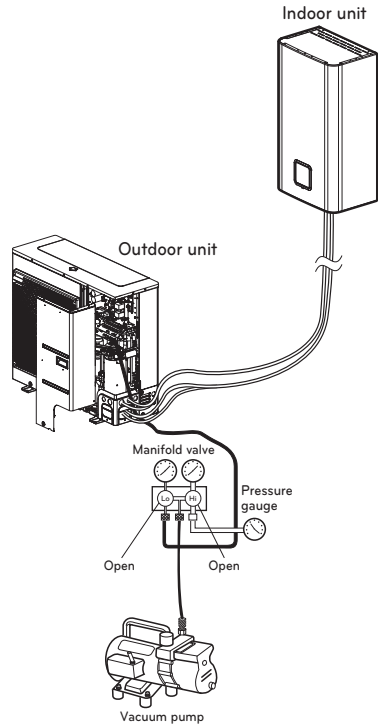
Required time for evacuation when 30 gal/h vacuum pump is used	
If tubing length is less than 10 m(33 ft)	If tubing length is longer than 10 m(33 ft)
30 min. or more	60 min. or more
0.8 torr or less	

- When the desired vacuum is reached, close the "Lo and Hi" knob of the manifold valve and stop the vacuum pump.

Finishing the job

- With a service valve wrench, turn the valve stem of liquid side valve counter-clockwise to fully open the valve.
- Turn the valve stem of gas side valve counter-clockwise to fully open the valve.
- Loosen the charge hose connected to the gas side service port slightly to release the pressure, then remove the hose.
- Replace the flare nut and its bonnet on the gas side service port and fasten the flare nut securely with an adjustable wrench. This process is very important to prevent leakage from the system.
- Replace the valve caps at both gas and liquid side service valves and fasten them tight. This completes air purging with a vacuum pump.

THERMAV. is now ready to test run.



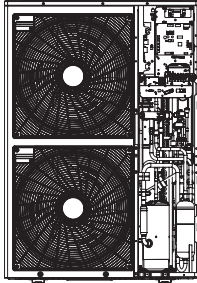
Wiring Procedure for Power Cable and Connecting Cable

(For Hydrosplit)

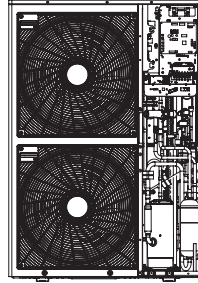
This cable is generally connected between external power source (such as main electric power distribution panel of user's house) and the unit. Before starting wiring, check if wire specification is suitable and read following directions and cautions VERY carefully.

Step 1. : Disassemble side panel and front panel from the unit by loosening screws.

- 1Ø



- 3Ø



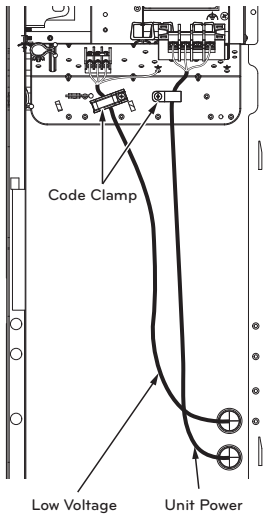
Step 2. : Connect power cable to main power terminal

See below figure for detailed information. When connecting earth cable, the diameter of cable should refer to the below table. The earth cable is connected to the Control box case where earth symbol is $\perp$ marked.

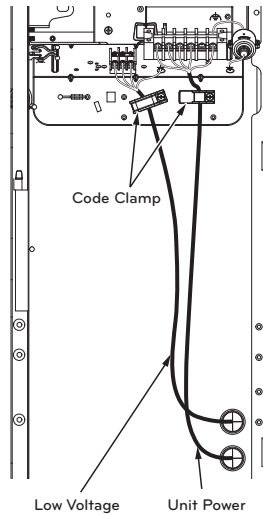
Step 3. : Use cable clamps (or cord clamps) to prevent unintended move of power cable.

Step 4. : Reassemble the side panel to the unit by fastening screws.

- 1Ø



- 3Ø



Failure to do these instruction can result in fire, electric shock or death.

- Make sure the power cable do not touch to copper tube.
- Make sure to fix [cord clamp] firmly to sustain the connection of terminal.
- Make sure to connect unit power & heater power separately.

PIPING AND WIRING FOR INDOOR UNIT

Procedures about water piping and electric wiring at the indoor unit are described in this chapter. Water piping and water circuit connection, water charging, pipe insulations will be shown for water piping procedures. For wiring, terminal block connection, connecting with the outdoor unit, electric heater wiring will be introduced. Accessories connection, such as sanitary water tank, thermostat, 3way or 2way valves, etc will be dealt in separated chapter.

Water Piping and Water Circuit Connection

! CAUTION

General Considerations

Followings are should be considered before beginning water circuit connection.

- Service space should be secured.
- Water pipes and connections should be cleaned using water.
- Space for installing external water pump should be provided if internal water pump capacity is not enough for installation field.
- Never connect electric power while proceeding water charging.

Definition of terms are as follow :

- Water piping : Installing pipes where water is flowing inside the pipe
- Water circuit connecting : Making connection between the product and water pipes or between pipes and pipes.

Connecting valves or elbows are, for example, in this category.

Configuration of water circuit is shown in Chapter 2.

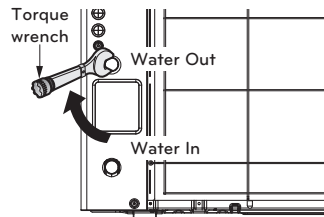
All connections should be complied with presented diagram.

While installing water pipes, followings should be considered :

- While inserting or putting water pipes, close the end of the pipe with pipe cap to avoid dust entering.
- When cutting or welding the pipe, always be careful that inner section of the pipe should not be defective. For example, no weldments or no burrs are found inside the pipe.
- Drain piping should be provided in case of water discharge by operation of the safety valve, drain from condensate, and snow or rain. This situation can be happened when the internal pressure is over 3.0 bar and water inside the indoor unit will be discharged to drain hose.
- In a cold climate region, water drainage must be frost-proof.

While connecting water pipes, followings should be considered :

- Pipe fittings (e.g. L-shape elbow, T-shape tee, diameter reducer, etc) should be tightened strongly to be free from water leakage.
- Connected sections should be leakage-proof treatment by applying teflon tape, rubber bushing, sealant solution, etc.
- Appropriate tools and tooling methods should be applied to prevent mechanical breakage of the connections.
- Operation time of flow control valve(e.g. 3way valve or 2way valve) should be less than 90 seconds.
- Drain hose should be connected with drain piping.
- Maximum allowable Torque at the water piping connection is 50 N·m



(For Hydrosplit)

 WARNING**Installing shut-off valve**

- While assembling two shut-off valves pop sound will be heard when valve is open or close by rotating handles. It is normal condition because the sound is due to leakage of charged nitrogen gas inside the valve. The nitrogen gas is applied to secure quality assurance.
 - For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series, For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series : LG Supply (Inside 'AWHP Installation Kit')
 - For Split 5 series, For Hydrosplit : Field Supply
- Before starting water charging, these two shut-off valves should be assembled with water inlet and outlet pipe of the indoor unit.

Water condensation on the floor

While cooling operation, it is very important to keep leaving water temperature higher than 16 °C. Otherwise, dew condensation can be occurred on the floor.

If floor is in humid environment, do not set leaving water temperature below 18 °C.

Water condensation on the radiator

While cooling operation, cold water may not flow to the radiator. If cold water enters to the radiator, dew generation on the surface of the radiator can be occurred.

Drainage treatment

While cooling operation, condensed dew can drop down to the bottom of the indoor unit. In this case, prepare drainage treatment (for example, vessel to contain condensed dew) to avoid water drop.

Additional drain pan accessory should be installed to prevent dew to be formed.

Water Charging

For water charging, please follow below procedures.

Step 1. Open all valves of whole water circuit. Supplied water should be charged not only inside the indoor unit, but also in the under floor water circuit, sanitary water tank circuit, FCU water circuit, and any other water circuits controlled by the product.

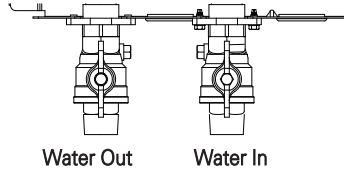
Step 2. Connect supply water into drain valve and fill valve.



CAUTION

No water-leakage permitted at the drain and fill valve. Leakage-proof treatment which is described in previous section should be applied.

*The configuration of the valve may vary by model type.



Step 3. Start to supply water. While supplying water, following should be kept.

- Pressure of supplying water should be pre-adjust value approximately.
- For supplying water pressure, time to be taken from 0 bar to pre-adjust value should be more than 1 minute. Sudden water supply can yield water drain through safety valve.
- Fully open the cap of air vent to assure air purging. If air is exist inside the water circuit, then performance degrade, noise at the water pipe, mechanical damage at the surface of electric heater coil.
- Open both the air vent in the water pipe and the air vent in the pump.

Step 4. Stop water supplying when the pressure gauge located in front of the control panel indicates pre-adjust value. (For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series, For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)
Stop water supplying when the pressure located in remote control indicates pre-adjust value. (For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit)

Step 5. Close drain valve and fill valve. Then wait for 20~30 seconds to observe water pressure being stabilized.

Step 6. If following conditions are satisfactory, then go to step 7(pipe insulation). Otherwise, go to step 3.

- Pressure gauge indicates pre-adjust value. Note that sometimes pressure is decreased after step 5 due to water charging inside expansion vessel.
- No air purging sound is heard or no water drop are popping out from air vent.



CAUTION

Keep the air vent of the water pipe open and keep the air vent of the pump closed. Otherwise, the pump may make noise.

Pipe Insulation

Purpose of water pipe insulation is :

- To prevent heat loss to external environment
- To prevent dew generation on the surface of the pipe in cooling operation
- Minimum insulation thickness recommendations ensure correct operation of the product, but local regulations may vary and must be followed.

Water Piping length (m)	Minimum insulation Thickness(mm)
<20	20
20~30	30
30~40	40
40~50	50

* $\lambda = 0.04 \text{ W/mk}$
(Thermal conductivity of pipe insulation)

Water pump Capacity

The water pump is variable type which is capable to change flow rate, so it may be required to change default water pump capacity in case of noise by water flow. In most case, however, it is strongly recommended to set capacity as Maximum.

NOTE

- To secure enough water flow rate, do not set water pump capacity as Minimum. It can lead unexpected flow rate error CH14.

Pressure Drop

NOTE

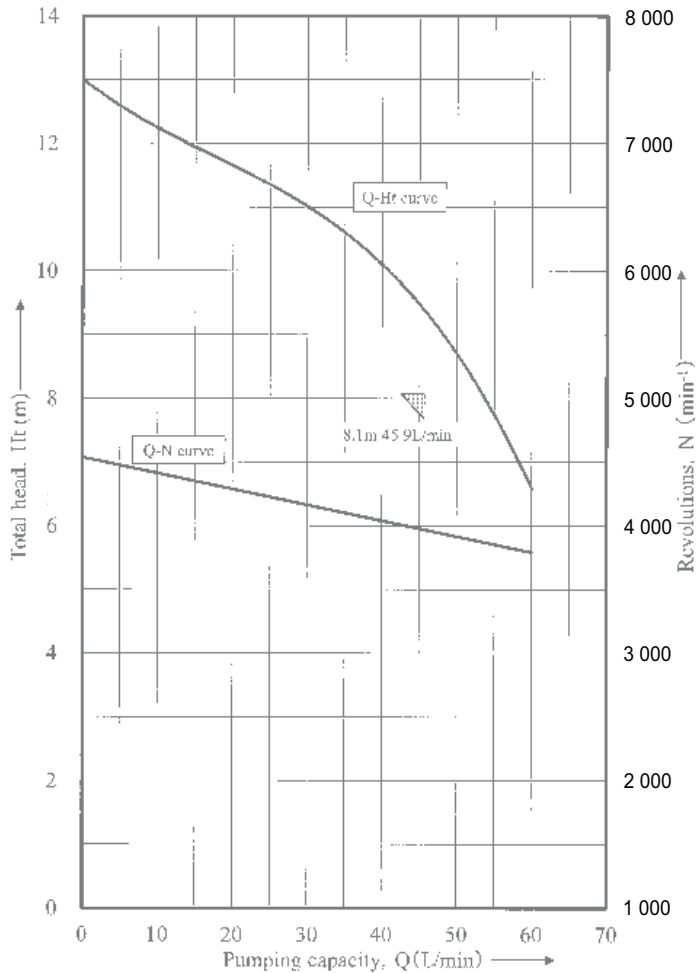
When installing the product, install additional pump in consideration of the pressure loss and pump performance.
If flow-rate is low, overloading of product can occur.

Model	Capacity [kW]	Rated flow-rate [LPM]	Pump Head [m] (at rated flow-rate)	Product pressure drop [m] (Plate heat exchanger)	Serviceable Head [m]
For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series	16	46.0	9.5	1.4	8.1
	14	40.25	10.0	1.1	8.9
	12	34.5	10.7	0.8	9.9
	9	25.87	11.3	0.4	10.9
	7	20.12	11.6	0.3	11.3
	5	15.81	11.8	0.2	11.6
For Split R32	9	25.87	6.1	0.4	5.7
	7	20.12	7.3	0.3	7.0
	5	15.81	7.5	0.2	7.3
For Split R410A Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit	16	46.0	9	1.4	7.6
	14	40.25	9.3	1.1	8.2
	12	34.5	9.8	0.8	9

Performance curve

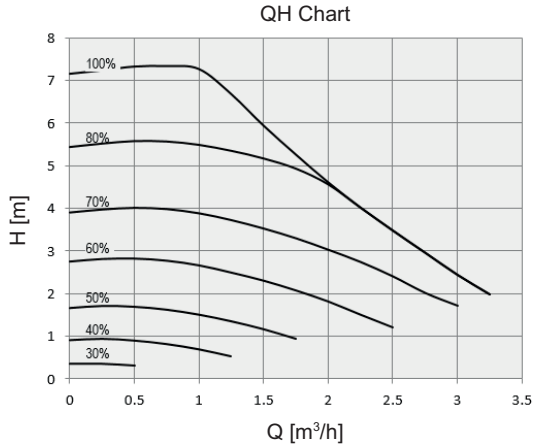
Indoor : Electric Heater 1Ø, Indoor : Electric Heater 3Ø

Pump model : PY-122NDDD3 (For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)



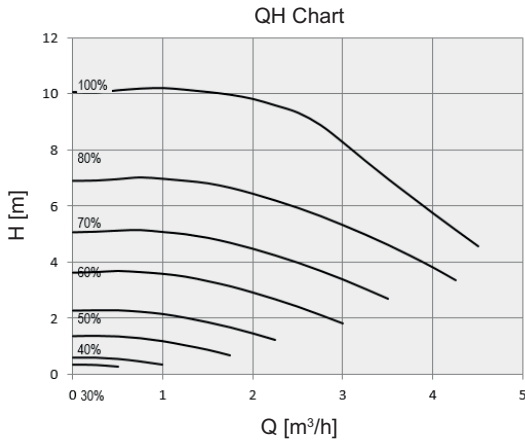
MGQ62321902 : UPM3K GEO 20 - 75 CHBL

(5 kW, 7 kW, 9 kW / For Split R32)



MGQ62321901 : UPML GEO 20-105 CHBL

(12 kW, 14 kW, 16 kW / For Split R410A Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit)



Performance test based on standard ISO 9906 with pre-pressure 2.0bar and liquid temperature 20 °C.



WARNING

Selecting a water flowrate outside the curves can cause damage to or malfunction of the unit.

Water Quality

Water quality should be complied with EN 98/83 EC Directives.
Detailed water quality condition can be found in EN 98/83 EC Directives.

CAUTION

- If the product is installed at existing hydraulic water loop, it is important to clean hydraulic pipes to remove sludge and scale.
- Installing sludge strainer in the water loop is very important to prevent performance degrade.
- Chemical treatment to prevent rust should be performed by installer.
- It is strongly recommended to install an additional filter on the heating water circuit. Especially to remove metallic particles from the heating piping, it is advised to use a magnetic or cyclone filter, which can remove small particles. Small particles may damage the unit and will NOT be removed by the standard filter of the heat pump system.

Frost protection by antifreeze

In areas of the country where entering water temperatures drop below 0 °C, the water pipe must be protected by using an approved antifreeze solution. Consult your AWHP unit supplier for locally approved solutions in your area. Calculate the approximate volume of water in the system. (Except the AWHP unit.) And add six liters to this total volume to allow for the water contained in AWHP unit.

Antifreeze type	Antifreeze mixing ratio					
	0 °C	-5 °C	-10 °C	-15 °C	-20 °C	-25 °C
Ethylene glycol	0 %	12 %	20 %	30 %	-	-
Propylene glycol	0 %	17 %	25 %	33 %	-	-
Methanol	0 %	6 %	12 %	16 %	24 %	30 %

If you use frost protection function, change DIP switch setting and input the temperature condition in Installation mode of remote controller. Refer to 'CONFIGURATION > DIP Switch Setting > DIP Switch Information > Option Switch 3' and 'INSTALLER SETTING > Antifreezing Temperature'.

CAUTION

- Use only one of the above antifreeze.
- If a antifreeze is used, pressure drop and capability degradation of the system can be occurred.
- If one of antifreezes is used, corrosion can be occurred. So please add corrosion inhibitor.
- Please check the concentration of the antifreeze periodically to keep same concentration.
- When the antifreeze is used (for installation or operation), take care to ensure that antifreeze must not be touched.
- Ensure to respect all laws and norms of your country about Anti-freeze usage.

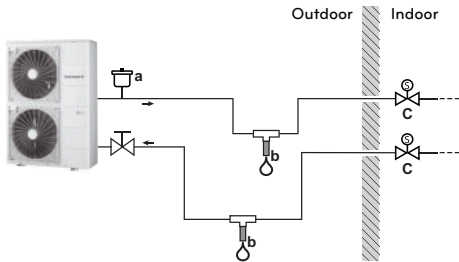
Frost protection by antifreeze valve (For Hydrosplit)

About antifreeze valve

This is a valve to prevent freeze in winter. When no antifreeze is added to the water, you can use antifreeze valves at all lowest points of the field piping to drain the water from the system before it can freeze.

To install antifreeze valve

To protect the field piping against freezing, install the following parts:

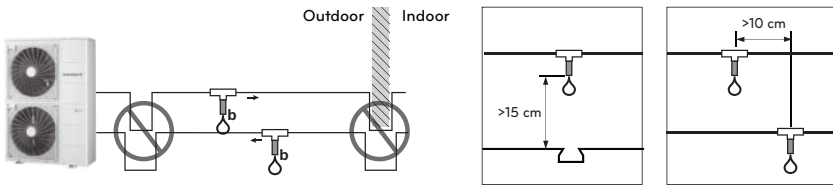


- a Automatic air intake
- b Antifreeze valve (Optional – field supply)
- c Normally closed valves (recommended – field supply)

Part	Description
 a	An automatic air intake (for air supply) should be installed at the highest point. For example, an automatic air purge.
 b	Protection for the field piping. The antifreeze valve must be installed: • Vertically to allow water to flow out properly and free from obstructions. • At all lowest points of the field piping. • In the coldest part and away from heat sources.
 c	Isolation of water inside the house when there is a power interruption. Normally closed valves (located indoors near the piping entry/exit points) can prevent that all water from indoor piping is drained when the antifreeze valve open. • When there is a power interruption: The normally closed valves close and isolate the water inside the house. If the antifreeze valve open, only the water outside the house is drained. • In other circumstances (example: when there is a pump failure): The normally closed valves remain open. If the antifreeze valve open, the water from inside the house is also drained.

NOTE

- Do not make any trap connections. If the shape of the connection pipe has the potential to create a trap effect, part of the pipe will not be able to drain and frost protection will no longer be guaranteed.
- Leave at least 15 cm clearance from the ground to prevent ice from blocking the water exit.
- Keep a distance of at least 10 cm between the antifreeze valves.
- The valve must be free of insulation for the system to work properly.
- When antifreeze valves are installed, do NOT select a minimum cooling setpoint lower than 7 °C. If lower, antifreeze valves can open during cooling operation.
- When installed outdoors, the antifreeze valve must be protected from rain, snow and direct sunlight.



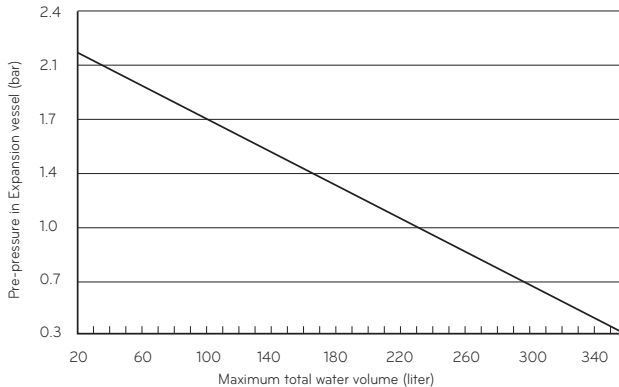
Water Volume and Expansion Vessel Pressure

Inside expansion vessel is included which is 8 liter capacity with 1 bar pre-pressure. That means, according to the volume-pressure graph, total water volume of 230 liter is supported as default. If total water volume is changed because of installation condition, the pre-pressure should be adjusted to secure proper operation.

If	Minimum water volume
The system contains a backup heater	20 L
The system does NOT contain a backup heater	80 L

* The internal water volume of the outdoor unit is NOT included

- Pre-pressure is adjusted by the total water volume. If the indoor is located at the highest position of the water circuit, adjustment is not required.
- To adjust pre-pressure, use nitrogen gas by certificated installer.



Adjusting pre-pressure of expansion vessel is as following :

Step 1. Refer "Volume-Height" table.

If installation scene is belong to Case A, go to Step 2.

Otherwise, if it is Case B, do nothing. (pre-pressure adjustment is not required.)

Otherwise, if it is Case C, go to Step 3.

Step 2. Adjust pre-pressure by following equation.

Pre-pressure [bar] = $(0.1 \times H + 0.3)$ [bar]

where H : difference between unit and the highest water pipe

0.3 : minimum water pressure to secure product operation

Step 3. Volume of expansion vessel is less than installation scene.

Please install additional expansion vessel at the external water circuit.

Volume-Height Table

	V < 230 liter	V ≥ 230 liter
H < 7 m	Case B	Case A
H ≥ 7 m	Case A	Case C

H : Difference between unit and the highest water pipe

V : total water volume of installation scene

Electrical Wiring

General Consideration

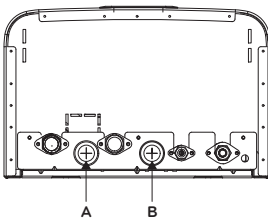
Followings are should be considered before beginning indoor unit wiring.

- Field-supplied electrical components such as power switches, circuit breakers, wires, terminal boxes, etc should be properly chosen with compliance with national electrical legislation or regulation.
- Make it sure that supplied electricity is enough to operate the product including outdoor unit, electric heater, water tank heater, etc. The capacity of fuse also selected according to the power consumption.
- The main electricity supply should be dedicated line. Sharing main electricity supply with other devices such as washing machine or vacuum cleaner is not permitted.

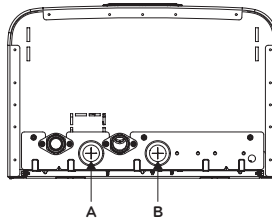


CAUTION

- Before starting wiring job, the main electricity supply should be turned off until wiring is completed.
- When adjusting or changing wiring, the main electricity supply should be turned off and ground wire should be connected securely.
- Installation place should be free from the attack of wild animal. For example, mice's wire attacking or frog's entering into the indoor unit may cause critical electrical accident.
- All power connections should be protected from dew condensation by thermal insulation.
- All electrical wiring should comply with national or local electrical legislation or regulation.
- The ground should be connected exactly. Do not earth the product to the copper pipe, steel fence at the veranda, city water outlet pipe, or any other conductivity materials.
- Fix all cable using cord clamp tightly. (When cable is not fixed with cord clamp, use additionally supplied cable ties.)



(For Split)



(For Hydrosplit)

Hole A : For DC line (wire which is connected to the PCB of the control box)

Hole B : For AC line (wire which is connected to the terminal block of the control box)

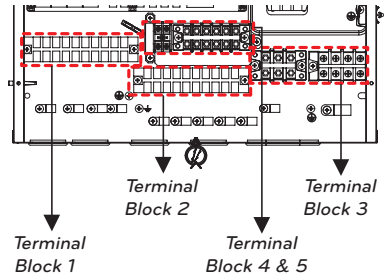
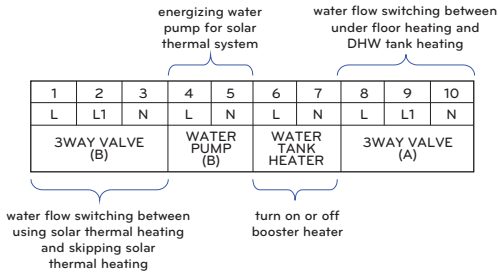
Terminal Block Information

(For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series, For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)

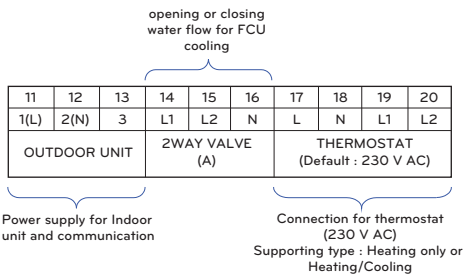
Symbols used below pictures are as follows :

- L, L1, L2 : Live (230 V AC)
- N : Neutral (230 V AC)
- BR : Brown, WH : White, BL : Blue, BK : Black

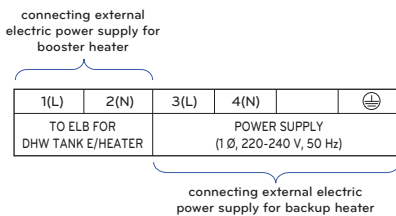
Terminal Block 1



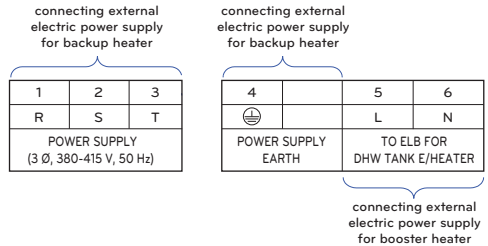
Terminal Block 2



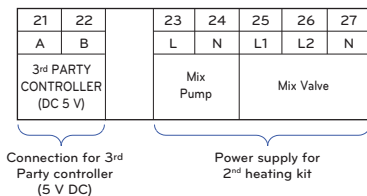
Terminal Block 3 (1Ø Backup Heater)



Terminal Block 3 (3Ø Backup Heater)



Terminal Block 4 & 5



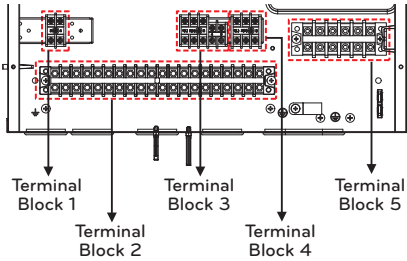
Terminal Block Information

(For Split Indoor unit 5 series, For Hydrosplit 2-Pipe)

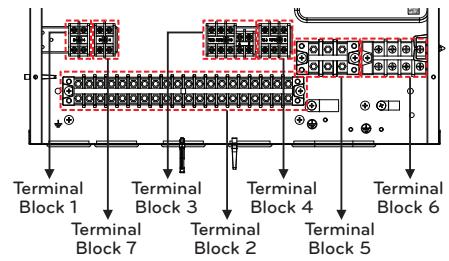
Symbols used below pictures are as follows :

- L, L1, L2 : Live (230 V AC)
- N : Neutral (230 V AC)
- BR : Brown, WH : White, BL : Blue, BK : Black

For 1Ø



For 3Ø



Terminal Block 1 ~ 4

Connection for 3rd Party controller (5 V DC)

21	22
A	B
3rd PARTY CONTROLLER (5V DC)	

Connection for thermostat (230 V AC)
Supporting type : Heating only or Heating/Cooling

23	24	25	26	27
L	N	L1	L2	L3
THERMOSTAT (Default : 230 V AC)				

Water flow switching between using solar thermal heating and skipping solar thermal heating

28	29	30
L	L1	N
3WAY VALVE (B)		

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
L	N	L	N	L	N	L	N	L1	L2	N	L	L1	N	L1	L2	N	1(L)	2(N)	3
WATER TANK HEATER		WATER PUMP (C)		WATER PUMP (B)		MIX PUMP		MIX VALVE		3WAY VALVE (A)		2WAY VALVE (A)		OUTDOOR UNIT					
Turn on or off booster heater		Energizing water pump for DHW-recirculation		Energizing water pump for solar thermal system		Power supply for 2nd heating kit		Water flow switching between under floor heating and DHW tank heating		Opening or closing water flow for FCU cooling		Power supply for indoor unit and communication							

Terminal Block 5 (For 1Ø)

TO ELB FOR DHW TANK E/HEATER	POWER SUPPLY (1 Ø, 220-240 V, 50 Hz)
------------------------------	--------------------------------------

connecting external electric power supply for booster heater

connecting external electric power supply for backup heater

Terminal Block 5 (For 3Ø)

R	S	T
POWER SUPPLY (3 Ø, 380-415 V, 50 Hz)		

connecting external electric power supply for backup heater

Terminal Block 6 (For 3Ø)

⊕		L	N
POWER SUPPLY EARTH		TO ELB FOR DHW TANK E/HEATER	

Connecting external electric power supply for backup heater

Connecting external electric power supply for backup heater

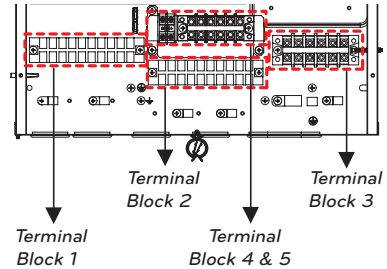
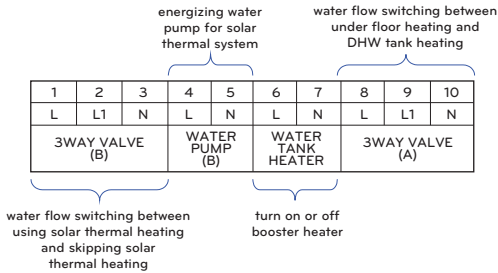
Terminal Block Information

(For Hydrosplit 1-Pipe)

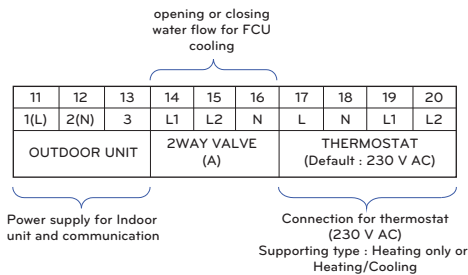
Symbols used below pictures are as follows :

- L, L1, L2, L3 : Live (230 V AC)
- N : Neutral (230 V AC)
- BR : Brown, WH : White, BL : Blue, BK : Black

Terminal Block 1

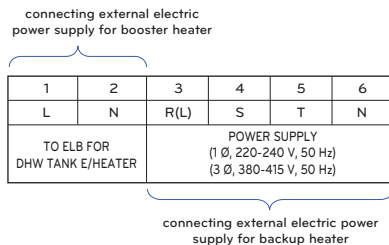


Terminal Block 2

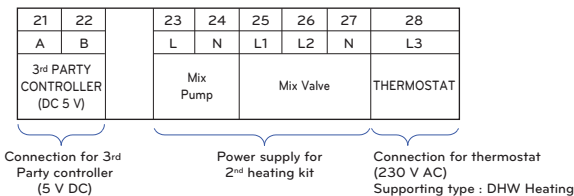


Terminal Block 3 (1Ø Backup Heater)

Terminal Block 3 (3Ø Backup Heater)

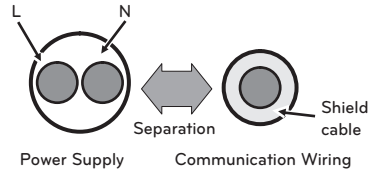


Terminal Block 4 & 5

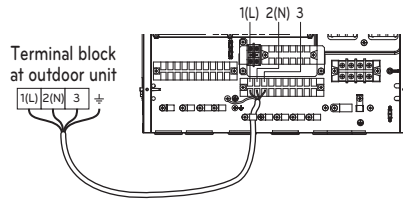


CAUTION

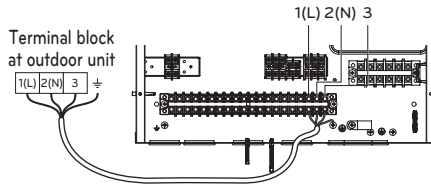
You should separate the communication wiring, in case of communication wiring length is over 40 m.



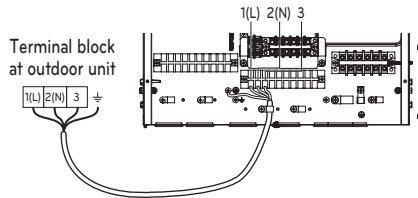
Connecting with Outdoor Unit



(For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series, For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series)



(For Split Indoor unit 5 Series)



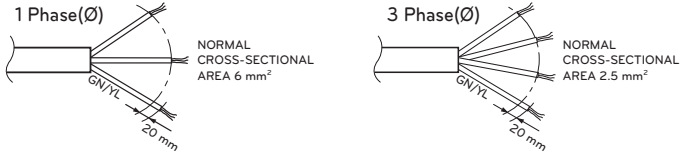
(For Hydrosplit)

The feature may be changed according to the type of model.

Backup Heater Wiring

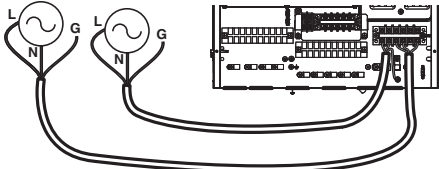
! CAUTION

Power Cable Specification : The power cord connected to the outdoor unit should be complied with IEC 60245 or HD 22.4 S4(Rubber insulated cord, type 60245 IEC 66 or H07RN-F)

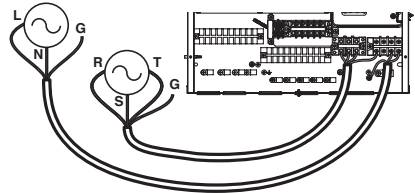


If the supply cord is damaged, it must be replaced by the manufacturer, its service agent or similarly qualified persons in order to avoid a hazard.

External power supply
(same dedicated power
supply for the indoor
unit and outdoor unit)

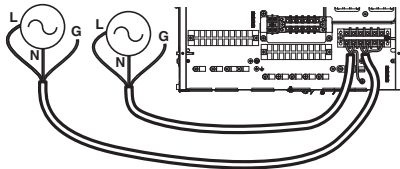


1Ø Backup Heater
(For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)



3Ø Backup Heater
(For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)

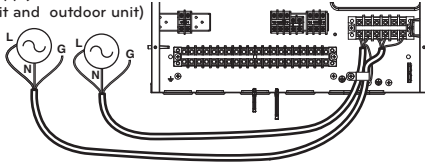
External power supply
(same dedicated power
supply for the indoor
unit and outdoor unit)



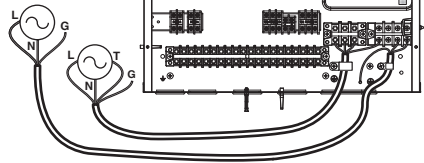
1Ø Backup Heater
(For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series)

CAUTION

External power supply
(same dedicated power
supply for the indoor
unit and outdoor unit)

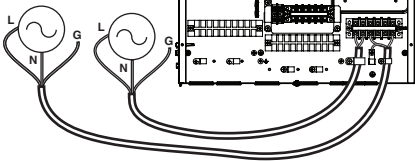


1Ø Backup Heater
(For Split R410A Indoor unit 5 Series,
For Split R32 Indoor unit 5 Series)

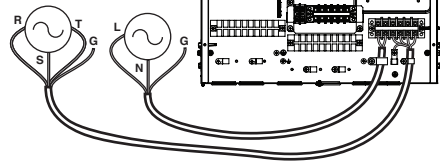


3Ø Backup Heater
(For Split R410A Indoor unit 5 Series)

External power supply
(same dedicated power
supply for the indoor
unit and outdoor unit)



1Ø Backup Heater
(For Hydrosplit)



3Ø Backup Heater
(For Hydrosplit)

ACCESSORIES INSTALLATION

THERMAV. can interface to various accessories to extend its functionality and to improve user convenience. In this chapter, specifications about supported 3rd party accessories and how to connect to **THERMAV.** is introduced.

It is noted that this chapter only deal with 3rd party accessories. For accessories supported by LG Electronics, please refer to installation manual of each accessories.

Accessories supported by LG Electronics

Item	Purpose	Model
DHW Tank Kit	To operate with DHW tank	PHLTA : 1Ø PHLTC : 3Ø
Remote Air Sensor	To control by air temperature	PQRSTA0
Dry Contact	To receive on & off external signal	PDRYCB000
	Dry Contact For Thermostat	PDRYCB320
Solar Thermal Kit	To operate with solar heating system	(For Split) PHLLA (Limit temperature : 96 °C)
DHW Tank	To generate and store hot water	OSHW-200F : 200 L, Single Heating Coil, 1Ø 230 V 50 Hz 2.4 kW Booster heater OSHW-300F : 300 L, Single Heating Coil, 1Ø 230 V 50 Hz 2.4 kW Booster heater OSHW-500F : 500 L, Single Heating Coil, 1Ø 230 V 50 Hz 2.4 kW Booster heater OSHW-300F : 300 L, Double Heating Coil, 1Ø 230 V 50 Hz 2.4 kW Booster heater
Thermistor for DHW Tank	To control hot water temperature of DHW tank	PHRSTA0
Drain Pan	To prevent drain water drop	PHDPB
Meter Interface	To measure production / consumption power	PENKTH000
Central Controller	Multiple installed products into one central control	AC EZ Touch (PACEZA000) AC Smart IV (PACS4B000) AC Smart 5 (PACS5A000) ACP 5 (PACP5A000) AC Manager 5 (PACM5A000)

Item	Purpose	Model
PI485	To use Central Controller	PP485A00T
Cloud Gateway	To use Beacon cloud	PWFMDDB200
Wi-Fi Modem	To enable remote system operation from smartphone	PWFMDDB200
Extension cable for Wi-Fi Modem	To connect with Wi-Fi modem to the USB cable	PWYREW000
Thermistor for 2nd Circuit or E/Heater	To interlock with 2nd circuit operation and control temperature of main zone or To interlock with 3rd party E/Heater and control temperature of water out3rd party E/Heater.	PRSTAT5K10
Extension wire	To connect remote controller with Indoor PCB for communication	PZCWRC1
Cover Plate	To relocate remote controller from indoor unit	PDC-HK10
Backup heater	To supplement in sufficient capacity	For Hydrosplit 1-Pipe HA061B E1 : 1Ø HA063B E1 : 3Ø For Hydrosplit 2-Pipe HA061C E1 : 1Ø HA063C E1 : 3Ø
ESS	To control the operation mode according to the energy storage state	(For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit) HOME 8 (PCS) : D008KE1N211 HOME10 (PCS) : D010KE1N211 HB7H (Battery) : BLGRESU7H HB10H (Battery) : BLGRESU10H
RS3 remote controller	To control unit with 2 remote controllers	PREMTW101
2-Remo Control Wire	The wire for 2 remo control	PZCWRC2

CAUTION

- Install the drain pan when cooling.
- If not installed, water may form.
- Please refer to separate installation manual when installing drain pan.

Accessories supported by 3rd party Companies

Item	Purpose	Specification
Solar Heating System	To generate auxiliary heating energy for water tank	(For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit) • Solar collector • Solar pump • 3way valve(B) • Solar Thermal Sensor : PT1000
Thermostat	To control by air temperature	Heating-Only type (230 V AC) Cooling/Heating type (230 V AC with Mode selection switch)
Mix Kit	To use 2 nd Circuit	• Mixing valve • Mix pump
3 rd Party Boiler	To use auxiliary boiler.	
3 rd Party Controller	To connect external controller using modbus protocol	
3way valve and actuator	(A) : To control water flow for hot water heating or floor heating / To control water flow when installing 3rd party boiler (B) : To control close/open mode of solar circuit	3 wire, SPDT (Single Pole Double Throw) type, 230 V AC
2way valve and actuator	To block underfloor heating coil from cooling water	2 wire, NO(Normal Open) or NC(Normal Closed) type, 230 V AC
External Pump	To control the water flow at the rear of the buffer tank	
Smart Grid	To control operation mode depending on input signal from provider	
3 rd Party ESS	To control the operation mode according to the energy storage state	(For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit)
3 rd party Backup heater	To supplement in sufficient capacity	(For Hydrosplit)
Antifreeze valve	To protect the pipes against freezing	
DHW Recirculation Pump	To control the water flow of DHW recirculation pump	(For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit 2-Pipe)

Before Installation

! WARNING

Followings should be kept before installation

- Main power must be turned off during installing accessories.
- 3rd party accessories should be comply with supported specification.
- Proper tools should be chosen for installation.
- Never do installation with wet hands.

Thermostat

Thermostat is generally used to control the product by air temperature. When thermostat is connected to the product, the product operation is controlled by the thermostat.

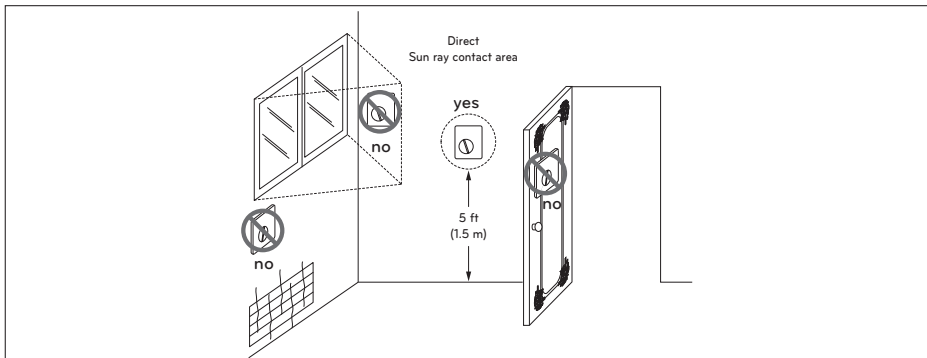
Installation condition

! CAUTION

- USE 220-240 V~ Thermostat
- Some electro-mechanical type thermostat has internal delay time to protect compressor. In that case, mode change can takes time more than user's expectation. Please read thermostat manual carefully if the unit does not response quickly.
- Setting temperature range by thermostat can be different with that of the unit. The heating or cooling set temperature should be chosen within the setting temperature range of the unit.
- It is highly recommended that the thermostat should be installed where space heating is mainly applied.

Following location should be avoid to secure proper operation :

- Height from floor is approximately 1.5 m.
- Thermostat can not be located where the area may be hidden when door is open.
- Thermostat can not be located where external thermal influence may be applied. (such as above heating radiator or open window)



Thermostat

General Information

The Heat Pump supports following thermostats.

Type	Power	Operating Mode	Supported
Mechanical (1)	230 V~	Heating Only (3)	Yes
		Heating / Cooling (4)	
		Heating / Cooling / DHW Heating (5)	
Electrical (2)	230 V~	Heating Only (3)	Yes
		Heating / Cooling (4)	
		Heating / Cooling / DHW Heating (5)	

- (1) There is no electric circuit inside the thermostat and electric power supply to the thermostat is not required.
- (2) Electric circuit such as display, LED, buzzer, etc is included in the thermostat and electric power supply is required.
- (3) Thermostat generates "Heating ON or Heating OFF" signal according to user's heating target temperature.
- (4) Thermostat generates both "Heating ON or Heating OFF" and "Cooling ON or Cooling OFF" signal according to user's heating and cooling target temperature.
- (5) Thermostat generates "Heating ON or Heating OFF", "Cooling ON or Cooling OFF", "DHW Heating ON or DHW Heating OFF" signal according to user's heating, cooling and DHW heating target temperature. (For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit)



CAUTION

Choosing heating / cooling thermostat

- Heating / cooling thermostat must have "Mode Selection" feature to distinguish operation mode.
- Heating / cooling thermostat must be able to assign heating target temperature and cooling target temperature differently.
- If above conditions are not kept, the unit can not operation properly.
- Heating / cooling thermostat must send cooling or heating signal immediately when temperature condition is satisfied. No delay time while sending cooling or heating signal is permitted.

How to wire thermostat (For Split R32 4 Series, For Split R410A 3 Series)

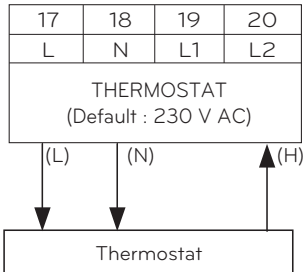
Follow below procedures Step 1 ~ Step 5.

Step 1. Uncover front cover of the unit and open the control box.

Step 2. Identify the power specification of the thermostat. If it is 220-240 V~, go to Step 3.

Step 3. If it is Heating only thermostat, go to step 4. Otherwise, if it is Heating / cooling thermostat, go to step 5.

Step 4. Find terminal block and connect wire as below.



! WARNING

Mechanical type thermostat.

Do not connect wire (N) as mechanical type thermostat does not require electric power supply.

! CAUTION

Do not connect external electric loads.

Wire (L) and (N) should be used only for operation electric type thermostat.

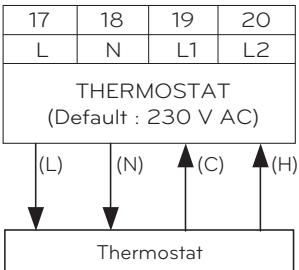
Never connect external electric loads such as valves, fan coil units, etc. If connected, Main PCB (Heater) can be seriously damaged.

(L) : Live signal from PCB to thermostat

(N) : Neutral signal from PCB to thermostat

(H) : Heating signal from thermostat to PCB

Step 5. Find terminal block and connect wire as below.



! WARNING

Mechanical type thermostat.

Do not connect wire (N) as mechanical type thermostat does not require electric power supply.

! CAUTION

Do not connect external electric loads.

Wire (L) and (N) should be used only for operation Electric type thermostat.

Never connect external electric loads such as valves, fan coil units, etc. If connected, Main PCB (Heater) can be seriously damaged.

(L) : Live signal from PCB to thermostat

(N) : Neutral signal from PCB to thermostat

(C) : Cooling signal from thermostat to PCB

(H) : Heating signal from thermostat to PCB

How to wire Heating / Cooling / DHW Heating thermostat (For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit)

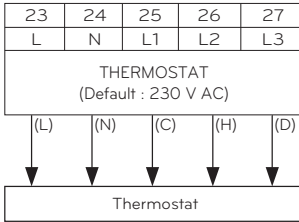
Follow below procedures Step 1 ~ Step 3.

Step 1. Uncover front cover of the unit and open the control box.

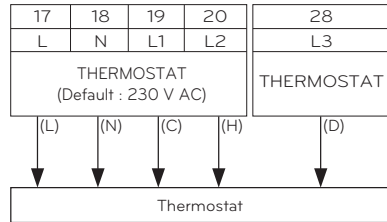
Step 2. Identify the power specification of the thermostat. If it is 220-240 V~, go to Step 3.

Step 3. Find terminal block and connect wire as below.

For Split Indoor unit 5 Series
For Hydrosplit 2-Pipe



For Hydrosplit 1-Pipe



WARNING

Mechanical type thermostat. Do not connect wire (N) as mechanical type thermostat does not require electric power supply.



CAUTION

Do not connect external electric loads.

Wire (L) and (N) should be used only for operation electric type thermostat.

Never connect external electric loads such as valves, fan coil units, etc. If connected, Main PCB (Heater) can be seriously damaged.

(L) : Live signal from PCB to thermostat

(N) : Neutral signal from PCB to thermostat

(C) : Cooling signal from thermostat to PCB

(H) : Heating signal from thermostat to PCB

(D) : DHW Heating signal from thermostat to PCB

Final check

- DIP switch setting :
Set DIP switch No. 8 to 'ON'. Otherwise, the unit can not recognize the thermostat.
- Remote Controller :
 - 'Thermostat' text is displayed on the remote controller.
 - Only the water temperature setting is available and the other button input is prohibited.
 - In case of Heating / Cooling / DHW Heating thermostat, select 'Heat&Cool / DHW' as the Thermostat Control Type in the remote controller installer settings.
 - The product operates according to Thermo On / Off conditions of the thermostat and remote controller.

Thermo On / Off Condition		Product
Thermostat	Remote Controller	
Thermo Off	Thermo Off	Thermo Off
Thermo Off	Thermo On	Thermo Off
Thermo On	Thermo Off	Thermo Off
Thermo On	Thermo On	Thermo On

2nd Circuit

The 2nd circuit is a function that can separately control the circuit1 requiring high temperature and the circuit 2 requiring medium temperature, you need to prepare a separate Mix Kit. The mix kit must be installed in the circuit 2.

- For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series, For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series

[Install Guide 2nd Circuit Heating]

Circuit 1 \ Circuit 2	Floor (35°C)	Convector (FCU, 45 °C)	Radiator (45 °C)	Radiator (55 °C)
Floor (35 °C)	○	X	X	X
Convector (FCU, 45 °C)	○	○	○	X
Radiator (45 °C)	○	○	○	X
Radiator (55 °C)	○	○	○	○

[Install Guide 2nd Circuit Cooling]

Circuit 1 \ Circuit 2	Floor (18 °C)	Convector (FCU, 5 °C)
Floor (18 °C)	○	X
Convector (FCU, 5 °C)	○	○

※ To use a floor combination during cooling operation, the flow through the floor of the flow must be blocked by the 2 way valve.

※ For detailed 2nd circuit remote control settings, refer to 'Add Zone' under [Chapter 9]

NOTE

Circuit 1 = Direct circuit : Zone where the water temperature is Highest when heating

Circuit 2 = Mixing circuit : The other zone

The 2nd circuit is a function that can separately control the circuit1 requiring high temperature and the circuit 2 requiring medium temperature, you need to prepare a separate Mix Kit. The mix kit must be installed in the circuit 2.

- For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit

[Install Guide 2nd Circuit Heating]

Circuit 1 \ Circuit 2	Floor (35°C)	Convactor (FCU, 45 °C)	Radiator (45 °C)	Radiator (55 °C)
Floor (35 °C)	○	○	○	○
Convactor (FCU, 45 °C)	○	○	○	○
Radiator (45 °C)	○	○	○	○
Radiator (55 °C)	○	○	○	○

[Install Guide 2nd Circuit Cooling]

Circuit 1 \ Circuit 2	Floor (18 °C)	Convactor (FCU, 5 °C)
Floor (18 °C)	○	○
Convactor (FCU, 5 °C)	○	○

✱ To use a floor combination during cooling operation, the flow through the floor of the flow must be blocked by the 2 way valve.

✱ For detailed 2nd circuit remote control settings, refer to 'Mixing Circuit' under [Chapter 9]

NOTE

Circuit 1 = Direct circuit : Zone where the water temperature is Highest when heating

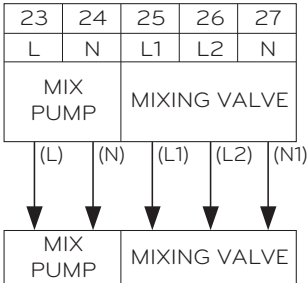
Circuit 2 = Mixing circuit : The other zone

How to Wire Mix Pump, Mixing Valve and Thermistor for 2nd Circuit (For Split R32 4 Series, For Split R410A 3 Series)

Follow below procedures Step 1 ~ Step 3.

Step 1. Uncover front cover of the unit.

Step 2. Find terminal block and connect wire as below



(L) : Live signal from PCB to mix pump

(N) : Neutral signal from PCB to mix pump

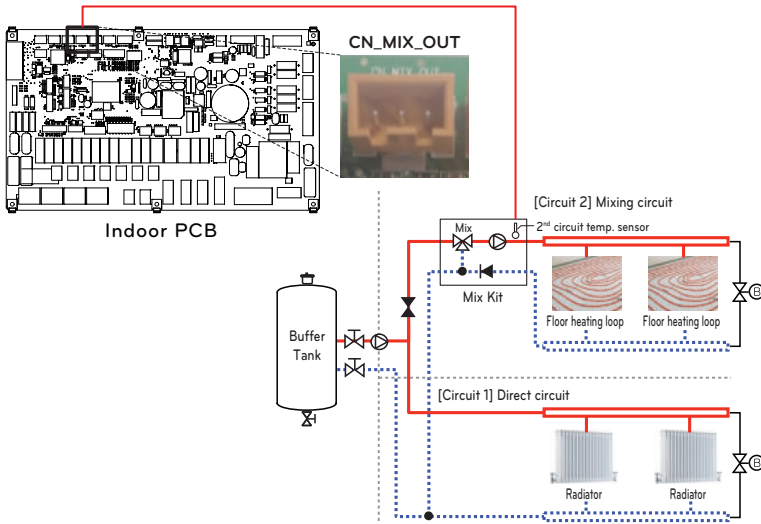
(L1) : Live signal (for Normal* Closed type) from PCB to mixing valve

(L2) : Live signal (for Normal Open type) from PCB to mixing valve

(N1) : Neutral signal from PCB to mixing valve

*Closed = NOT Mixed

Step3. Insert the temperature sensor to 'CN_MIX_OUT' (Brown) of the main PCB as shown below. The sensor should be mounted correctly to discharge pipe of mix pump as shown below.



NOTE

2nd circuit temp. sensor is an accessory. (Model: PRSTAT5K10)



CAUTION

When connecting a pump of 1.05A or higher, its output must be used as a signal line only.

[Thermistor for 2nd circuit]

Sensor



Sensor Holder



Sensor Connector

Follow below procedures step 1 ~ step 4.

Step 1. Install sensor connector to discharge pipe of mix pump.

(Welding must be performed to connect the sensor connector to the pipe)

Step 2. Check if the power of the unit is turned off.

Step 3. Fasten the sensor connector to the sensor holder as shown in the figure below.

Step 4. Insert harness into PCB(CN_TH4) fully and fix the thermal sensor into tube connector as shown below.



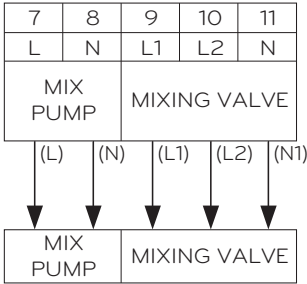
How to Wire Mix Pump, Mixing Valve and Thermistor for 2nd Circuit (For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit)

Follow below procedures Step 1 ~ Step 3.

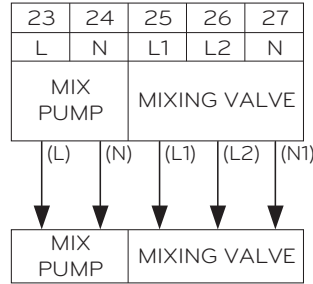
Step 1. Uncover front cover of the unit.

Step 2. Find terminal block and connect wire as below

For Split Indoor unit 5 Series
For Hydrosplit 2-Pipe



For Hydrosplit 1-Pipe



(L) : Live signal from PCB to mix pump

(N) : Neutral signal from PCB to mix pump

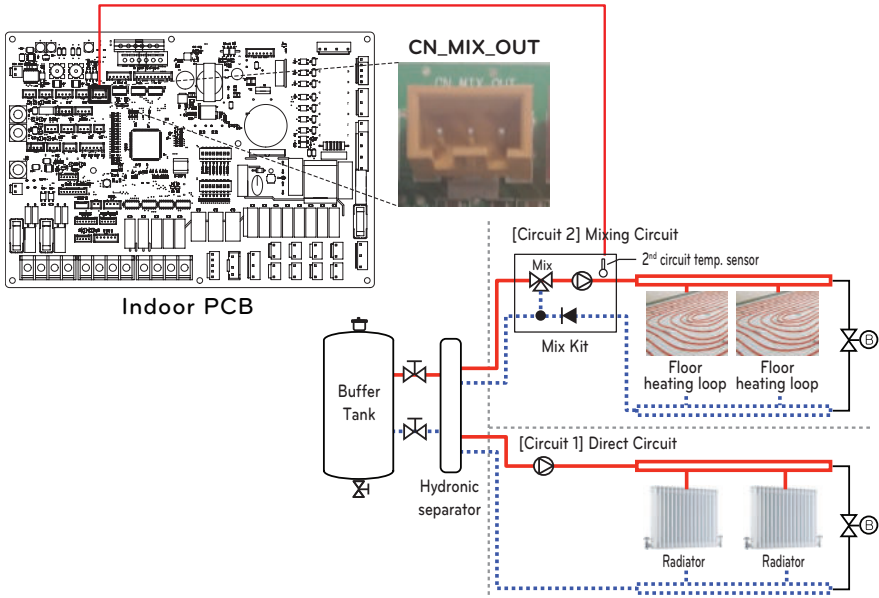
(L1) : Live signal (for Normal* Closed type) from PCB to mixing valve

(L2) : Live signal (for Normal Open type) from PCB to mixing valve

(N1) : Neutral signal from PCB to mixing valve

*Closed = NOT Mixed

Step3. Insert the temperature sensor to 'CN_MIX_OUT' (Brown) of the main PCB as shown below. The sensor should be mounted correctly to outlet pipe of mix kit water pump as shown below.



NOTE

2nd circuit temp. sensor is an accessory. (Model: PRSTAT5K10)

CAUTION

When connecting a pump of 1.05A or higher, its output must be used as a signal line only.

3rd party Backup heater (For Hydrosplit)

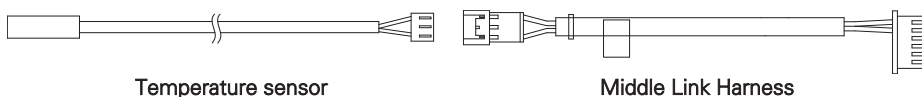
The product can be used by connecting an Auxiliary Backup heater. You can control the Backup heater automatically and manually by comparing the water out temperature of Backup heater and the set temperature.

How to install 3rd party Backup heater

Follow below procedures Step 1 ~ 4.

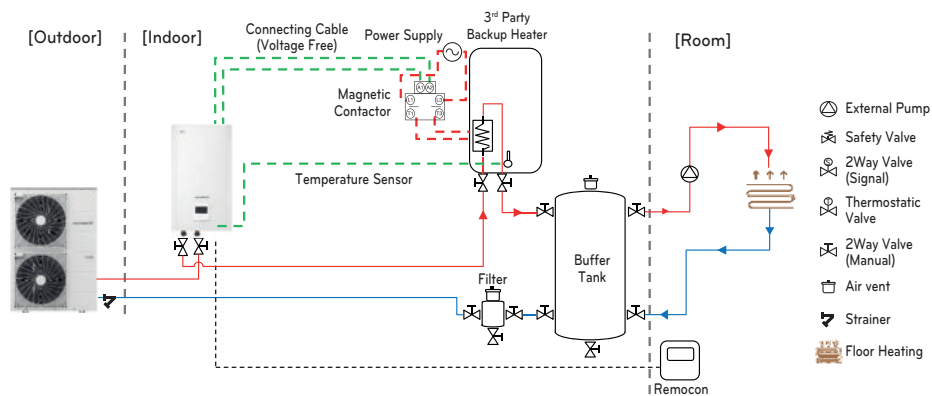
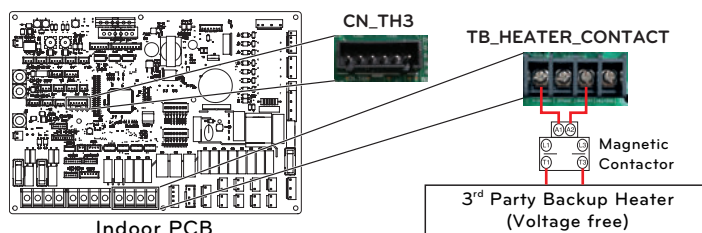
Step 1. Find the middle link harness and the temperature sensor.

Step 2. Insert connector(Brown) of the temperature sensor to connector(White) of the middle link harness as shown below.



Step 3. Insert connector(Black) of middle link harness to 'CN_TH3' in the Main PCB connector(Black) as shown below. The sensor should be mounted correctly to outlet pipe of backup heater as shown below.

Step 4. Connect Power cable to the terminal block 'TB_HEATER_CONTACT' using the Magnetic Contactor.



[Thermistor for 3rd party Backup heater]

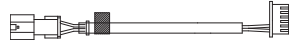
Sensor



Sensor Holder



Sensor Connector



Middle link harness

Follow below procedures Step 1 ~ 4.

Step 1. Install sensor connector to outlet pipe of backup heater.

(Welding must be performed to connect the sensor connector to the pipe.)

Step 2. Check if the power of the unit is turned off.

Step 3. Fasten the sensor connector to the sensor holder as shown in the figure below.

Step 4. Insert harness into PCB(CN_TH3) fully and fix the thermal sensor into tube connector as shown below.



3rd Party Boiler

The product can be used by connecting an Auxiliary boiler. 3rd party boiler can be controlled by manually via remote controller or automatically itself by means of comparing the outside air temperature and the pre-set temperature.

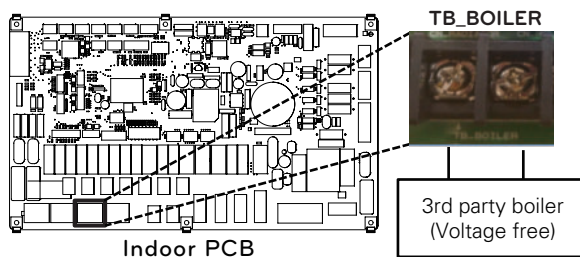
How to wire 3rd party boiler

Follow below procedures step 1 ~ step 3.

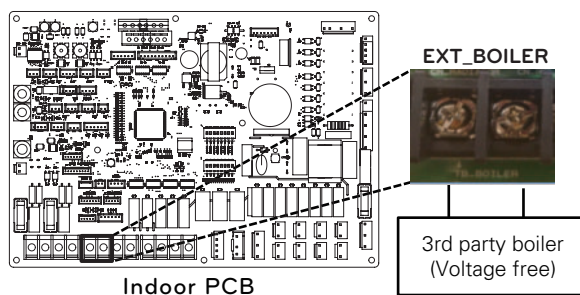
Step 1. Check if the power of the unit is turned off.

Step 2. Disassemble front panels and Distinguish terminal block in Indoor PCB.

Step 3. Connect Power cable to terminal block (TB_BOILER) fully.



(For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series, For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)



(For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit)

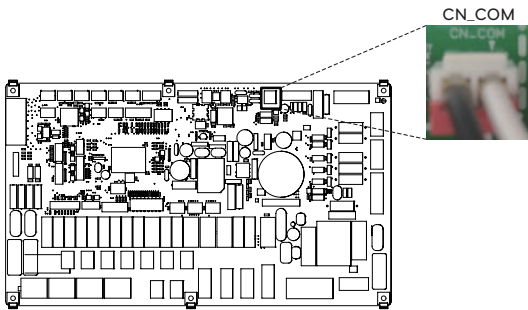
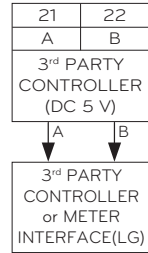
3rd Party Controller

The product can also be linked to 3rd party controller. 3rd party boiler can be controlled by manually via RS3 remote controller or automatically itself by means of comparing the outside air temperature and the pre-set temperature.

How to wire 3rd party controller

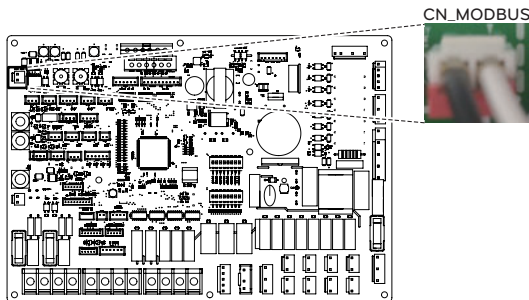
Follow below procedures step 1 ~ step 4.

- Step 1.** Check if the power of the unit is turned off.
- Step 2.** Disassemble front panels and distinguish control box(Indoor) of the unit.
- Step 3.** Check if the harness(White) is inserted fully to the indoor unit PCB (CN_COM).
- Step 4.** Connect the 3rd party controller to terminal block 4(21/22) completely. (including Meter interface module)



Indoor PCB

(For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series, For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)



Indoor PCB

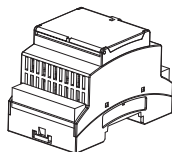
(For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit)

Meter Interface

This product can be used by connecting the meter interface module supplied in the field. The meter interface module can communicate with the wired remote controller. The meter interface module lets you know the amount of power generated by the product.

How to install Meter Interface

[Parts of Meter interface]



Meter interface body

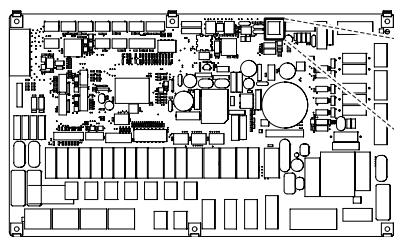
Follow below procedures step 1 ~ step 4.

Step 1. Check if the power of the unit is turned off.

Step 2. Disassemble front panels and Distinguish control box(Indoor) of the unit.

Step 3. Check if the harness(White) is inserted fully to the indoor unit PCB (CN_COM).

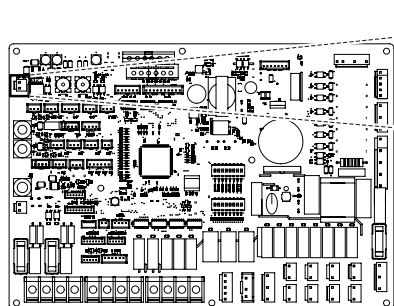
Step 4. Connect the external pump to terminal block 4(21/22).



Indoor PCB

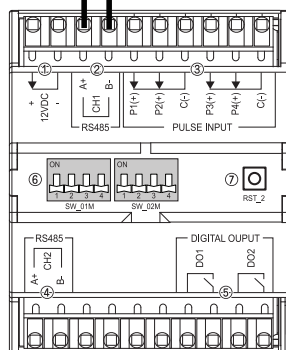
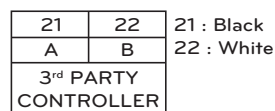
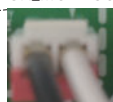
(For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series,
For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)

CN_COM



Indoor PCB

CN_MODBUS



Meter interface

(For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit)

Central Controller

The product can communicate and control through the central controller. The following functions can be controlled in the central control linked state (Operation/Stop, Desired temperature, Hot water operation / stop, Warm water temperature, Full lock, Etc)

How to Install Central Controller

To use central controller, you need to establish an environment for mutual communication between central controller and the **THERMAV**. and register the corresponding devices through the functions of central controller. To use central controller, it shall be installed in the following order.

Step 1. Installation environment inspection and device address setting

Before installing central controller, check the network for any interfacing devices and assign non overlapping addresses to the connected devices.

Step 2. PI485 setting

Install PI485 and set the DIP switch accordingly.

Step 3. Connections

Connect PI485 and central controller through RS-485 cable.

Step 4. Access and Device Registration

Log in to central controller and register device with address set.

Consult a qualified engineer/ technician for the installation of central controller. If you have any installation queries, contact the LG service center or LG Electronics.

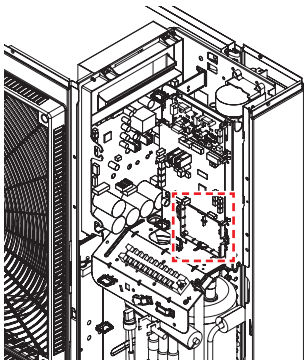
How to Installation PI485

Fix the PI485 PCB as shown in below images.

For detailed installation method refer to PI485 Installation Manual

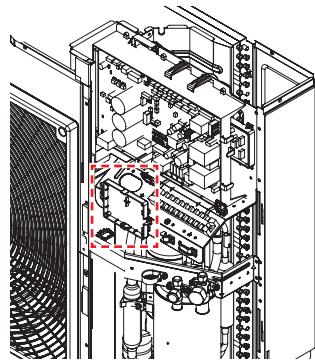
Product Heating Capacity :

12 kW, 14 kW, 16 kW



Product Heating Capacity :

5 kW, 7 kW, 9 kW



- For detailed installation instructions, refer to the manual included in the accessories.

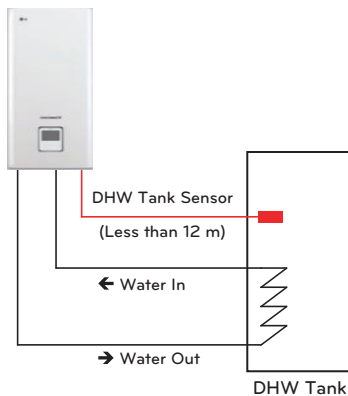
DHW Tank

To establish DHW circuit, 3way valve and DHW tank kit is required. If solar thermal system is pre-installed at the installation field, solar thermal kit is required to interface solar thermal system – to – DHW tank – to – **THERMAV.**

Installation condition

Installing DHW tank following considerations :

- DHW tank should be located at the flat place.
- Water quality should be complied with EN 98/83 EC directives.
- As this water tank is sanitary water tank (indirect heat exchange), do not use anti water-freezing treatment like ethylene glycol.
- It is highly recommend to wash out inside of the DHW tank after installation. It ensures generating clean hot water.
- Near the DHW tank there should be water supply and water drain to easy access and maintenance.
- Set the maximum value of the temperature control device of DHW tank.



* Water In / Water Out installation scene may vary depending on the model.

General Information

THERMAV. supports following 3way valve.

Type	Power	Operating Mode	Supported
SPDT ¹⁾ 3-wire	230 V AC	Selecting Flow A ²⁾ between Flow A and Flow B	Yes
		Selecting Flow B ³⁾ between Flow A and Flow B	Yes

1) : SPDT = Single Pole Double Throw. Three wires consist of Live1 (for selecting Flow A), Live 2 (for selecting Flow B), and Neutral (for common).

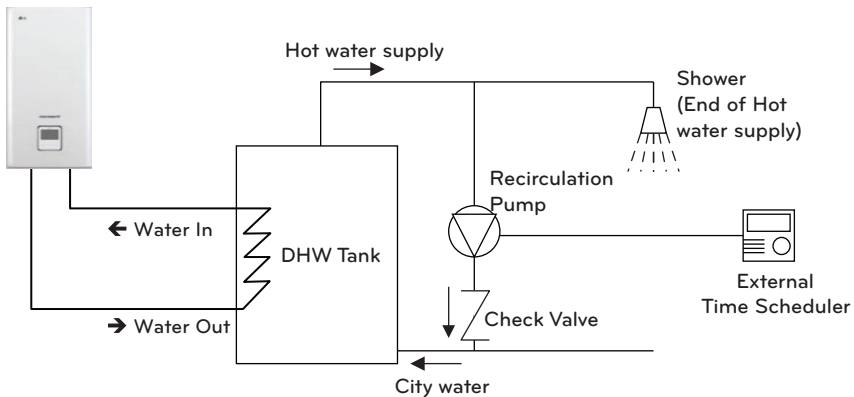
2) : 'Flow A' means water flow from the unit to under floor water circuit.

3) : 'Flow B' means water flow from the unit to DHW tank.

Installing recirculation pump (For Split R32 4 Series, Split R410A 3 Series, For Hydrosplit 1-pipe)

When **THERMAV** is used with DHW tank, it is **STRONGLY** recommended to install recirculation pump to prevent flooding out cold water at the end of hot water supply and to stabilize the water temperature inside DHW tank

- The recirculation pump should be operated when DHW demand is not required. Therefore, external time scheduler to determine when the recirculation pump should turn on and turn off is required.
- The operating duration time of the recirculation pump is calculated as follow :
Duration time [minute] = $k \times V / R$
 k : 1.2 ~ 1.5 is recommended. (If distance between pump and tank is far, then choose high number)
 V : Volume of DHW tank [liter]
 R : Water flow rate of pump [liter per minute], which is determined by pump performance curve.
- The pump operating start time should be prior to the DHW demand.



* Water In / Water Out installation scene may vary depending on the model.

Installing recirculation pump (For Split indoor unit 5 series, For Hydrosplit 2-pipe)

When **THERMAV** is used with DHW tank, it is **STRONGLY** recommended to install recirculation pump to prevent flooding out cold water at the end of hot water supply and to stabilize the water temperature inside DHW tank

- The recirculation pump should be operated when DHW demand is not required. Therefore, external time scheduler to determine when the recirculation pump should turn on and turn off is required.

- The operating duration time of the recirculation pump is calculated as follow :

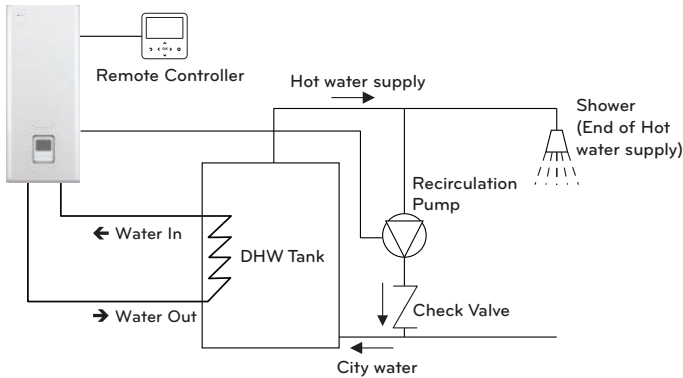
$$\text{Duration time [minute]} = k \times V / R$$

k : 1.2 ~ 1.5 is recommended. (If distance between pump and tank is far, then choose high number)

V : Volume of DHW tank [liter]

R : Water flow rate of pump [liter per minute], which is determined by pump performance curve.

- The pump operating start time should be prior to the DHW demand.



* Water In / Water Out installation scene may vary depending on the model.

How to wire recirculation pump

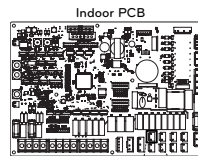
Follow below procedures step 1 ~ step 4.

Step 1. Check if the power of the unit is turned off.

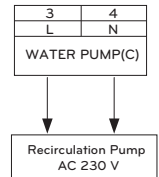
Step 2. Disassemble front panels and distinguish control box(Indoor) of the unit.

Step 3. Check if the harness(Violet) is inserted fully to the indoor unit PCB (CN_PUMP_A15).

Step 4. Connect the DHW recirculation pump to terminal block 1(3/4).



CN_PUMP_A15



CAUTION

When connecting a pump of 1.05A or higher, its output must be used as a signal line only.

How to Wire Booster Heater

Step 1. Uncover heater cover of the DHW tank. It is located side of the tank.

Step 2. Find terminal block and connect wires as below. Wires are field-supplied item.

(L) : Live signal from PCB to Heater.

(N) : Neutral signal from PCB to Heater.

⚠ WARNING

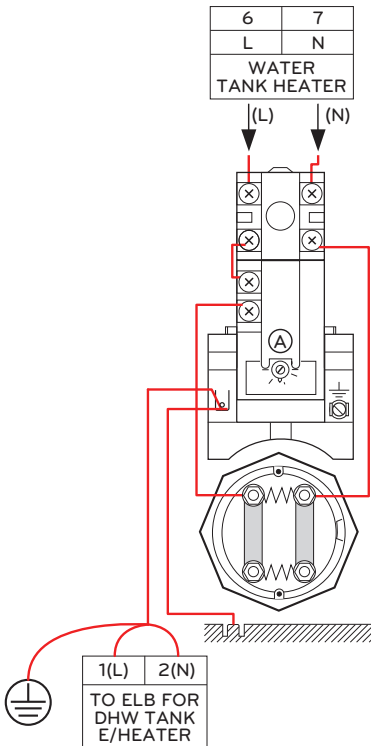
Wire specification

- Cross-sectional area of the wire should be 6 mm².

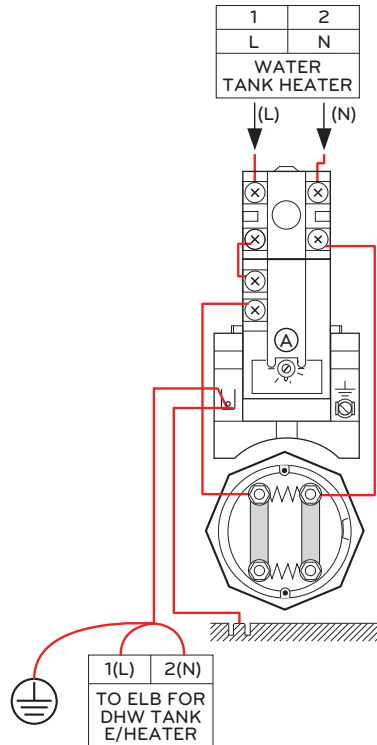
Adjusting thermostat temperature

- To guarantee proper operation, it is recommended to set temperature of thermostat to maximum temperature (symbol **A** at the picture).
- 1Ø Backup Heater Model and 3Ø Backup Heater Model are set by same method as below.

For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series,
For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series,
For Hydrosplit 1-Pipe



For Split Indoor unit 5 Series
For Hydrosplit 2-Pipe

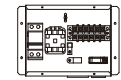


DHW Tank Kit

This product can be used by connecting the DHW tank kit in the field. It can be utilized hot water heated by booster heater in DHW tank.

How to install DHW tank kit

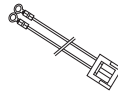
[Parts of DHW Tank Kit]



Tank kit body



Sensor



Multi harness

Temperature sensor for DHW tank is used to control hot water temperature of DHW tank. If sensor will be defective, you can purchase it separately.(Model name : PHRSTA0)

Follow below procedures step 1 ~ step 4.

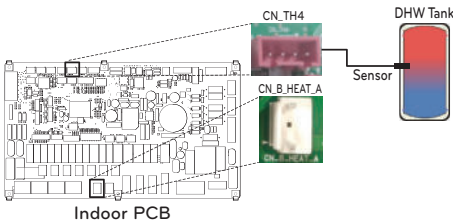
Step 1. Uncover DHW tank kit and locate it on the wall.

Step 2. Connect Harness of Main PCB assembly(TB1(6/7)) to 'CN_B_Heat_A' of the Main PCB like following fig. 1.

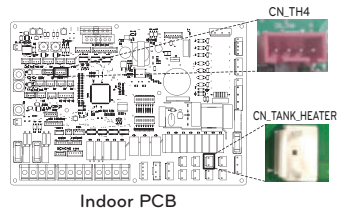
Step 3. Insert DHW tank sensor to 'CN_TH4' (Red) of the Main PCB refer as below.

Step 4. Connect power supply to the DHW tank kit as shown fig. 1.

※ The sensor should be mounted correctly to the sensor hole of DHW water tank like below fig. 1.



(For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series,
For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)

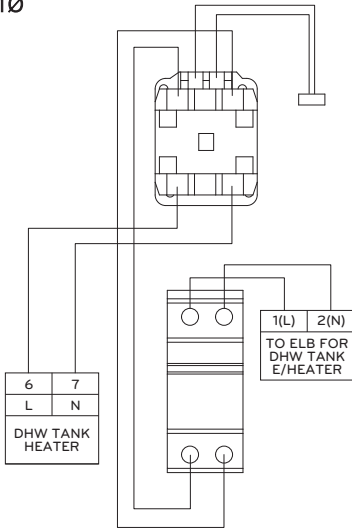


(For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit)

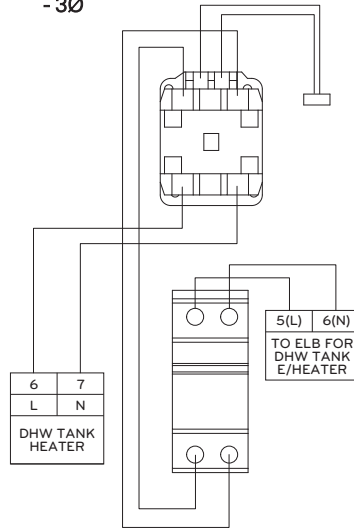
Fig. 1

For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series, For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series, For Hydrosplit 1-Pipe

- 1Ø

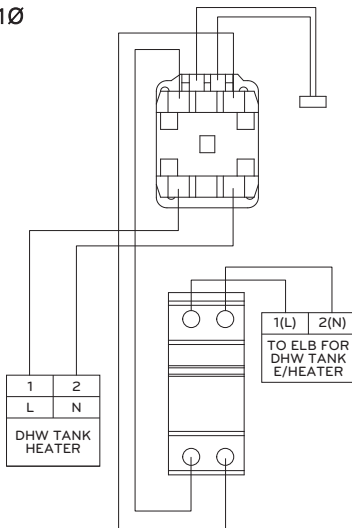


- 3Ø

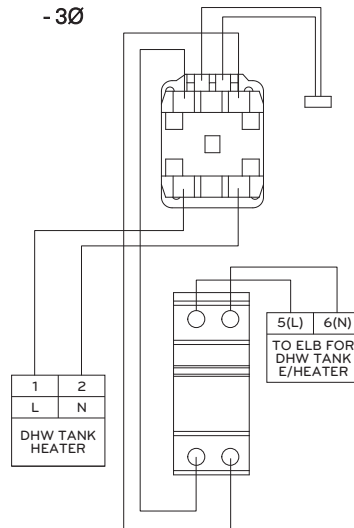


For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit 2-Pipe

- 1Ø

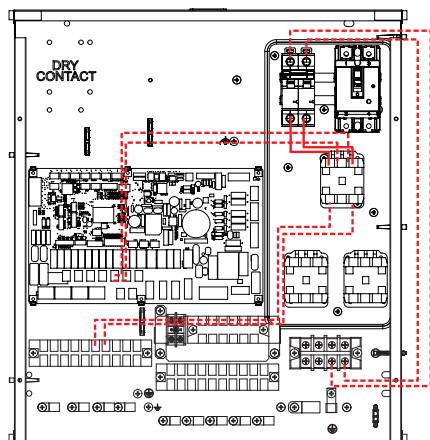


- 3Ø

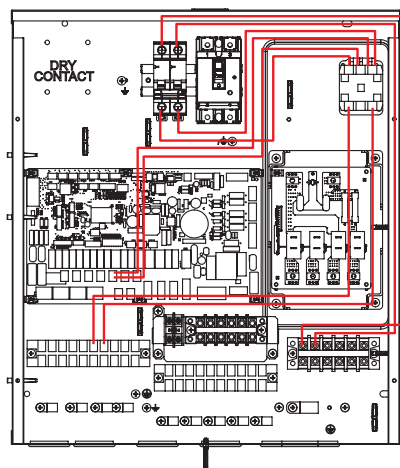


Check Polarity (For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series, For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series)

Booster heater for 1Ø model

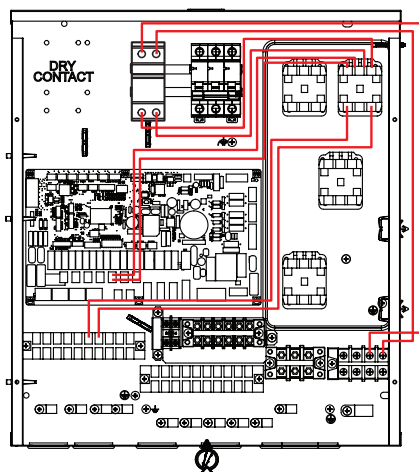


With magnet switch
(Production date : Until Sep. 30, 2019)



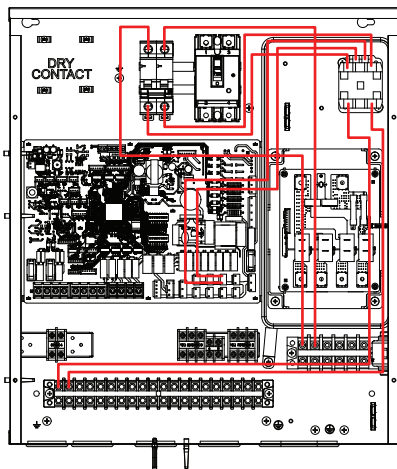
With heater PCB
(Production date : From Oct. 1, 2019)

Booster heater for 3Ø model

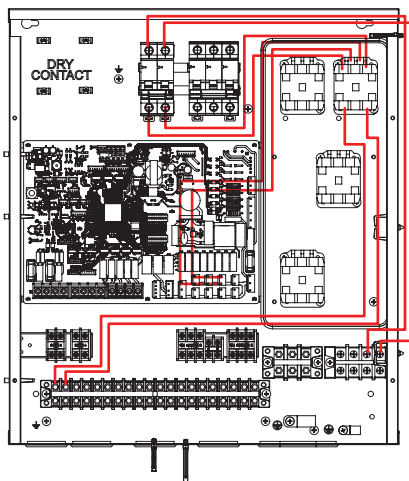


Check Polarity (For Split Indoor unit 5 Series)

Booster heater for 1Ø model



Booster heater for 3Ø model



Solar Thermal Kit

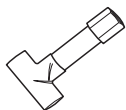
This product can be used by connecting the solar thermal kit in the field. It can be utilized hot water heated by solar thermal system. End-user must be install solar thermal kit accessory(PHLLA) provided by LG.

How to Install Solar Thermal Kit

[Parts of Solar Thermal Kit]



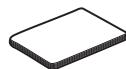
Sensor Holder



Tube Connector



Solar Thermal Sensor



Installation Manual

Follow below procedures step 1 ~ step 4.

Step 1. Install tube connector on the pipe of solar thermal system and insert the sensor holder and solar thermal sensor in order. A reducer or expander could be required to fit with the piping diameter.

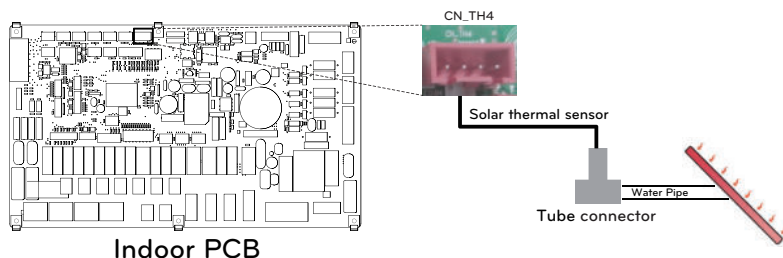
Step 2. Check if the power of the unit is turned off.

Step 3. Disassemble front panels and distinguish control box(Indoor) of the unit.

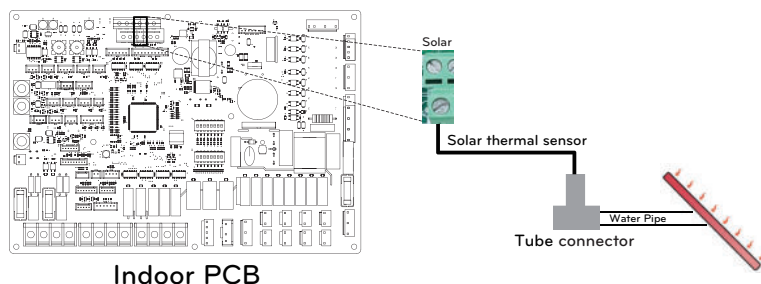
Step 4. Insert harness into PCB fully and fix the thermal sensor into tube connector as shown below.

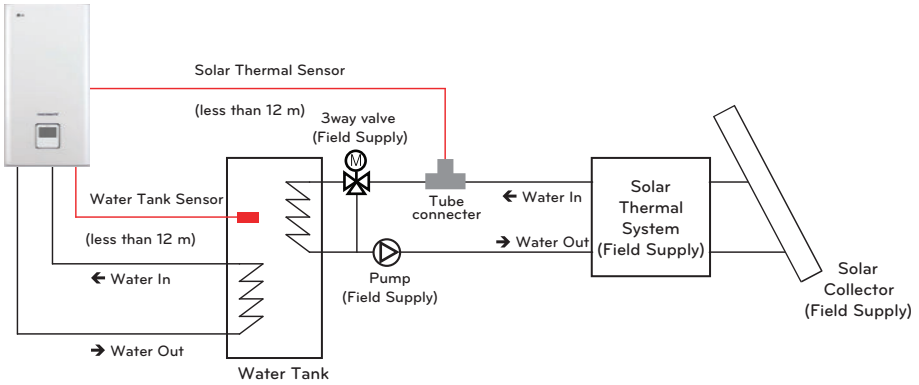
※ If the DHW tank sensor is connected, disconnect the sensor from PCB first.
Solar Thermal Sensor : PT1000 (Field Supply)

For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series, For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series



For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit





* Water In / Water Out installation scene may vary depending on the model.

- insert sensor until the cable tie as shown below.



CAUTION

Sensor mounting

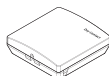
Insert sensor into sensor socket and bolt it tightly.

Dry Contact

Dry Contact is a solution for automatic control of HVAC system at the owner's best. In simple words, it's a switch which can be used to turn the unit On/Off after getting the signal from external sources.

How to install dry contact

[Parts of Dry contact]



Dry Contact body



Cable(for connecting with IDU)

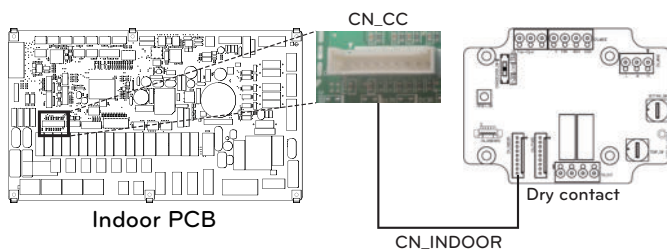
Follow below procedures step 1 ~ step 4.

Step 1. Check if the power of the unit is turned off.

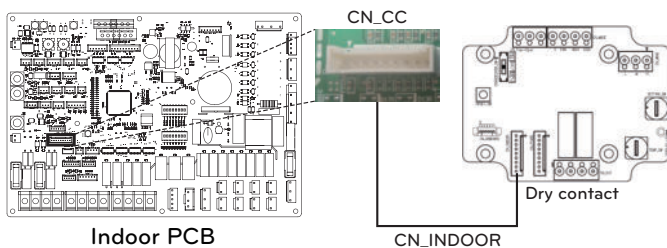
Step 2. Disassemble front panels and distinguish terminal block in Indoor PCB.

Step 3. Connect cable to the unit PCB(CN_CC) fully.

Step 4. Then, Insert harness to the dry contact PCB(CN_INDOOR) firmly as shown below.



(For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series, For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)



(For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit)

NOTE

- For more information about installing Dry Contact, Please refer installation manual provided with Dry Contact.
- For more settings about Dry Contact, Please refer to "Dry Contact Mode / CN_CC / CN_EXT" that installer setting part.

External Controller - Setting up programmable digital input operation

If you require to control depending on external digital input(ON/OFF), connect cable to indoor PCB(CN_EXT).

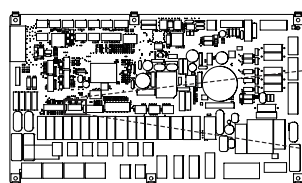
Follow below procedures step 1 ~ step 4.

Step 1. Check if the power of the unit is turned off.

Step 2. Disassemble front panels and distinguish control box(Indoor) of the unit

Step 3. Connect the external controller to PCB(CN_EXT) completely.

Step 4. Connect the cable and field installation part.

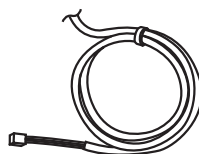


Indoor PCB

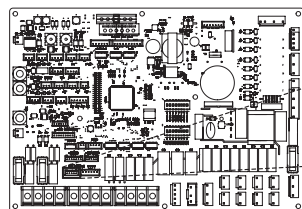
(For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series, For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)



CN_EXT



Adapter Cable

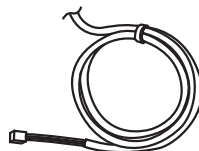


Indoor PCB

(For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit)

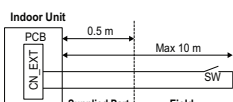


CN_EXT



Adapter Cable

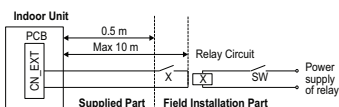
Installation example #1



- **SW : Single pole switch**
 - Select a part with contacts for extremely low amperage
 - DC 5 V ~ 12 V is used at the contact point
 - Switch load is approximately 0.5 ~ 1 mA

- **Control cable**
 - Cable size : 22 to 26 AWG
 - Don't extend the cable more than 10 meters

Installation example #2



- **X : Relay (a point of contact, fixed DC 0.5 ~ 1 mA)**
- **SW : Distance ON/OFF switch**
- **Control cable (Indoor unit to Relay Circuit)**
 - Cable size : 22 to 26 AWG
 - Don't extend the cable more than 10 meters

Remote Temperature Sensor

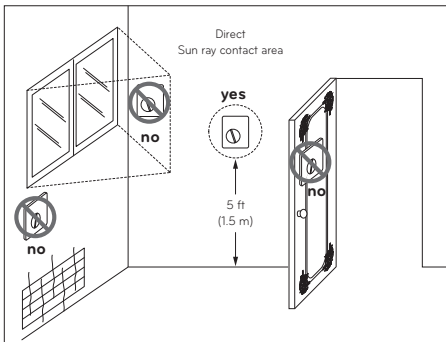
Remote temperature sensor can be installed any place a user wants to detect the temperature.

- The function is not available for some products.

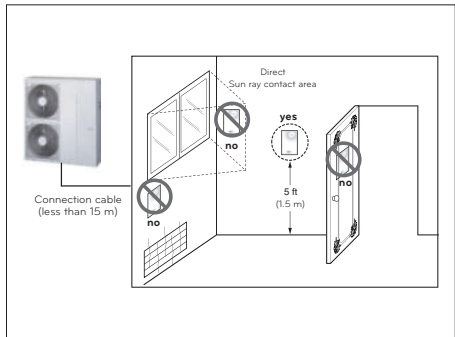
Installation condition

Role and constraint while installation of remote air temperature sensor is very similar to that of thermostat.

- Distance between the unit and the remote air temperature sensor should be less than 15 m due to length of the connection cable of remote air temperature sensor.
- For other constraints, please refer to previous page where constraints about thermostat is described.



Thermostat



Remote Air Temperature Sensor

How to Install Remote Temperature Sensor

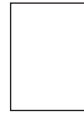
[Parts of Remote Temperature Sensor]



Cable



Screw(to fix remote sensor)



Installation Manual

Follow below procedures step 1 ~ step 6.

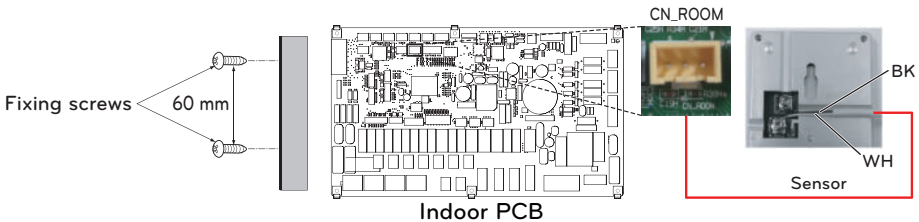
Step 1. Decide where the remote temperature sensor is Installed. Then, Determine the location and height of the fixing screws in fig. 1 (Interval between the screws : 60 mm)

Step 2. Check if the power of the unit is turned off.

Step 3. Disassemble front panels and distinguish control box(Indoor) of the unit.

Step 4. Insert temperature sensor into PCB(CN_ROOM) and fix the sensor firmly in fig. 2.

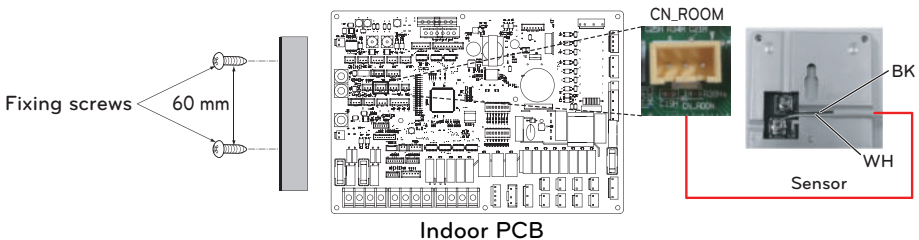
Step 5. The Connection wire does not matter if you change the color of the wire because of nonpolar.



[fig. 1]

[fig. 2]

(For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series, For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)

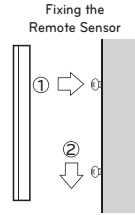


[fig. 1]

[fig. 2]

(For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit)

Step 6. Integrate the remote temperature sensor with the screws as the order of arrows.



CAUTION

- Choose the place where the average temperature can be measured for the unit operates.
- Avoid direct sunlight.
- Choose the place where the cooling/heating devices do not affect the remote sensor.
- Choose the place where the outlet of the cooling fan do not affect the remote sensor.
- Choose the place where the remote sensor isn't affected when door is open.

NOTE

- For more information about installing Remote Temperature Sensor, Please refer installation manual provided with Remote Temperature Sensor.
- For more settings about Remote Temperature Sensor, Please refer to 'Select Temperature Sensor / Air cooling set temp. / Air heating set temp. / TH on/off Variable, heating air / TH on/off Variable, cooling air' that 'installer setting' part.
- Set DIP switch No. 1 of option switch 3 to 'ON' in order to use remote temperature sensor. (For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series, For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)
- Set DIP switch No. 5 of option switch 2 to 'ON' in order to use remote temperature sensor. (For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit)

Solar pump

Solar pump can be required to energize water flow when solar thermal system is installed.

How to wire solar pump

Follow below procedures step 1 ~ step 4.

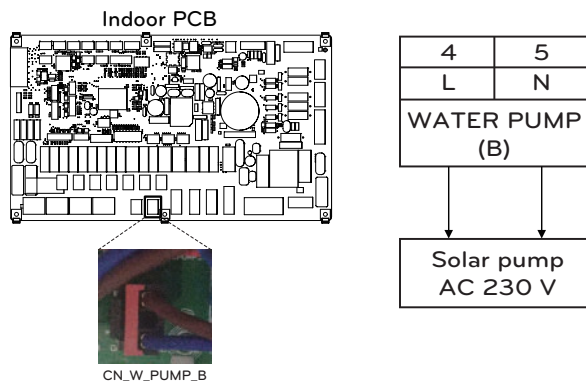
Step 1. Check if the power of the unit is turned off.

Step 2. Disassemble front panels and distinguish control box(Indoor) of the unit.

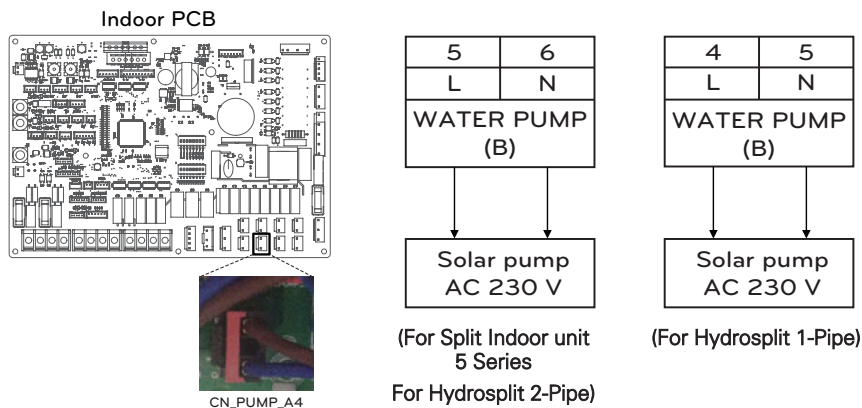
Step 3. Check if the harness(Black) is inserted fully to the indoor unit PCB (CN_W_PUMP_B).

Step 4. Connect the external pump to terminal block 1(4/5).

※ It is possible to un-use solar pump depending on instal environment.



(For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series, For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)



CAUTION

When connecting a pump of 1.05A or higher, its output must be used as a signal line only.

External pump

External pump can be required when the room to take floor heating is too large or not well-insulated.(potential free) Also, External pump is installed with buffer tank to retain sufficient capacity.

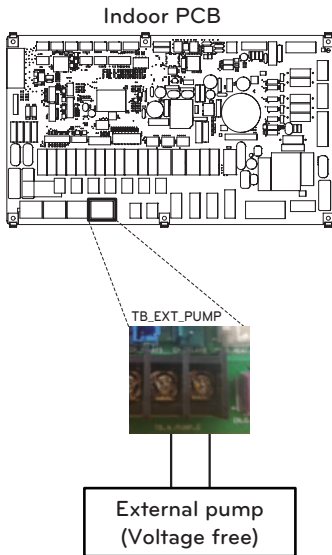
How to wire external pump

Follow below procedures step 1 ~ step 3.

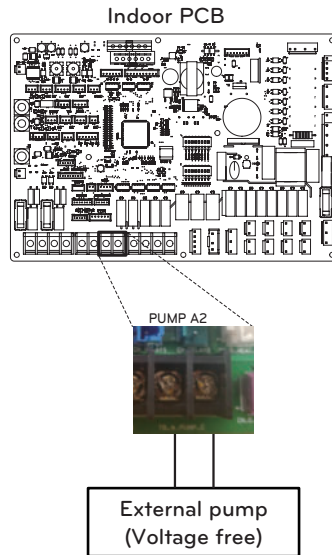
Step 1. Check if the power of the unit is turned off.

Step 2. Disassemble front panels and distinguish terminal block in Indoor PCB.

Step 3. Connect signal cable to terminal block fully.

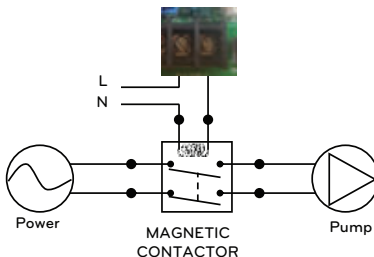


(For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series,
For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)



(For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit)

How to install Voltage Free

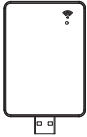


Wi-fi Modem

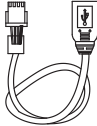
Wi-fi modem enables remote system operation from smartphone. Available functions include selection of on/off, operation mode, DHW heating, temperature setup and weekly scheduling etc. For detailed instructions, refer to the manual included in the accessories.

How to wire Wi-fi Modem

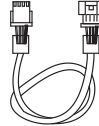
[Parts of Wi-fi modem]



Wi-fi modem body



USB Cable



Extension Cable

※ Extension cable for Wi-Fi Modem : PWYREW000 (Sold Separately)

Follow below procedures step 1 ~ step 5.

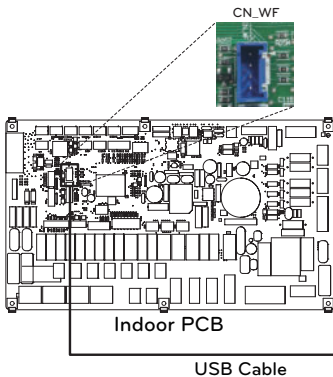
Step 1. Check if the power of the unit is turned off.

Step 2. Disassemble front panels and distinguish control box(Indoor) of the unit.

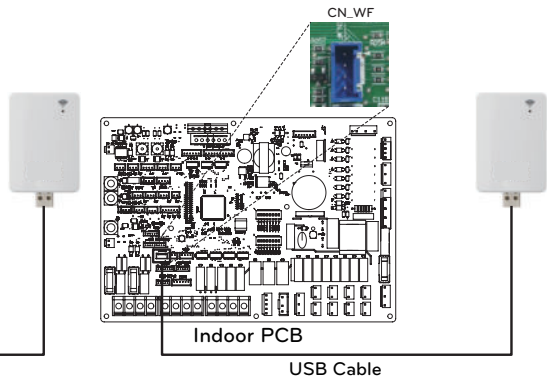
Step 3. Connect the USB cable to the indoor unit PCB (CN_WF ; Blue) until it clicks into place.

Step 4. Connect the Wi-Fi modem to the USB cable fully.

Step 5. Refer to the image below to install the Wi-Fi modem in the marked position.



(For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series,
For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)



(For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit)

Smart Grid (For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series, For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)

This product provides SG function for users. It enables to stop internal operation(Heating / DHW) and control target temperature depending on input signal from power provider.

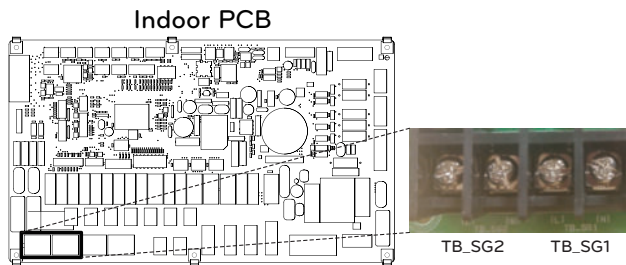
How to wire smart grid

Follow below procedures step 1 ~ step 3.

Step 1. Check if the power of the unit is turned off.

Step 2. Disassemble front panels and distinguish terminal block in Indoor PCB.

Step 3. Connect signal cable to terminal block in PCB (TB_SG2, TB_SG1) fully as shown below.



Heating and DHW Operation depend on input signal(SG1 / SG2)

Status display	Input Signal		Command	Cost (Electric)	Operation	
	SG1	SG2			Heating	Domestic How Water
SGN	Open	Open	Normal Operation	Normal Price	Maintain operation status	Maintain operation status
SG1	Close	Open	Operation Off (Utility lock)	High Price	Forced internal operation off	Forced internal operation off
SG2	Open	Close	Operation On Recommend	Low Price	Target temperature change automatically depend on SG Mode value in installer setting - Step 0 : maintain target temperature - Step 1 : increase 2 °C from target temperature - Step 2 : increase 5 °C from target temperature	Target temperature change automatically depend on SG Mode value in install setting - Step 0 : increase 5 °C from target temperature - Step 1 : increase 5 °C from target temperature - Step 2 : increase 7 °C from target temperature
SG3	Close	Close	Operation On Command	Very Low Price	Maintain operation status	Target temperature change automatically to 80 °C

Energy State (For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit)

This product provides energy states that enable customers to use as much as possible of their own renewable energy. It can shift setpoints depending on input signal from Energy Storage System (ESS) or from any other third-party device using Modbus RTU or Digital 230V inputs.

Available Energy States

There are 8 energy states available. 4 fixed and 4 customizable - each with the possibility to enhance self-consumption of renewable energy.

Energy state	Command	Battery State of charge	Operation (standard setting)					
			Heating		Cooling		Domestic Hot Water	
			Setting	Range	Setting	Range	Setting	Range
1	Operation Off (Utility lock)	Low	Forced internal operation off	Fixed	Forced internal operation off	Fixed	Forced internal operation off	Fixed
2	Normal Operation	Normal	Maintain operation status	Fixed	Maintain operation status	Fixed	Maintain operation status	Fixed
3	Operation On Recommend	High	Increase 2 °C from target temperature	Fixed	Maintain operation Status	Fixed	Increase 5 °C from target temperature	Fixed
4	Operation On Recommend	Very High	Maintain operation status	Fixed	Maintain operation status	Fixed	DHW Target 80 °C	Fixed
5	Operation On Command	Very High	Increase from target temperature	0/+30 (Default : +5)	Decrease from target temperature	0/-30 (Default : -5)	Increase from target temperature	0/+50 (Default : +30)
6	Operation On Recommend	High	Increase from target temperature	0/+30 (Default : +2)	Decrease from target temperature	0/-30 (Default : -2)	Increase from target temperature	0/+50 (Default : +10)
7	Operation Save	Low	Decrease from target temperature	0/-30 (Default : -2)	Increase from target temperature	0/+30 (Default : +2)	Decrease from Target Temperature	0/-50 (Default : 0)
8	Operation Super Save	Very Low	Decrease from target temperature	0/-30 (Default : -5)	Increase from target temperature	0/+30 (Default : +5)	Decrease from Target Temperature	0/-50 (Default : 0)

Digital Input for energy saving (ESS, Smart Grid) (For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit)

This product provides two digital inputs (ES1 / ES2) that can be used to switch between energy states when not using Modbus RTU (CN-COM).

Available Energy States

There are 8 energy states available in total. Four different states can be triggered using the 230V-inputs – by default Energy states 1-4.

With the digital input assignment in the menu 'Energy state/Digital input assignment' of the control panel, different Energy states can be selected for Signals 0:1 and 1:1.

0:0 is always linked with ES2 (Normal operation) and 1:0 is always linked with ES1 (Operation off/Utility lock).

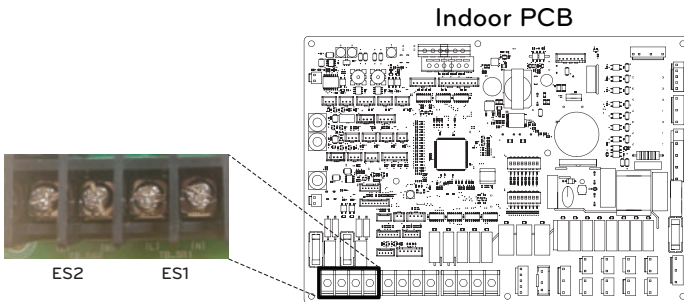
How to set Digital input signal

Follow below procedures step 1 ~ step 3.

Step 1. Check if the power of the unit is turned off.

Step 2. Disassemble front panels and distinguish terminal block in Indoor PCB.

Step 3. Connect signal cable to terminal block in PCB (ES2, ES1) fully as shown below.



Energy state depending on input signal (ES1 / ES2)

Input Signal		Output state	
ES1	ES2	Default	Range
0	0	ES2	fixed
1	0	ES1	
0	1	ES3	ES3-ES8
1	1	ES4	

2Way Valve

2way valve is required to control water flow while cooling operation. Role of 2way valve is to cut off water flow into under floor loop in cooling mode when fan coil unit is equipped for cooling operation.

General Information

THERMAV. supports following 2way valve.

Type	Power	Operating Mode	Supported
NO 2-wire (1)	230 V AC	Energize : Valve Closing	Yes
		De-Energize : Valve Opening	
NC 2-wire (2)	230 V AC	Energize : Valve Closing	Yes
		De-Energize : Valve Opening	

(1) : Normal Open type. When electric power is NOT supplied, the valve is open. (When electric power is supplied, the valve is closed.)

(2) : Normal Closed type. When electric power is NOT supplied, the valve is closed. (When electric power is supplied, the valve is open.)

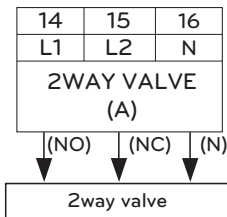
How to Wire 2Way Valve

Follow below procedures Step 1 ~ Step 2.

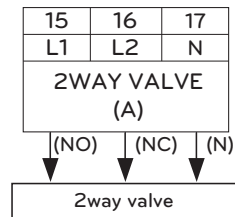
Step 1. Uncover front cover of the unit.

Step 2. Find terminal block and connect wire as below.

For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series,
For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series
For Hydrosplit 1-Pipe



For Split Indoor unit 5 Series,
For Hydrosplit 2-Pipe



CAUTION

Dew Condensation

- Wrong wiring can yield dew condensation on the floor. If radiator is connected at the under floor water loop, dew condensation can be occurred on the surface of the radiator.

WARNING

Wiring

- Normal Open type should be connected to wire (NO) and wire (N) for valve opening in cooling mode.
- Normal closed type should be connected to wire (NC) and wire (N) for valve closing in cooling mode.

(NO) : Live signal (for Normal Open type) from PCB to 2way valve.

(NC) : Live signal (for Normal Closed type) from PCB to 2way valve.

(N) : Neutral signal from PCB to 2way valve.

Final Check

- Flow direction :
 - Water should not flow into under floor loop in cooling mode.
 - To verify the flow direction, check temperature at the water inlet of the under floor loop.
 - If correctly wired, this temperatures should not be reached below 16 °C in cooling mode.

3Way Valve(A)

3Way Valve(A) is required to operate DHW water tank. Role of 3way valve is flow switching between under floor heating loop and water tank heating loop. Plus, it is required to operate 3rd party boiler.

General Information

THERMA V supports following 3way valve.

Type	Power	Operating Mode	Supported
SPDT ¹⁾ 3-wire	220-240 V~	Selecting Flow A ²⁾ between Flow A and Flow B	Yes
		Selecting Flow B ³⁾ between Flow A and Flow B	Yes

1) : SPDT = Single Pole Double Throw. Three wires consist of Live1 (for selecting Flow A), Live 2 (for selecting Flow B), and Neutral (for common).

2) : Flow A means 'water flow from the unit to under floor water circuit.'

3) : Flow B means 'water flow from the unit to DHW water tank.'

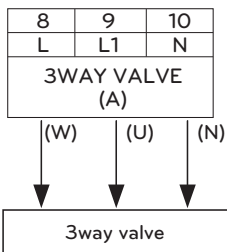
How to wire 3way valve(A)

Follow below procedures Step 1 ~ Step 2.

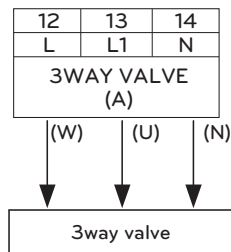
Step 1. Uncover front cover of the unit.

Step 2. Find terminal block and connect wire as below.

For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series,
For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series
For Hydrosplit 1-Pipe



For Split Indoor unit 5 Series,
For Hydrosplit 2-Pipe



WARNING

- 3way valve should select water tank loop when electric power is supplied to wire (W) and wire (N).
- 3way valve should select under floor loop when electric power is supplied to wire (U) and wire (N).

(W) : Live signal (Water tank heating) from PCB to 3way valve

(U) : Live signal (Under floor heating) from PCB to 3way valve

(N) : Neutral signal from PCB to 3way valve

3Way Valve(B)

3way valve(B) is required to operate Solar thermal system. Role of 3way valve is flow switching between open and close mode of the solar circuit.

General Information

THERMAV. supports following 3way valve.

Type	Power	Operating Mode	Supported
SPDT ¹⁾ 3-wire	220-240 V~	Selecting Flow A ²⁾ between Flow A and Flow B	Yes
		Selecting Flow B ³⁾ between Flow A and Flow B	Yes

1) : SPDT = Single Pole Double Throw. Three wires consist of Live1 (for selecting Flow A), Live 2(for selecting Flow B), and Neutral (for common).

2) : Flow B means 'heat source toward solar panel repeatedly'. (close mode of circuit)

3) : Flow A means 'heat source flow from solar panel to DHW tank in solar circuit'.
(open mode of circuit)

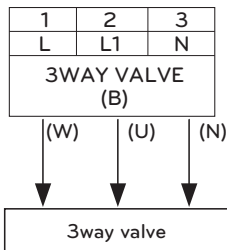
How to wire 3way valve(B)

Follow below procedures Step 1 ~ Step 2.

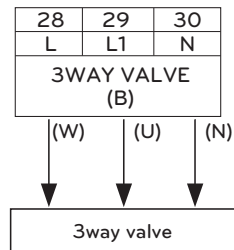
Step 1. Uncover front cover of the unit.

Step 2. Find terminal block and connect wire as below.

For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series,
For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series
For Hydrosplit 1-Pipe



For Split Indoor unit 5 Series,
For Hydrosplit 2-Pipe



⚠ WARNING

- 3way valve should select "close solar circuit" when electric power is supplied to wire (W) and wire (N).
- 3way valve should select "open solar circuit" when electric power is supplied to wire (U) and wire (N).

(W) : Live signal (close solar circuit) from PCB to 3way valve

(U) : Live signal (open solar circuit) from PCB to 3way valve

(N) : Neutral signal from PCB to 3way valve

Final check

No.	Check point	Description
1	Connection of Water Inlet/Outlet	- Check if the shut-off valves should be assembled with Water inlet and outlet pipe of the unit - Check the location of the water inlet/outlet water pipe
2	Hydraulic pressure	- Check the pressure of supplying water by using pressure gauge inside the unit - Pressure of Supplying water should be Under 3.0 bar approximately
3	Water pump capacity	- To secure enough water flow rate, do not set water pump capacity as Minimum. - It can lead unexpected flow rate error CH14. (Refer to 'Water Piping and Water Circuit Connection')
4	Transmission line and power source wiring	- Check if Transmission line and power source wiring are separated from each other. - If it is not, electronic noise may occur from the power source.
5	The power cord specifications	- Check the power cord specifications (Refer to 'Connecting Cables')
6	3Way Valve	- Water should flow from Water outlet of the unit to sanitary tank Water inlet when sanitary tank heating is selected. - To verify the flow direction, Make sure that the water outlet temperature of the unit and water inlet temperature of sanitary Water tank are similar
7	2Way Valve	- Water should not flow into under floor loop in cooling mode. - To verify the flow direction, check temperature at the water inlet of the under floor loop. - If correctly wired, this temperatures should not be reached below 16 °C in cooling mode.
8	Air Vent	- Air-vent must be located highest level of Water pipe system - It should be installed at the point which is easy to service. - It takes some times to remove air in the water system if air purge is not performed sufficiently it may occur CH14 error. (Refer to 'Water Charging')

CONFIGURATION

As **THERMAV** is designed to satisfy various installation environment, it is important to set up system correctly. If not configured correctly, improper operation or degrade of performance can be expected.

DIP Switch Setting (For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series, For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)

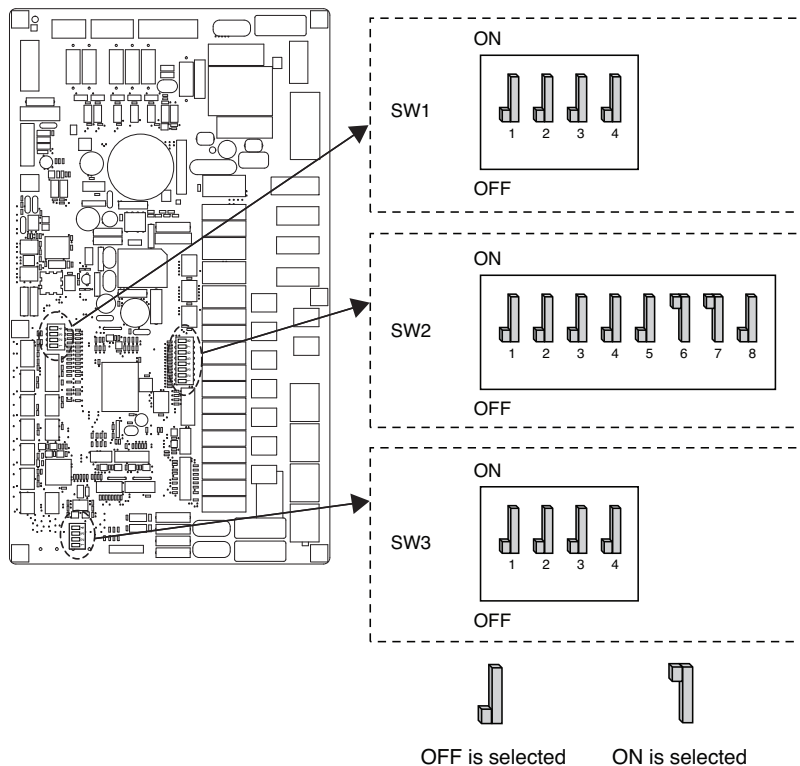


CAUTION

Turn off electric power supply before setting DIP switch

- Whenever adjusting DIP switch, turn off electric power supply to avoid electric shock.

Indoor PCB



DIP Switch Information

Option Switch 2 (Production date : Until Aug.31, 2018)

Description	Setting		Default
Accessory installation information	 2 3	Heat pump is installed (Heating(Cooling) circuit only)	 2 3
	 2 3	Heat pump + DHW tank is installed	
	 2 3	Heat pump + DHW tank + Solar thermal system is installed	
Cycle	4 	Heating Only	 4
	4 	Heating & Cooling	
Flow Switch (Flow Sensor) Detection	5 	Always	 5
	5 	While water pump is on	
Selecting Backup Heater capacity	 6 7	Full capacity is used	 6 7
	 6 7	Electric Heater is not used	
	 6 7	1Ø model : Half capacity is used 3Ø model : 1/3 capacity is used	
	 6 7	Unused	
Thermostat Installation Information	8 	Thermostat is NOT installed	 8
	8 	Thermostat is installed	



CAUTION

- When an external pump or other boiler is installed DIP switch No.5 setting change(Off → On) need to be added

Option Switch 2 (Production date : From Sep.1, 2018)

Description	Setting		Default
Accessory installation information	 2 3	Heat pump is installed (Heating(Cooling) circuit only)	
	 2 3	Heat pump + DHW tank is installed	
	 2 3	Heat pump + DHW tank + Solar thermal system is installed	
Flow Switch (Flow Sensor) Detection	5  5	Always	
	5  5	While water pump is on	
Selecting Backup Heater capacity	 6 7	Electric Heater is not used	
	 6 7	1Ø model : Half capacity is used 3Ø model : 1/3 capacity is used	
	 6 7	Unused	
	 6 7	Full capacity is used	
Thermostat Installation Information	8  8	Thermostat is NOT installed	
	8  8	Thermostat is installed	

Option Switch 1

Description	Setting		Default
MODBUS	1 	As Master (LG extensions modules)	1 
	1 	As Slave (3rd party controller)	
MODBUS Communication Type	2 	Common 3 rd party	2 

Option Switch 3

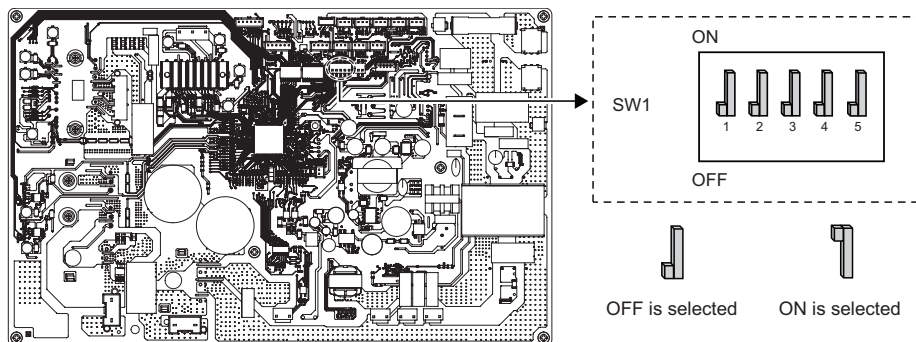
Description	Setting		Default
Remote Room Air Sensor (Accessory)	1 	Remote sensor is not installed	1 
	1 	Remote sensor is installed	
Antifreeze Agent *	2 	Antifreeze agent is not used	2 
	2 	Antifreeze agent is used **	

* This function is available for the R32 models only.

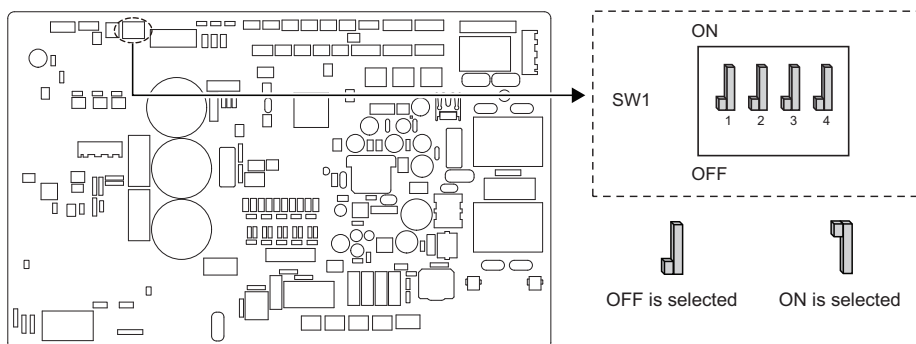
** Possibility to allow colder water temperature by setting. Bridge as CN_FLOW2 on PCB must be dis-connected to enable setting.

Outdoor PCB

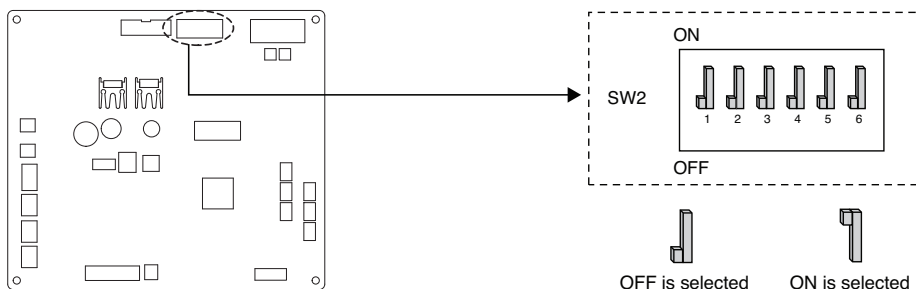
U36A Chassis (For R32) (5, 7, 9 kW)



U36A Chassis (For R410A) (5, 7, 9 kW)



U60A Chassis (For R410A Outdoor Unit Split 3, For R410A Outdoor Unit Split 4) (12, 14, 16 kW)



DIP Switch Information

Description	Setting		Default
Low Noise Mode	2 	Always Mode - Maintain low noise mode for target temperature	2 
	2 	ON/OFF Partial mode - Escape low noise mode for target temperature	
Peak Control	3  4 	Max Mode	3  4 
	3  4 	Peak Control Step 1 - To limit maximum current (Power saving)	
	3  4 	Peak Control Step 2 - To limit maximum current (Power saving)	

✳ Only DIP-switch no. 2 and no.3 has a function. Others have no function.

✳ When setting the limited low noise mode, Mode can be exited to secure capacity after operating for a certain time.

NOTE

* Input current value can be limited by DIP Switch operation.

Model Name			Peak Control Mode Running Current (A)	
Chassis	Phase (Ø)	Capacity (kW)	1 Step	2 Step
U36A	1	5	13	
		7	14	
		9	15	
U60A	1	12	23	20
		14	24	21
		16	25	22
	3	12	8	6
		14	9	7
		16	10	8

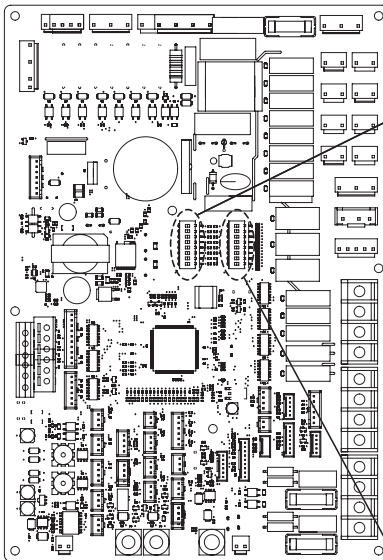
DIP Switch Setting (For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit)

CAUTION

Turn off electric power supply before setting DIP switch

- Whenever adjusting DIP switch, turn off electric power supply to avoid electric shock.

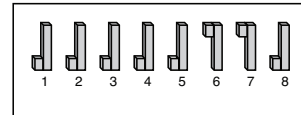
Indoor PCB



(For Split Indoor unit 5 Series)

ON

SW2

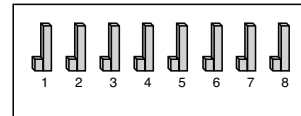


OFF

(For Hydrosplit)

ON

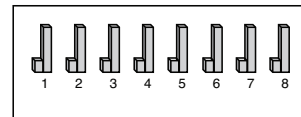
SW2



OFF

ON

SW1



OFF



OFF is selected



ON is selected

DIP Switch Information

Option Switch 2

Description	Setting		Default
Accessory installation information	 2 3	Heat pump is installed (Heating(Cooling) circuit only)	2  3 
	 2 3	Heat pump + DHW tank is installed	
	 2 3	Heat pump + DHW tank + Solar thermal system is installed	
Cycle	4 	Heating Only	4 
	4 	Heating & Cooling	
Room Air Sensor	5 	Room Air Sensor is not installed	5 
	5 	Room Air Sensor is installed	
Selecting Backup heater capacity	 6 7	For Split Indoor unit 5 Series : Electric heater is not used For Hydrosplit : Electric heater is not used	- For Split Indoor unit 5 Series 6  7 
	 6 7	For Split Indoor unit 5 Series : Half capacity is used For Hydrosplit : Full capacity is used	
	 6 7	For Split Indoor unit 5 Series : Reserved For Hydrosplit : Electric heater is not used	- For Hydrosplit 6  7 
	 6 7	For Split Indoor unit 5 Series : Full capacity is used For Hydrosplit : Electric heater is not used	
Thermostat installation information	8 	Thermostat is NOT installed	8 
	8 	Thermostat is installed	

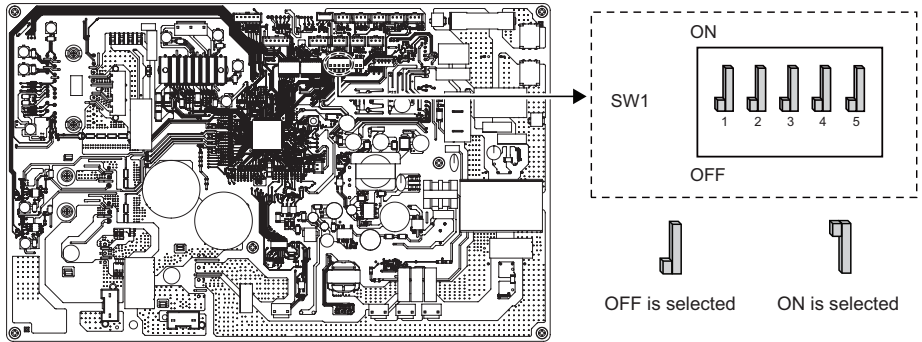
Option Switch 1

Description	Setting		Default
MODBUS Communication Type	1 	As Master (LG extension modules)	1 
	1 	As Slave (3rd party controller)	
MODBUS Function	2 	Unified Open Protocol	2 
Antifreeze Agent	8 	Antifreeze agent is not used	8 
	8 	Antifreeze agent is used *	

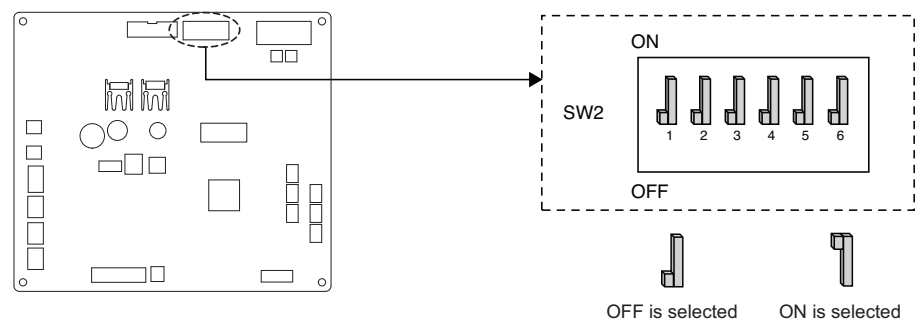
* Possibility to allow colder water temperature by setting.
Bridge at CN_ANTI_SW must be dis-connected to enable setting.

Outdoor PCB

(For Split) (5, 7, 9 kW)



(For Split) (12, 14, 16 kW)



DIP Switch Information

Description	Setting		Default
Low Noise Mode	2 	Always Mode - Maintain low noise mode for target temperature	2 
	2 	ON/OFF Partial mode - Escape low noise mode for target temperature	
Peak Control	3  4 	Max Mode	3  4 
	3  4 	Peak Control Step 1 - To limit maximum current (Power saving)	
	3  4 	Peak Control Step 2 - To limit maximum current (Power saving)	
Defrost Mode	2  5 	Normal Defrost Mode - The same mode as the existing defrost logic	2  5 
	2  5 	Rapid Defrost Mode - Rapid defrost mode in adverse defrost conditions	

* Only DIP-switch no. 2 and no.3 has a function. Others have no function.

* When setting the limited low noise mode, Mode can be exited to secure capacity after operating for a certain time.

* Rapid Defrost Mode can only be applied on U36A (For R32) (5,7,9kW) and U60A (For R410A Outdoor Unit Split 4) (12,14,16kW).

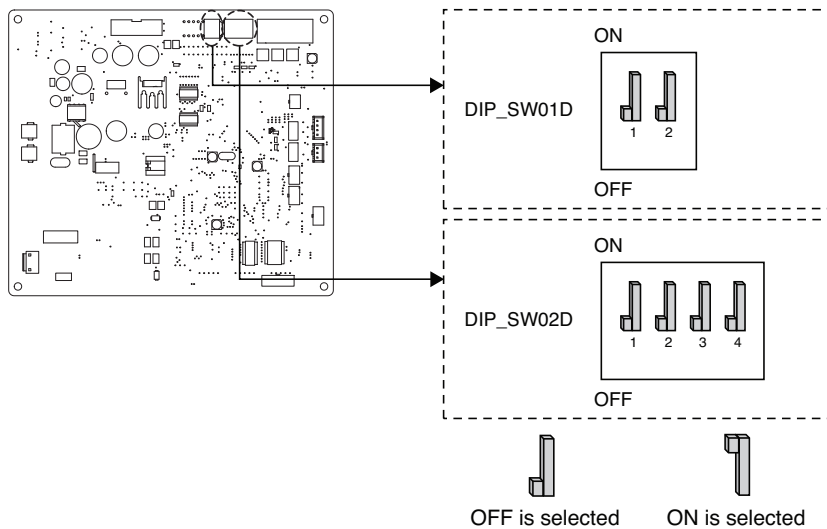
NOTE

* Input current value can be limited by DIP Switch operation.

Model Name			Peak Control Mode Running Current (A)	
Chassis	Phase (Ø)	Capacity (kW)	1 Step	2 Step
U36A	1	5	13	
		7	14	
		9	15	
U60A	1	12	23	20
		14	24	21
		16	25	22
	3	12	8	6
		14	9	7
		16	10	8

Outdoor PCB

(For Hydrosplit) (12, 14, 16 kW)



DIP Switch Information

DIP Switch 1

Description	Setting		Default
Low Noise Mode	 2	Always Mode - Maintain low noise mode for target temperature	 2
	 2	ON/OFF Partial mode - Escape low noise mode for target temperature	

DIP Switch 2

Description	Setting		Default
Peak Control	 1	 2	 1  2
	 1	 2	
	 1	 2	

DIP Switch 1 & 2

Description	Setting			Default
Defrost Mode	DIP Switch 1  2	DIP Switch 2  3	Normal Defrost Mode - The same mode as the existing defrost login	DIP Switch 1  2
	DIP Switch 1  2	DIP Switch 2  3	Rapid Defrost Mode - Rapid defrost mode in adverse defrost conditions	DIP Switch 2  3

* Only the switch in the table has a function. Others have no function.

* When setting the on/off partial mode, Mode can be exited to secure capacity after operating for a certain time.

NOTE

* Input current value can be limited by DIP Switch operation.

Model Name			Peak Control Mode Running Current (A)	
Chassis	Phase (Ø)	Capacity (kW)	1 Step	2 Step
U60A	1	12	23	20
		14	24	21
		16	25	22
	3	12	8	6
		14	9	7
		16	10	8

NOTE**Emergency Operation****• Definition of terms**

- Trouble : a problem which can stop system operation, and can be resumed temporally under limited operation without certificated professional's assist.
- Error : problem which can stop system operation, and can be resumed ONLY after certificated professional's check.
- Emergency mode : temporary heating operation while system met Trouble.

• Objective of introducing 'Trouble'

- Not like air conditioning product, Air-to-Water heat pump is generally operation in whole winter season without any system stopping.
- If system found some problem, which is not critical to system operating for yielding heating energy, the system can temporarily continue in emergency mode operation with end user's decision.

• Classified Trouble

- Trouble is classified two levels according to the seriousness of the problem : Slight Trouble and Heavy trouble
- Slight Trouble : a problem is found inside the unit. In most case, this trouble is concerned with sensor problems. The outdoor unit is operating under emergency mode operation condition which is configured by DIP switch No. 4 of the unit PCB.
- Heavy trouble : a problem is found inside the outdoor unit. As the outdoor unit has problem, the emergency mode operation is performed by electric heater located in the unit.
- Option Trouble : a problem is found for option operation such as water tank heating. In this trouble, the troubled option is assumed as if it is not installed at the system.

• When the AWHP has any trouble,

- (1) If there is not a function to judge possibility of operation :

Once a trouble occurs mainly in indoor unit, AWHP stops. On the other hand, remote controller allows the product to activate On/ Off operation. (On : emergency operation)

- Slight / Heavy trouble : Heating Operable only
- Critical trouble : Full stop
- Treatment priority : Critical>Heavy>Slight

- (2) If there is a function to judge possibility of operation :

Depending on the status of slight / heavy / critical trouble, pop-up phrase is guided separately on display.

- Slight trouble : Heating/Cooling Operable
- Heavy trouble : Heating Operable only
- Critical trouble : Service center request

AWHP operates when user pressed OK button on pop-up window.

NOTE**• Duplicated trouble : Option trouble with slight or heavy trouble**

- If option trouble is occurred with slight (or heavy) trouble at the same time, the system puts higher priority to slight (or heavy) trouble and operates as if slight (or heavy) trouble is occurred.
- Therefore, sometimes DHW heating can be impossible in emergency operation mode. When DHW is not warming up while emergency operation, please check if DHW sensor and related wiring are all Ok.

• Emergency operation is not automatically restarted after main electricity power is reset.

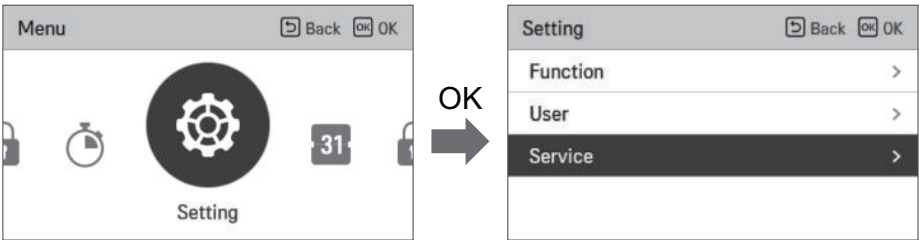
- In normal condition, the product operating information is restored and automatically restarted after main electricity power is reset.
- But in emergency operation, automatic re-start is prohibited to protect the product.
- Therefore, user must restart the product after power reset when emergency operation has been running.

SERVICE SETTING

How to enter service setting

To enter the menu displayed at the bottom, you need to enter the service setting menu as follows.

- In the menu screen, press [←,→(left/right)] button to select the setting category, and press [OK] button to move to the setting list.
- In the setting list, select the service setting category, and press [OK] button to move to the service setting list.



Service setting

- You can set the product service functions.
- Some functions may not be displayed/operated in some product types.

Menu	Description
Service contact	Check and input the service center phone number that you can call when there is service issue.
Model information	View product and capacity information
RMC Version Information	Check the remote controller model name and software version.
Open Source License	View the remote controller's open source license.

Service contact

Check and input the service center phone number that you can call when there is service issue.

- In the service setting list, select the service contact point and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.
- While “edit” button is selected, press [OK] button to move to the edit screen, change it, and press [OK] button to change the service contact point.

Service

BackOKOK

Service Contact>

Model Information>

RMC Version Information>

Open Source License>



Service Contact

BackOKOK

Telephone
+1544-7777

Edit



Service Contact

BackOKOK

Telephone

+1544-77

77

Model information

Check product and capacity information to which the remote controller is connected.

- In the service setting list, select model information category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.
- The Model information
 - Depending on the model you own, the model name and serial number may not be displayed.
 - The displayed model name is the factory model name.
- The unit capacity
 - $1 \text{ kWh} = 1 \text{ kBtu} \times 0.29307$
 - kWh is the result calculated based on Btu, There may be a small difference between calculated and actual capacity.
 - Ex) If the unit capacity is 18 kBtu, it is displayed as 5 kWh.

Service		Back	OK
Service Contact	>		
Model Information	>		
RMC Version Information	>		
Open Source License	>		



Model Information		Back
Indoor Unit | AWHP		
└ Model	ZHNW09606A1	
└ Serial number		
Outdoor Unit | Single		
└ Model	ZHUW096A0	
└ Serial number		
Capacity	9kW (30kBtu/h)	

RMC version Information

View the remote controller software version.

- In the service setting list, select the RMC version information and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen

Service	 Back  OK
Service Contact	>
Model Information	>
RMC Version Information	>
Open Source License	>



RMC Version Information	 Back
SW Version | 3.03.1a	

Open source license

View the remote controller's open source license.

- In the service setting list, select the open source license category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.

Service	Back OK
Service Contact	>
Model Information	>
RMC Version Information	>
Open Source License	>



Open Source License		Back
LGE Open Source Software Notice		
Product Type	HVAC WIRED REMOTE CONTR	
Model Number/Range	RS3 Wired Remote Controller	
Those products identified by the Product Type and Model Range above from LG Electronics, Inc. ("LGE") contain the open source software detailed below. Please refer to the		

INSTALLER SETTING (For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series, For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)

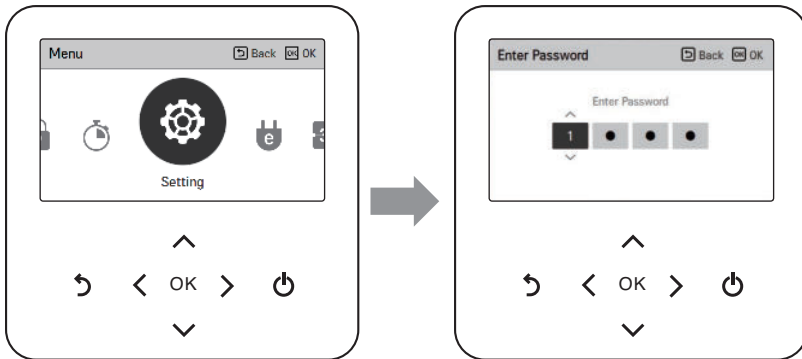
How to enter installer setting



CAUTION

The installer setting mode is the mode to set the remote controller's detail function. If the installer setting mode is incorrectly set, it may cause product failure, user's injury, or property damage. It must be set by the installation specialist with the installation license, and if it is installed or changed without installation license, all problems caused will be the responsibility of the installer, and may void the LG warranty.

- In the menu screen, press [<,>(left/right)] button to select the setting category, and press [^ (up)] button for 3 seconds to enter the password input screen for the installer setting.
- Input the password and press [OK] button to move to the installer setting list.



※ Installer setting password

Main screen → menu → setting → service → RMC version information → SW Version

Example) SW version : 1.00.1 a

In the above case, the password is 1001.

NOTE

Some categories of the installer setting menu may not be available depending on the product function or the menu name may be different.

Installer setting (For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series, For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)

- You can set the product user functions.
- Some functions may not be displayed/operated in some product types.

Function	Description
3 Minutes Delay	Factory use only
Select Temperature Sensor	Selection for setting temperature as air temperature or leaving water temperature or air+leaving water temperature
Dry Contact Mode	Dry contact function is the function that can be used only when the dry contact devices is separately purchased and installed.
Central Control address	When connecting the central control, set the central control address of the unit.
Pump Test run	Water pump test run
Air cooling set temp.	Adjusting range of 'Setting Air Temperature' in cooling mode
Water cooling set temp.	Adjusting range of 'Setting Leaving Water Temperature' in cooling mode
Air heating set temp.	Adjusting range of 'Setting Air Temperature' in heating mode
Water heating set temp.	Adjusting range of 'Setting Heating Flow Temperature' in heating mode
DHW Set Temp.	Setting DHW set temperature
Screed drying	This function controls floor heating to a specific temperature for a certain period of time to cure floor cement.
Heater on temperature	Setting outdoor air temperature where half capacity of backup heater starts operation.
Water supply off temp. during cooling	Determine the leaving water temperature which blocks the flow into underfloor coil in cooling mode. This function is used for preventing condensation on the floor in cooling mode
Tank disinfection setting 1	Setting start/maintain time for disinfection
Tank disinfection setting 2	Setting disinfection temperature
Tank setting 1	Setting minimum and maximum temperature using heat pump cycle for DHW heating
Tank setting 2	Setting temperature hysteresis and heating priority (DHW heating or floor heating)
Heater priority	Determine usage of backup heater and booster heater
DHW time setting	Determine follow time duration : operation time of domestic hot water tank heating, stop time of domestic hot water tank heating, and delay time of DHW tank heater operating
TH on/off Variable, heating air	Heating air temperature TH On / Off Type setting
TH on/off Variable, heating Water	Heating Water Outlet Temperature TH On / Off Type

Function	Description
TH on/off Variable, cooling air	Cooling air temperature TH On / Off Type setting
TH on/off Variable, cooling Water	Cooling Water Outlet Temperature TH On / Off Type
Heating temp.	At the water control in heating mode, the control reference water temperature position setting
Cooling temp.	At the water control in cooling mode, the control reference water temperature position setting
Pump setting in heating	Set water pump on/off interval option during thermo off condition in heating mode
Pump setting in cooling	Set water pump on/off interval option during thermo off condition in cooling mode
Forced operation	Water pump off After 20 consecutive hours, disable / enable the logic that drives the water pump by itself
CN_CC	It is the function to set whether to install (use) Dry Contact. (It is not a function for Dry Contact installation, but it is a function to set the usage of the unit's CN_CC port.)
Pump frequency setting(RPM)	Function to change Water Pump RPM
Pump Capacity	Function to change Water Pump Capacity
Smart Grid(SG)	Select whether to use or not use the SG Mode function of the product, set the operation option value in SG1 step.
Seasonal auto temp.	Set the operating temperature in Seasonal Auto mode
Modbus Address	It is function to set the address of the Modbus device that is externally linked to the product. Modbus address setting function is available from indoor unit.
CN_EXT	Function to set external input and output control according to DI / DO set by customer using dry contact port of indoor unit. Determine the use of the contact port (CN_EXT) mounted on the indoor unit PCB
Anti-freezing Temperature	This function is to apply an offset to the freezing temperature of the freeze protection logic when using antifreeze mode
Add Zone	Install additional valve in product to control additional operation area
Use External Pump	Set up to control an external water pump
3rd Party Boiler	Configuration to control 3rd party boiler
Meter Interface	When installing the meter interface to measure energy / calorie in the product, set unit spec for each port
Pump Prerun/Overrun	Set to reach the optimum flow rate by circulating the heating water with the water pump before heat exchange. After the operation stop, additional water pump is activated to circulate the heating water.
Solar Thermal System	Function to set operation reference value in Solar Thermal System.
Current flow rate	Function to check the current flow rate.
Data logging	Display error history of connected unit
Password Initialization	It is the function to initialize (0000) the password when you forgot the password set in the remote controller.

3 Minutes Delay

Temporarily eliminates the 3-minute delay function of the outdoor unit Comp

- Factory use only

- In the installer setting list, select 3 Minutes Delay category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.

Installer		Back	OK
3 Minutes Delay		>	
Remote sensor active	< Not use >		
Temp. sensor selection	< Water >		
Dry Contact Mode	< Auto >		
Control Control Address	>		



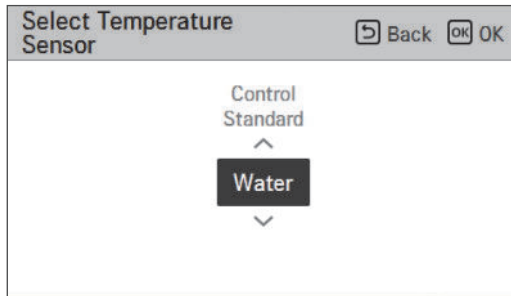
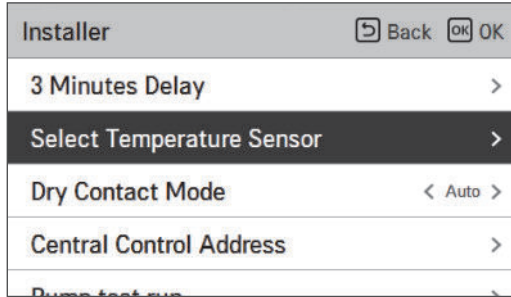
OK

3 Minutes Delay		Back	OK
3 Minutes Delay will be released.			
Release			

Select Temperature Sensor

The product can be operated according to air temperature or water temperature. The selection for setting temperature as air temperature or water temperature is determined.

- In the installer setting list, Select Temperature Sensor category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.



Value	Default	Range
Control Standard	Water	Water / Air / Air + Water
Sensor Location	Remote Control	Remote Control / Indoor Unit

* When Water is selected, Sensor Location is disabled.

NOTE

- When the sensor location is set to indoor unit, Remote Air Sensor Connection and the change of DIP switch setting(No. 1 of Option Switch 3) are required
- When the sensor location is set to Remote Control, the RS3 controller must be placed inside of suitable Reference room.

Dry Contact Mode

Dry contact function is the function that can be used only when the dry contact devices is separately purchased and installed.

- Change setting values using [<,>(left/right)] button.

Installer	Back	OK
3 Minutes Delay	>	
Remote sensor active	< Not use >	
Temp. sensor selection	< Water >	
Dry Contact Mode	< Auto >	
Control Control Address	>	

Value	Description
Auto (Default)	Automatically operation ON with release hard lock
Manual	Keep operation OFF with hard lock

NOTE

For dry contact mode related detail functions, refer to the individual dry contact manual.

What is dry contact?

It means the contact point signal input when the hotel card key, human body detection sensor, etc. are interfacing with the unit.

Added system functionality by using external inputs (dry contacts and wet contacts).

Central Control Address

When connecting the central control, set the central control address of the unit.

- In the installer setting list, select Central Control Address category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.

Installer		Back	OK
Central Control Address		>	
Air cooling set temp.		>	
Water cooling set temp.		>	
Air heating set temp.		>	
Water heating set temp.		>	



Central Control Address		Back	OK
Address Code(Hex)			
^ 0 v ^ 0 v			

NOTE

Enter address code as hexadecimal value

Front: Central Control Gr. No.

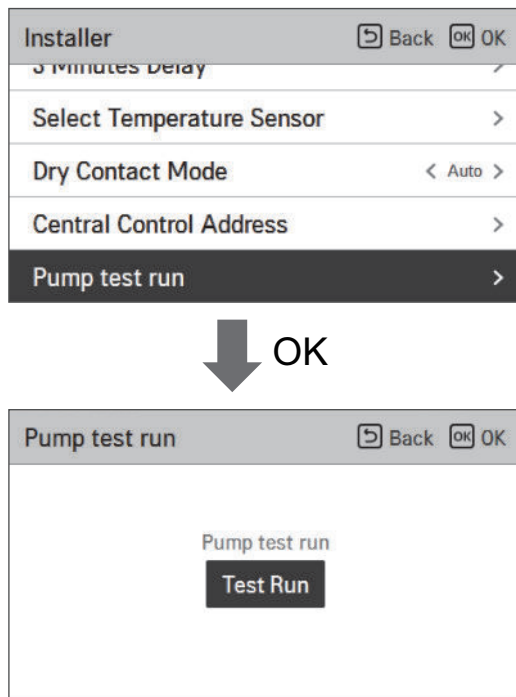
Back side: Central control indoor the number

Pump test run

The pump test run is to test run by operating the water pump for 1 hour.

This function can be used for air purging through air vents and checking flow rate and others.

- In the installer setting list, Pump Test run category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.



NOTE

The setting for Thermostat and Dry contact should be disabled to use the Pump test run function.

Air cooling set temp.

Determine cooling setting temperature range when air temperature is selected as setting temperature.

- In the installer setting list, select Air cooling set temp category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.

The screen shows the 'Installer' menu with the following options: Central Control Address, Air cooling set temp. (highlighted), Water cooling set temp., Air heating set temp., and Water heating set temp. Each option has a right arrow. At the top right are 'Back' and 'OK' buttons.



The screen is titled 'Air cooling set temp.' and has 'Back' and 'OK' buttons at the top right. In the center, there is a temperature range display. On the left, the number '18' is shown with up and down arrows. To its right, the word 'Max.' is above the number '30'.

Value	Default	Range
Min.	18 °C	16 ~ 22 °C
Max.	30 °C	24 ~ 30 °C

NOTE

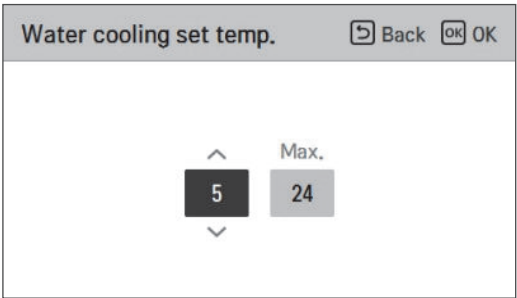
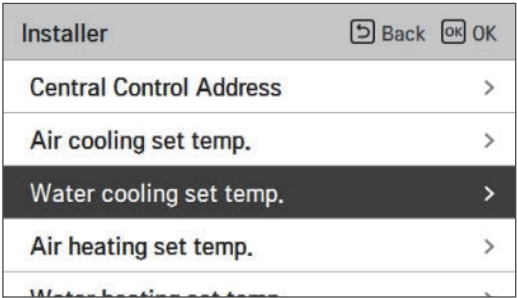
Only available when remote air temperature sensor is connected.

- Accessory PQRSTA0 should be installed.
- Also, Remote air sensor connection should be set properly.

Water cooling set temp.

Determine cooling setting temperature range when leaving water temperature is selected as setting temperature.

- In the installer setting list, select water cooling set temp category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.



Value	Default	Range
Min.	18 °C	5 ~ 20 °C
Max.	24 °C	22 ~ 27 °C

NOTE

Water condensation on the floor

- While cooling operation, it is very important to keep leaving water temperature higher than 16 °C. Otherwise, dew condensation can be occurred on the floor.
- If floor is in humid environment, do not set leaving water temperature below 18 °C.

Water condensation on the radiator

- While cooling operation, cold water may not flow to the radiator. If cold water enters to the radiator, dew generation on the surface of the radiator can be occurred.

Air heating set temp.

Determine heating setting temperature range when air temperature is selected as setting temperature

- In the installer setting list, select Air heating set temp. category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.

The screen shows the 'Installer' menu with the following options: Central Control Address, Air cooling set temp., Water cooling set temp., and Air heating set temp. (which is highlighted). At the top right are 'Back' and 'OK' buttons.



The screen shows the 'Air heating set temp.' detail screen. It features a large display showing the value '16' with up and down arrow icons. To the right, it shows 'Max.' with the value '30'.

Value	Default	Range
Min.	16 °C	16 ~ 22 °C
Max.	30 °C	24 ~ 30 °C



CAUTION

Only available when remote air temperature sensor is connected.

- Accessory PQRSTA0 should be installed.
- Also, Remote air sensor connection should be set properly.

Water heating set temp.

Determine heating setting temperature range when water temperature is selected as setting temperature.

- In the installer setting list, select Water heating set temp. category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.

Installer

Back

OK

Central Control Address

Air cooling set temp.

Water cooling set temp.

Air heating set temp.

Water heating set temp.



Water heating set temp.

Back

OK

^

15

▼

Max.

65

Value	Default		Range	
	For R410A	For R32	For R410A	For R32
Min.	15 °C	15 °C	15 ~ 34 °C	15 ~ 34 °C
Max.	57 °C	65 °C	57 ~ 35 °C	35 ~ 65 °C

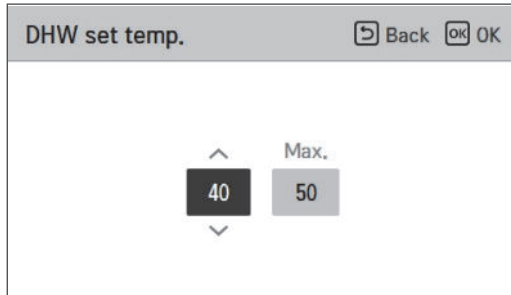
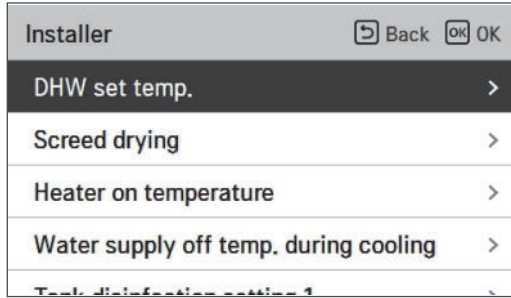
NOTE

- When the backup heater is not used, the minimum temperature of the water temperature can be set in the range of 34°C to 20°C. (Default : 20 °C)

DHW set temp.

Determine heating setting temperature range when DHW temperature is selected as setting temperature

- In the installer setting list, select DHW set temp. category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.



Value	Default	Range
Min.	40 °C	30 ~ 40 °C
Max.	50 °C	50 ~ 80 °C

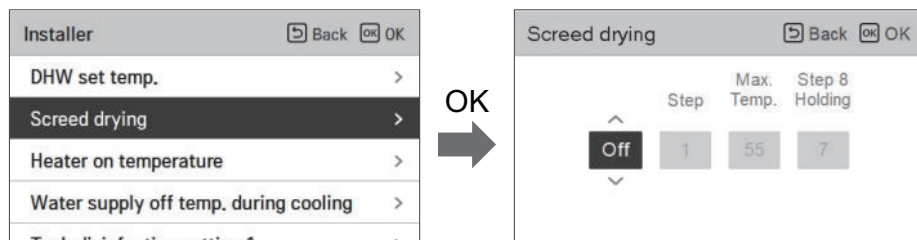
NOTE

- When DHW tank heater(booster heater) is in 'not used' status, Max. temperature will be limited.

Screed drying

This function is a unique feature of AWHP that, when AWHP is installed in a new concrete structure, controls the specific temperature floor heating out temperature for a certain period of time to cure the floor cement.

- In the installer setting list, select Screed drying category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.



How to display

Main Screen - Displays 'Screed drying' on the desired temperature display. The step in progress at the bottom of the display is displayed.

Setting value

- Start-up step: 1 ~ 11
- Maximum temperature : 35 °C ~ 55 °C (Default : 55 °C)
- Step 8 Holding time : 1 days ~ 30 days (Default : 7 days)

Function operation

- It is performed by the following procedure from the selected starting step.
- After all steps are completed, turn off the cement curing operation.

Value	Step										
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
LWT	25 °C	Max. T	Off	25 °C	35 °C	45 °C	Max. T	Max. T	45 °C	35 °C	25 °C
Duration	72 h	96 h	72 h	24 h	24 h	24h	24 h	Holding time	72 h	72 h	72 h

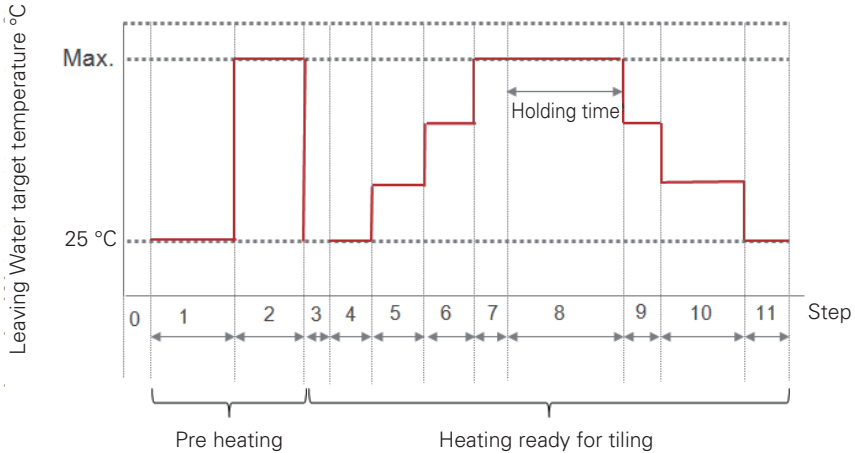
* LWT: Leaving Water Target Temp.

* Holding time range : 1 ~ 30 day(default: 7 day)

- ※ If the upper limit setting value of the heating LW temperature is 55 °C or lower, it is set to 55 °C forcibly.
If the lower limit setting value of the heating LW temperature is 25 °C or higher, it is set to 25 °C forcibly.

NOTE

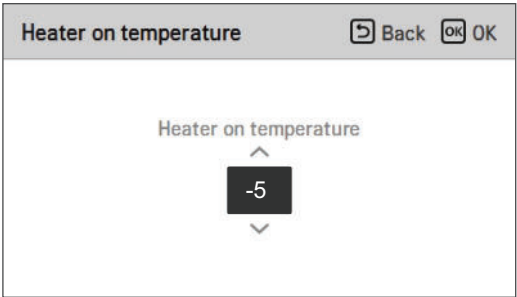
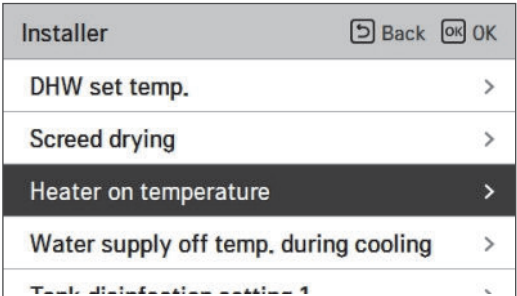
- During Screed drying operation, button input except for installer function and temperature display is restricted.
- When the power is applied again after a power outage during product operation, the product operation state before power failure is remembered and the product is automatically operated.
- Screed drying operation stops when an error occurs / When error is cleared, restart cement Screed drying. (However, if the wired remote control is reset to the error occurrence state, it is compensated in the unit of one day)
- Upon releasing after an error, Screed drying operation may take up to 1 minute of waiting time after boot up. (The Screed drying operation status is judged as 1 minute cycle.)
- During Screed drying operation, installer function Screed drying operation is selectable.
- During Screed drying operation, starting operation, low noise mode off, low noise time setting off, hot water off, solar heat off.
- During Screed drying operation, simple, sleep, on, off, weekly, holiday, heater does not execute reservation operation.



Heater on temperature

Depending on local climatic conditions, it is necessary to change the temperature condition in which backup heater turns on / off.

- In the installer setting list, Heater on temperature category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.



Value	Default	Range
Heater on temperature	-5 °C	-15 ~ 18 °C

NOTE**Heater on temperature**

- Using Half capacity of backup heater

When DIP Switch No. 6 and 7 is set as 'ON-OFF' :

Example : If Heater on temperature is set as '-1' and DIP switch No 6. and 7 is set as 'ON-OFF', then half capacity of backup heater will start operation when outdoor air temperature is below -1 °C and current leaving water temperature or room air temperature is much lower than target leaving water temperature or target room air temperature.

- Using Full capacity of backup heater

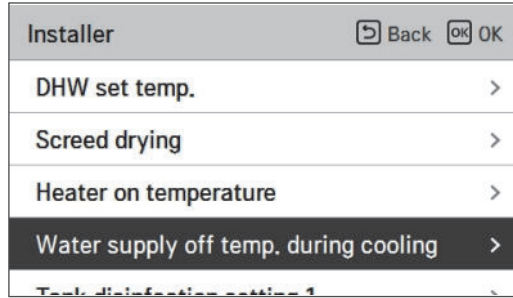
When DIP Switch No. 6 and 7 is set as 'ON-ON' :

Example : If Heater on temperature is set as '-1' and DIP switch No 6. and 7 is set as 'ON-ON', then full capacity of backup heater will start operation when outdoor air temperature is below -1 °C and current leaving water temperature or room air temperature is much lower than target leaving water temperature or target room air temperature.

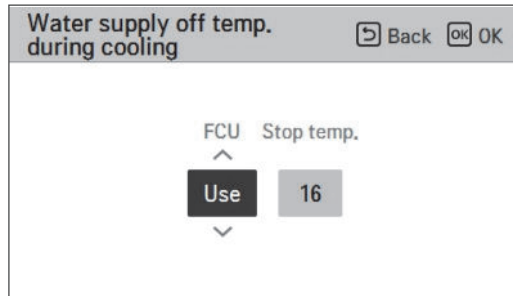
Water supply off temp. during cooling

Determine leaving water temperature when the unit is turned off. This function is used for preventing condensation on the floor in cooling mode

- In the installer setting list, select Water supply off temp. during cooling category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.



The screen shows the 'Installer' menu with the following options: DHW set temp., Screed drying, Heater on temperature, Water supply off temp. during cooling (highlighted), and Task disinfection setting 1. Navigation buttons 'Back' and 'OK' are in the top right corner.

The screen displays the title 'Water supply off temp. during cooling' and navigation buttons 'Back' and 'OK'. It features two settings: 'FCU' with a 'Use' button and 'Stop temp.' with a value of '16'. Up and down arrows are positioned above and below the 'Use' button.

Value	Default	Range
FCU	Use	Use / Not Use
Stop temp.	16 °C	FCU Use: 5 ~ 25 °C FCU Not Use: 16 ~ 25 °C

- Stop temp. : cut-off temp. Stop temp. is valid when FCU is set as 'Use'.
- FCU : determines if FCU is installed or not.
- Example : If FCU is set as 'Use', Stop temp. setting is disabled. However, if actually FCU is NOT installed in the water loop, the unit operates continuously in cooling mode until water temperature meets desired temperature. In this case, a condensed water may form on the floor caused by cold water in the underfloor coil.
- Example : If Stop temp. is set as '20' and FCU is set as 'Not use' and actually FCU is installed in the water loop, then the Stop temp. is used and the unit stops operation in cooling mode when the leaving water temperature is below 20 °C. As a result, the unit may not offer enough cooling since the cold water with desired temperature doesn't flow into the FCU.



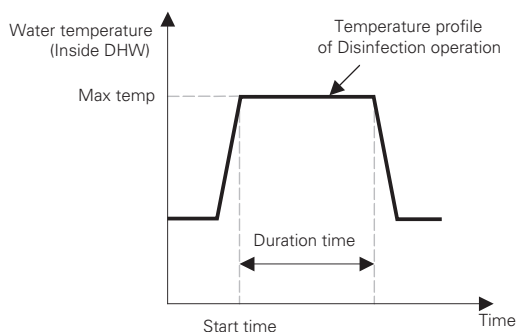
CAUTION

FCU Installation

- If FCU is used, related 2way valve should be installed and connected to the unit PCB.
- If FCU is set as 'Use' whereas FCU or 2way valve is NOT installed, the unit can do abnormal operation.

Tank disinfection setting 1, 2

- Disinfection operation is special DHW tank operation mode to kill and to prevent growth of legionella inside the tank.
 - Disinfection active : Selecting enable or disable of disinfection operation.
 - Start date : Determining the date when the disinfection mode is running.
 - Start time : Determining the time when the disinfection mode is running.
 - Max temp. : Target temperature of disinfection mode.
 - Duration time : Duration of disinfection mode.



Installer		Back	OK
Tank disinfection setting 1	>		
Tank disinfection setting 2	>		
Tank setting1	>		
Tank setting2	>		
Water selector	>		

OK



Tank disinfection setting 1			Back	OK
Disinfection active	Start date	Start time		
Not use	Fri.	23		

Installer		Back	OK
Tank disinfection setting 1	>		
Tank disinfection setting 2	>		
Tank setting1	>		
Tank setting2	>		
Water selector	>		

OK



Tank disinfection setting 2		Back	OK
Max temp.	Duration time		
70	10		

NOTE

DHW heating should be enable

- If Disinfection active is set as 'Not use', that is 'disable disinfection mode', Start date and Start time is not used.

Tank setting 1

- In the installer setting list, select tank setting 1 category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.

The screenshot shows a menu titled 'Installer' with a 'Back' button and an 'OK' button. The menu items are: 'Tank disinfection setting 1', 'Tank disinfection setting 2', 'Tank setting1' (which is highlighted with a dark background), 'Tank setting2', and 'Water heater'. Each item has a right-pointing arrow.



The screenshot shows a screen titled 'Tank setting1' with a 'Back' button and an 'OK' button. It displays two settings: 'Min temp.' with a value of '5' and 'Comp. Limit Temp.' with a value of '55'. Each value is inside a box with up and down arrows for adjustment.

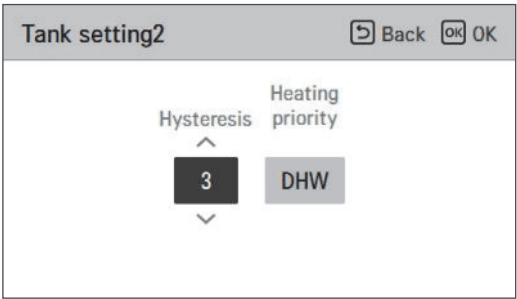
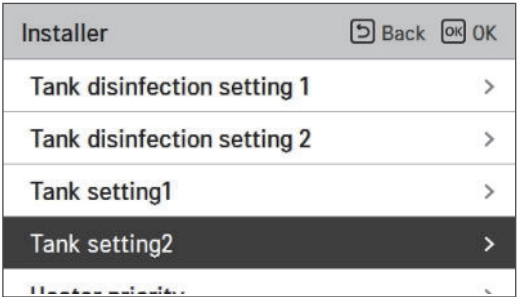
Value	Default	Range
Min. temp.	5 °C	1 ~ 30 °C
Comp. Limit Temp.	55 °C	40 ~ 58 °C

NOTE

"Max outdoor temp." means rising Max temp. by heat pump cycle.
Above this temp., only electric heater will be used.

Tank setting 2

- In the installer setting list, select tank setting 2 category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.

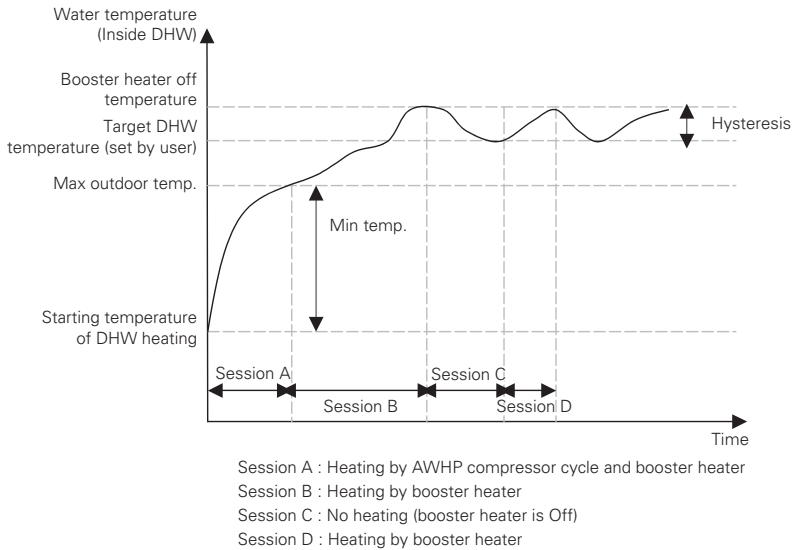


Value	Default	Range
Hysteresis	3 °C	2 ~ 4 °C
Heating priority	DHW	Floor heating / DHW

• Tank setting 1, 2

Descriptions for each parameters are as following.

- Min temp. : temperature gap from Max outdoor temp.
- Max outdoor temp. : maximum temperature generated by AWHP compressor cycle.
- Example : If Min temp. is set as '5' and Max outdoor temp. is set as '48', then Session A (see the graph) will be started when the water tank temperature is below 43 °C.... If temperature is above 48 °C..., then Session B will be started.
- Hysteresis : Temperature gap from target DHW temperature for booster heater operating. This value is required to prevent frequent On and Off of water tank heater. In the normal DHW operation, the value is set as '0' and Hysteresis is valid when heater delay time is active.
- Example : If user's target temperature is set as '70' and Hysteresis is set as '3', then the booster heater will be turned off when the water temperature is above 73 °C. The booster heater will be turned on when the water temperature is below 70 °C.
- Heating priority : Determining heating demand priority between DHW tank heating and under floor heating.
- Example : If Heating priority is set as 'DHW', that means heating priority is on DHW heating, DHW is heated by AWHP compressor cycle and booster heater. On the other hand, if the Heating priority is set as 'Floor heating', that means heating priority is on under floor heating, DHW tank is ONLY heated by booster heater. In this case the under floor heating is not stopped while DHW is heated.

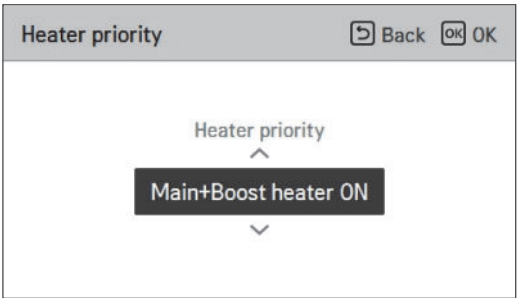
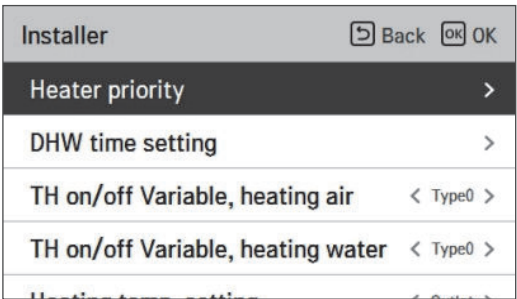


NOTE

DHW heating does not operate when it is disabled.

Heater priority

- Heater priority: It is decided whether to use the boost heater for DHW operation and the backup heater for floor heating at the same time by condition.
- Example: If the heater priority is set to 'Main+Boost heater ON', the backup heater and boost heater are turned on/off according to the control logic. (It can be turned on at the same time)
If Heater Priority is set to 'Boost heater only ON', the backup heater does not operate when the boost heater operates according to the control logic. (When the boost heater is not in operation, the backup heater operates according to the logic.)
- In the installer setting list, heater priority category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.

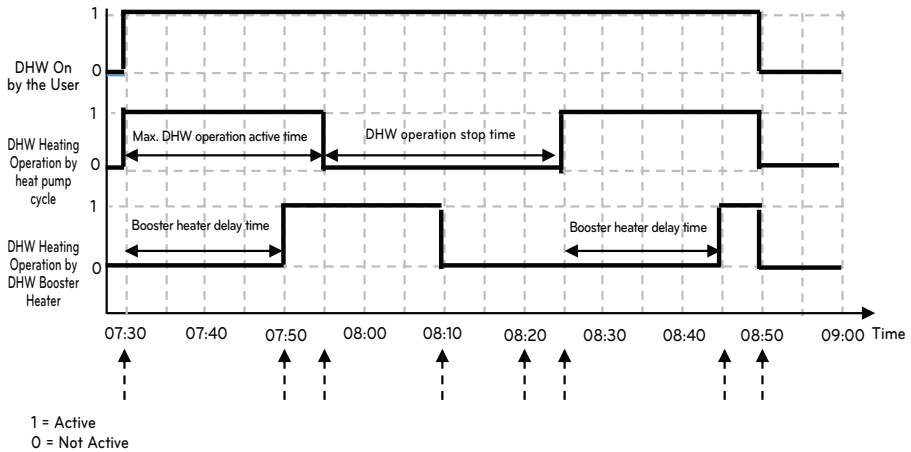


Value	
Boost heater only ON	Main+Boost heater ON (Default)

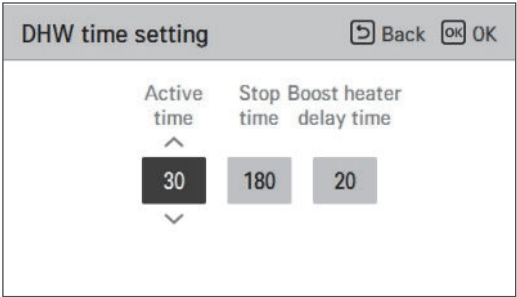
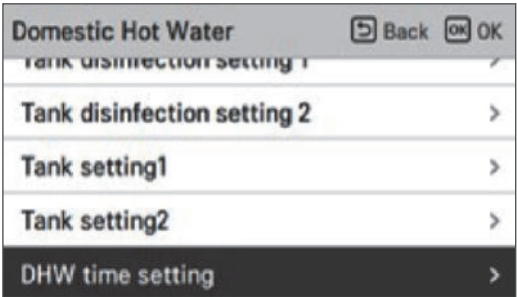
DHW time setting

Determine following time duration : operation time of DHW tank heating, stop time of DHW tank heating, and delay time of DHW tank heater operating.

- Active time : This time duration defines how long time DHW tank heating can be continued.
- Stop time : This time duration defines how long time DHW tank heating can be stopped. It is also regarded as time gap between DHW tank heating cycle.
- Boost heater delay time : This time duration defines how long time DHW tank heater will not be turned on in DHW heating operation.
- Example of timing chart :



Time	Description
7:30	The user activates the DHW function in the remote controller (DHW operation starts by the heat pump cycle as the Thermo on condition is reached)
7:50	The booster heater is activated after the booster heater delay time(20 min)
7:55	The active time(25min) of DHW operation by the heat pump cycle ends and the heat pump cycle is forced to be stopped (The booster heater is continues to operate because the target temperature is not reached)
8:10	The booster heater operation ends as the target temperature is reached
8:20	DHW operation is not activated by the stop time(30 min) even though the water temperature is dropped and DHW operation condition is reached.
8:25	When the active time condition is reached, DHW operation starts again by the heat pump cycle
8:45	The booster heater is activated after the booster heater delay time(20 min)
8:50	The user deactivates the DHW function by turning it off in the remote controller



Value	Default	Range
Active time	30 min	5~95 min
Stop time	30 min	0~600 min
Boost heater delay time	20 min	20~95 min

TH on/off Variable, heating air

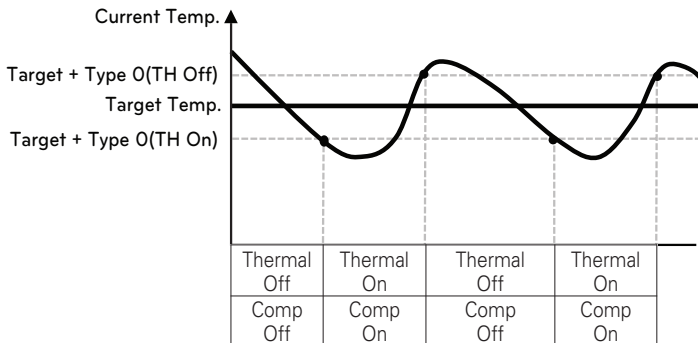
It is a function to adjust the heating air temperature Thermal On / Off temperature according to the field environment in order to offer optimized heating operation.

- You can set the following setting values using [$\leftarrow$, $\rightarrow$ (left/right)] button.

Installer		Back	OK
Heater priority		>	
DHW time setting		>	
TH on/off Variable, heating air		< Type0 >	
TH on/off Variable, heating water		< Type0 >	
Heating time setting		< 0.1 >	

Value	Description	
	TH On	TH Off
Type0 (Default)	-0.5 °C	1.5 °C
Type1	-1 °C	2 °C
Type2	-2 °C	3 °C
Type3	-3 °C	4 °C

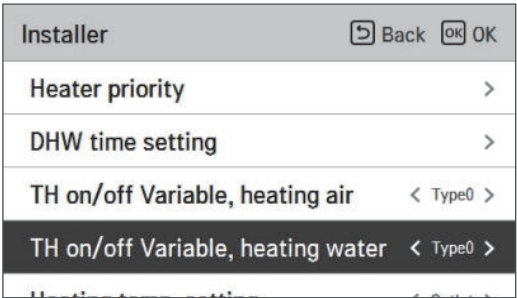
- Example : Type0 setting



TH on/off Variable, heating water

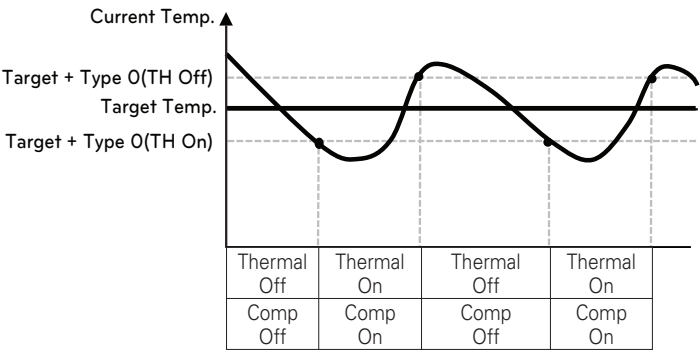
It is a function to adjust the heating water temperature Thermal On / Off temperature according to the field environment in order to offer optimized heating operation.

- You can set the following setting values using [**<**,**>**(left/right)] button.



Value	Description	
	TH On	TH Off
Type0 (Default)	-2 °C	2 °C
Type1	-3 °C	3 °C
Type2	-4 °C	4 °C
Type3	-1 °C	1 °C

- Example : Type0 setting



TH on/off Variable, cooling air

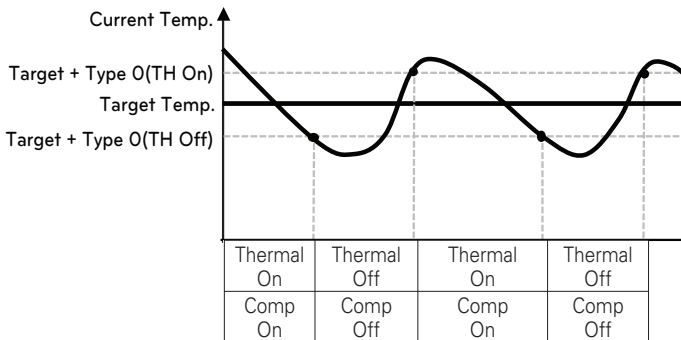
It is a function to adjust the cooling air temperature Thermal On / Off temperature according to the field environment in order to offer optimized cooling operation.

- You can set the following setting values using [$\leftarrow$, $\rightarrow$ (left/right)] button.

Installer	Back	OK
TH on/off Variable, heating air < Type0 >		
TH on/off Variable, heating water< Type0 >		
TH on/off Variable, cooling air < Type0 >		
TH on/off Variable, cooling water< Type0 >		
Pump setting in heating		

Value	Description	
	TH On	TH Off
Type0 (Default)	0.5 °C	-0.5 °C
Type1	1 °C	-1 °C
Type2	2 °C	-2 °C
Type3	3 °C	-3 °C

- Example : Type0 setting



TH on/off Variable, cooling water

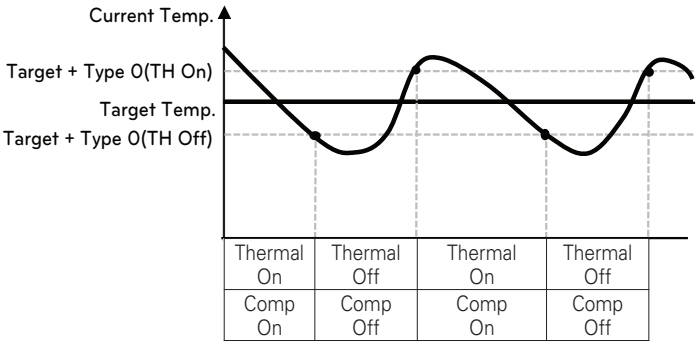
It is a function to adjust the cooling water temperature Thermal On / Off temperature according to the field environment in order to offer optimized cooling operation.

- You can set the following setting values using [<,>(left/right)] button.

Installer	Back	OK
TH on/off Variable, heating air	<	Type0 >
TH on/off Variable, heating water	<	Type0 >
TH on/off Variable, cooling air	<	Type0 >
TH on/off Variable, cooling water	<	Type0 >
Pump setting in heating		

Value	Description	
	TH On	TH Off
Type0 (Default)	0.5 °C	-0.5 °C
Type1	1 °C	-1 °C
Type2	2 °C	-2 °C
Type3	3 °C	-3 °C

- Example : Type0 setting



Heating temp. setting

- At the water control in heating mode, the control reference water temperature position setting
- If the air / leaving water temperature selection setting is set to leaving water temperature
- Change setting values using [<,>(left/right)] button
- The function is not available for some products.

Installer	Back OK
Heater priority	>
DHW time setting	>
TH on/off Variable, heating air	< Type0 >
TH on/off Variable, heating water	< Type0 >
Heating temp. setting	< Outlet >

Value	
Outlet (Default)	Inlet

Cooling temp. setting

- At the water control in cooling mode, the control reference water temperature position setting
 - If the air / leaving water temperature selection setting is set to leaving water temperature
- Change setting values using [<,>(left/right)] button.
- The function is not available for some products.

Installer

BackOKOK

Driv time setting

TH on/off Variable, heating air < Type0 >

TH on/off Variable, heating water < Type0 >

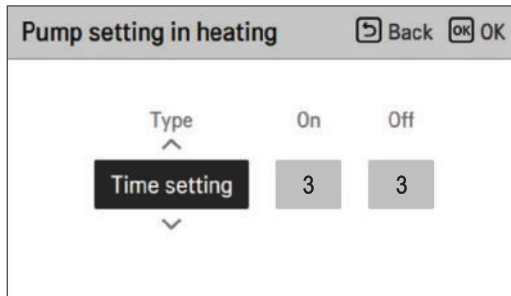
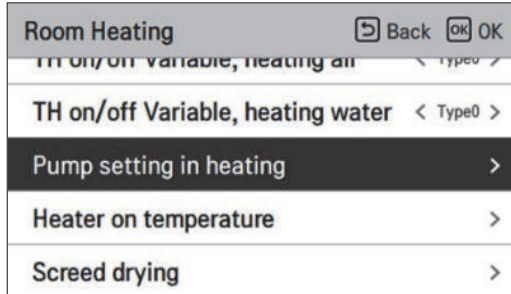
Heating temp. setting < Outlet >

Cooling temp. setting < Outlet >

Value	
Outlet (Default)	Inlet

Pump setting in heating

- It is a function to help the water pump's mechanical life by putting the water pump's rest time
- Installer setting function to set water pump on/off interval option during thermo off condition in heating mode.
- In the installer setting list, select Pump setting in heating category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.

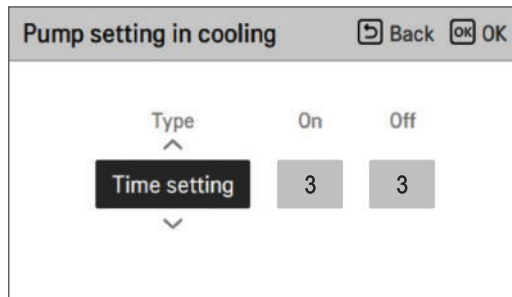
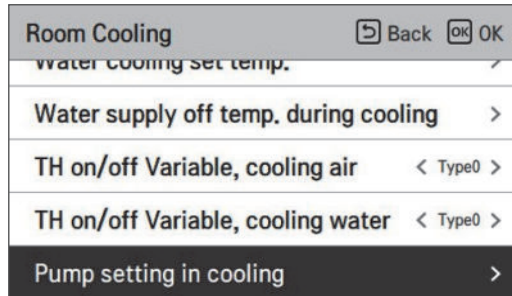


Value	Default	Range
Type	Time setting	Time setting / Continuous Operation
On	3 min	1 ~ 60 min
Off	3 min	1 ~ 60 min

* When Continuous Operation is selected, On, Off is disabled.

Pump setting in cooling

- It is a function to help the water pump's mechanical life by putting the water pump's rest time
- Installer setting function to set water pump on/off interval option during thermo off condition in cooling mode.
- In the installer setting list, select Pump setting in cooling category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.



Value	Default	Range
Type	Time setting	Time setting / Continuous Operation
On	3 min	1 ~ 60 min
Off	3 min	1 ~ 60 min

* When Continuous Operation is selected, On, Off is disabled.

Forced operation

- If the product is not used for a long time, the pump will be forced to operate to prevent pump failure and PHEX freezing
- Water pump off After 20 consecutive hours, disable / enable the logic that drives the water pump by itself
- In the installer setting list, select Forced operation category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen

General	Back OK
Forced operation	>
Pump Capacity	>
Pump Prerun/Overrun	>
Password Reset	>



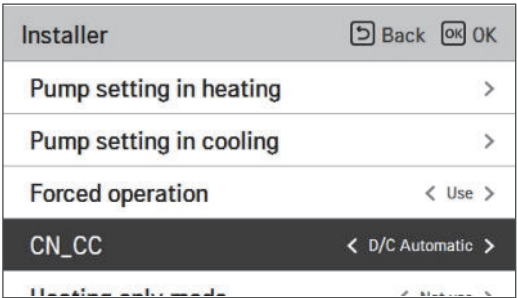
Forced operation		Back OK
	Oper. Cycle	Oper. Time
Use	20	10

Value	Default	Range
-	Use	Use / Not Use
Oper. Cycle	20 hours	20 ~ 180 hours
Oper. Time	10 min	1 ~ 60 min

CN_CC

It is the function to set the usage of the unit's CN_CC port.

- Change setting values using [<,>(left/right)] button



Value	Description
D/C Automatic (Default)	When power is applied to the product, the unit when the contact point is on in Dry Contact installed state recognizes Dry Contact installation
D/C Not Installed	Do not use (install) Dry Contact
D/C Installed	Use (install) Dry Contact

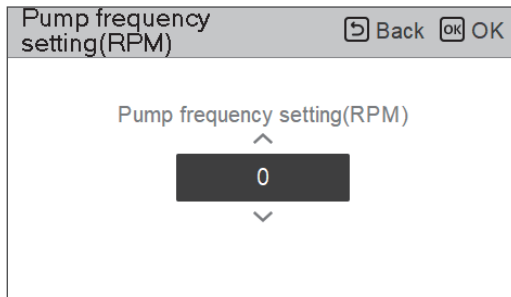
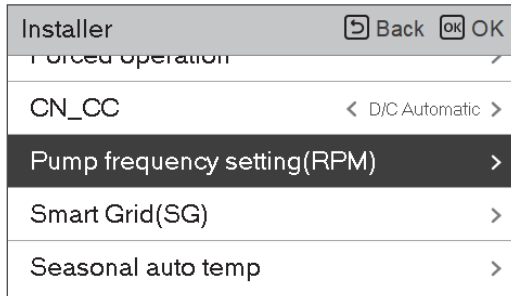
NOTE

CN_CC is the device connected to the unit to recognize and control the external contact point.

Pump frequency setting (RPM) (For Split R410A Indoor unit 3 Series)

It is a function to enable installer to control pump RPM of BLDC pump application model.

- In the installer setting list, select Pump frequency setting(RPM) category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.
- The function is not available for some products.

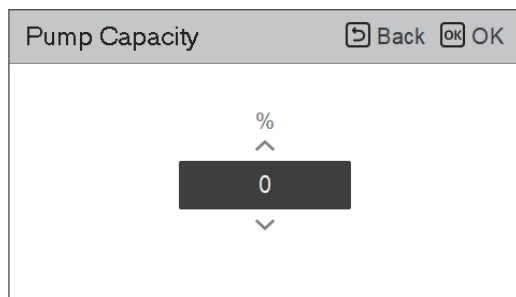
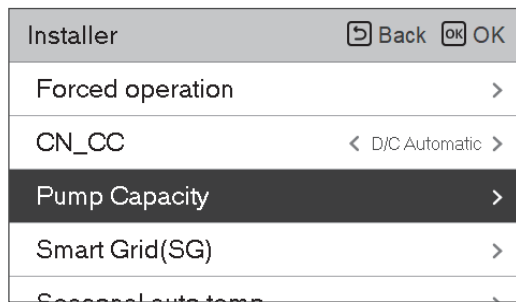


Value	Default	Range
Pump frequency setting(RPM)	3500 RPM	500 ~ 3700 RPM

Pump Capacity (For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series)

It is a function to enable installer to control Pump capacity application model.

- In the installer setting list, select Pump Capacity category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.
- The function is not available for some products.



Value	Default	Range
%	100	10 ~ 100% change unit: 5
ΔT	Set	Set : Use Release : Not Use

Smart Grid (SG)

It is the function to enable / disable the SG Ready function and to set the reference value at SG2 step.

- In the installer setting list, select Smart Grid(SG) category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.

The screenshot shows the 'Installer' menu with the following options: 'Heating only mode' (with '< Not use >' to its right), 'Pump frequency setting(PWM)' (with '>' to its right), 'Smart Grid(SG)' (highlighted in black with '>' to its right), 'Seasonal auto temp' (with '>' to its right), and 'Data logging' (with '>' to its right). At the top right of the menu are 'Back' and 'OK' buttons.



The screenshot shows the 'Smart Grid(SG)' detail screen. At the top right are 'Back' and 'OK' buttons. In the center, there is a 'Mode' label above two buttons: 'Not use' (highlighted in black) and 'Step 0' (in grey). Up and down arrows are positioned between the two buttons.

Value	Mode
Not use (Default)	-
Use	Step 0
	Step 1
	Step 2

Power Supply Blockage (Smart Grid)

The heat pump operated automatically by the power supply status signals from power supply companies. This function can respond to European countries' special tariff for heat pump using on a smart grid.

4 modes
depending on
power supply status

Power Supply Status

Operating Mode



0:0 [Normal Operation]

The heat pump works at maximum efficiency.



1:0 [Switch-off command, Utility lock]

Deactivates the heat pump to avoid peak load. The maximum blocking time depends on the system's thermal storage capacity, but amounts to at least 2 hours 3 times a day. (No frost protection)



0:1 [Switch-on recommendation]

The switch-on recommendation and set value storage tank temperature is increased, depending on the parameter "Mode SG"

Mode SG : set temperature + α
depending on the below
parameter

Step 0 (DHW +5 °C)

Step 1 (H/P+2 °C, DHW +5 °C)

Step 2 (H/P+5 °C, DHW +7 °C)



1:1 [Switch-on command]

The command activates the compressor. Optionally, electrical booster heaters can be activated to utilize electricity surpluses.

Seasonal auto temp.

It is the function to set the operation reference value in Seasonal Auto mode.

- In the installer setting list, select Seasonal auto temp category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.

Installer	Back	OK
Heating only mode	<	Not use >
Pump frequency setting(PWM)	>	
Smart Grid(SG)	>	
Seasonal auto temp	>	
Date setting	>	

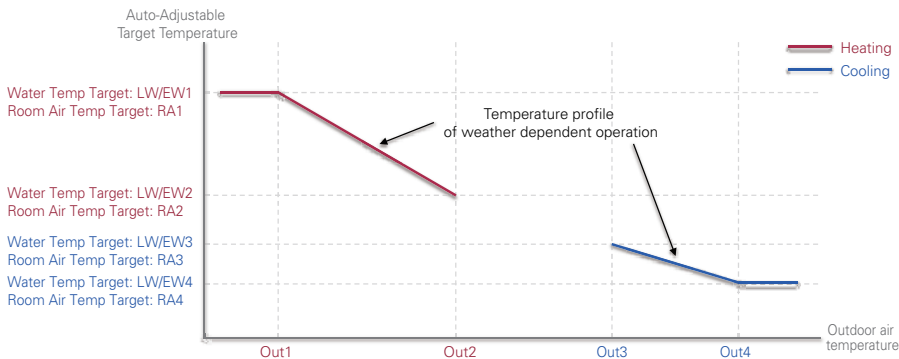


Seasonal auto temp	Back	OK
Mode	<	Heat >
Outdoor 1, Heat	<	-10 >
Outdoor 2, Heat	<	16 >
Outdoor 3, Cool	<	30 >
Outdoor 4, Cool	<	40 >

Function	Description	Range		Default	Boundary
		For R32	For R410A		
Outdoor1,Heat (Out1)	Heating lower ambient temp	-25 ~ 35 °C	-15 ~ 24 °C	-10 °C	Out1 ≤ Out2-1
Outdoor2,Heat (Out2)	Heating higher ambient temp			16 °C	Out2 ≥ Out1 +1 Out2 ≤ Out3 -5
Outdoor3,Cool (Out3)	Cooling lower ambient temp	10 ~ 46 °C	10 ~ 43 °C	30 °C	Out3 ≥ Out2 +5 Out3 ≤ Out4 -1
Outdoor4,Cool (Out4)	Cooling higher ambient temp			40 °C	Out4 ≥ Out3 +1
Water1,Heat (LW1)	Heating higher water temp	Use heater : LW STD : 15~65 °C EW STD : 15~55 °C Not use heater : LW STD : 20~65 °C EW STD : 20~55 °C	15 ~ 57 °C	35 °C	LW1 ≥ LW2
Water 2,Heat (LW2)	Heating lower water temp			28 °C	LW1 ≥ LW2
Water3,Cool (LW3)	Cooling higher water temp	Use FCU & 5 °C IDU : LW STD : 5~27 °C EW STD : 10~27 °C Use FCU & 6 °C IDU : LW STD : 6~27 °C EW STD : 11~27 °C Not use FCU : LW STD : 16~27 °C EW STD : 20~27 °C	5 ~ 25 °C	20 °C	LW3 ≥ LW4
Water4,Cool (LW4)	Cooling lower water temp			16 °C	LW3 ≥ LW4
Air 1, Heat (RA1)	Heating higher air temp	16 ~ 30 °C	16 ~ 30 °C	30 °C	RA1 ≥ RA2
Air 2, Heat (RA2)	Heating lower air temp			26 °C	RA1 ≥ RA2
Air 3, Cool (RA3)	Cooling higher air temp	18 ~ 30 °C	18 ~ 30 °C	22 °C	RA3 ≥ RA4
Air 4, Cool (RA4)	Cooling lower air temp			18 °C	RA3 ≥ RA4

- Setting range: Celsius
- Seasonal Auto Driving mode: Heating, Heating & Cooling, Air-conditioning
- * If heating mode is selected, heating & cooling or cooling can not be selected.
- Depending on the air / outflow control selection value, the water / air related setting value is displayed on the screen.

In this mode, setting temperature will follow outdoor temperature automatically. This mode adds the cooling season function to the conventional weather dependent operation mode.



NOTE

DHW mode can be operated independently of seasonal auto temp mode.

Modbus Address

It is function to set the address of the Modbus device that is externally linked to the product. Modbus address setting function is available from indoor unit.

- In the installer setting list, select Modbus Address , and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.

Installer

Back

OK

ON/OFF

D/C Automatic

Pump frequency setting(RPM)

>

Smart Grid(SG)

>

Seasonal auto temp

>

Modbus Address

>

OK

Modbus Address

Back

OK

Address Code(Hex)

0

1

NOTE

To use this function, switch No.1 of option switch 1 must be turned ON.

CN_EXT

It is a function to control external input and output according to DI type set by customer using CN-EXT Port.

- In the installer setting list, select CN-EXT Port category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.

Installer	Back OK
Pump frequency setting(RPM)	>
Smart Grid(SG)	>
Seasonal auto temp	>
CN_EXT	>
Add Zone	>



CN_EXT	Back OK				
<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Not use</td> <td>Simple Operation</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Simple Dry Contact</td> <td>Single emergency stop</td> </tr> </table>		Not use	Simple Operation	Simple Dry Contact	Single emergency stop
Not use	Simple Operation				
Simple Dry Contact	Single emergency stop				

Value	Contact Input	Operation	Remark
Not Use	Open	-	-
	Close	-	-
Simple Operation	Open	OFF	-
	Close	ON	-
Simple Dry Contact	Open	OFF + Hard Lock	Follows Dry Contact mode : - Auto mode : If contact input closes, operation On - Manual mode : If contact input closes, keep in previous state
	Close	ON	
Single emergency stop	Open	Always OFF	Priority : - Emergency stop Lock > Central control Lock > Dry Lock
	Close	Emergency stop released	

Anti-freezing Temperature

This function is to apply an offset to the freezing temperature of the freeze protection logic when using antifreeze mode.

Make sure to use this function only when antifreeze is added.

- Change setting values using [$\leftarrow$, $\rightarrow$] (left/right) button.
- The function is not available for some products.

Installer		Back	OK
CN_EXT	>		
Anti-freezing Temperature	< -5 >		
Data logging	>		
Password Initialization	>		

NOTE

To use this function, the antifreeze short pin(CN_FLOW2) must be open and switch No.2 in Option SW 3 must be on.

Add Zone

Function to set whether or not to use a installed 2nd circuit function using mixing kit.

Installer Back OK

Seasonal auto temp >

CN_EXT >

Add Zone >

Use External Pump < Not use >

Add Zone Back OK

Use Added Zone < Use >

Valve Closing Time >

Hysteresis >

You can set valve closing time[s] and hysteresis temperature[°C] on screen by yourself.

Valve Closing Time Back OK

Valve Closing Time

1

4

0

Hysteresis Back OK

Hysteresis

2

Value	Default	Range
Valve Closing Time	240 s	60 ~ 999 s
Hysteresis	2 °C	1 ~ 5 °C

Activating this function, It allows 2 zones (Circuit 1, Circuit 2) temperature to be controlled, separately.

- In case of heating, the temperature of Circuit 1 can not be set higher than Circuit 2 temperature.
- In case of cooling, the temperature of Circuit 1 can not be set lower than Circuit 2 temperature.

NOTE

Circuit 1 = Direct circuit : Zone where the water temperature is Highest when heating
 Circuit 2 = Mixing circuit : The other zone

Use External Pump

This function can be set to control the external water pump.

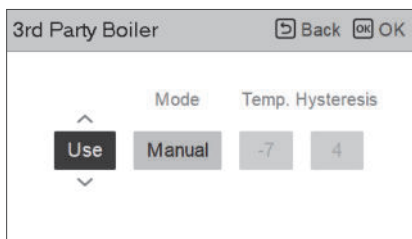
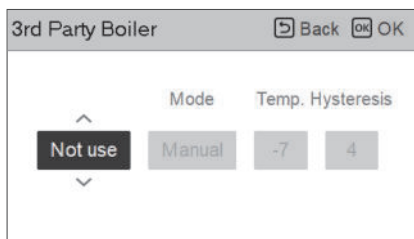
- In the installer setting list, select Use External Pump category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.

Installer	⏮ Back	OK ⏭
Add Zone	>	
Use External Pump	< Not use >	
3rd Party Boiler	>	
Meter Interface	>	
Pump Drain/Overrun	>	

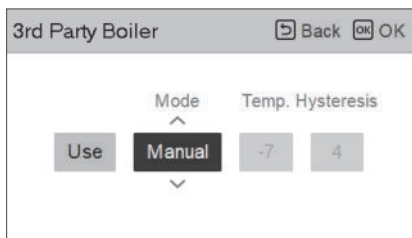
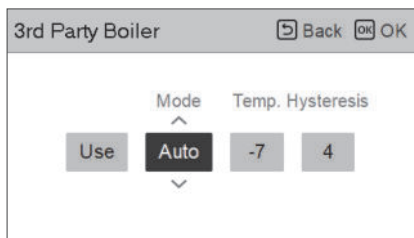
Value	
Not use	Use

3rd Party Boiler

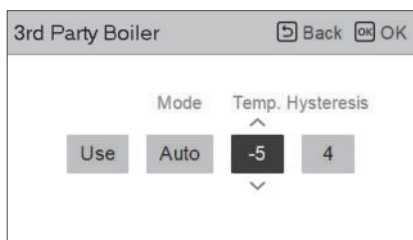
This function is to configure the 3rd party boiler to be controlled.



If the status of this function is "Use", you can choose control mode of boiler, Auto or Manual.



If the mode of this function is set to "Auto", you can set temperature of the boiler and hysteresis, respectively.



External boiler ON condition :

- If outdoor temperature $\leq$ external boiler operation temperature value (installer setting), turn off the indoor unit and operate the external boiler.

External boiler OFF condition :

- If External air temperature $\geq$ external boiler operation temperature value (installer setting) + Hysteresis (installer setting), turn off external boiler operation and operate indoor unit

Meter Interface

It is the function that can check the status of energy and power on screen. It collects and calculates power or calorie data to create data for energy monitoring and energy warning alarm pop-ups. This function can be activated in installer mode.

Installer	Back	OK
3rd Party Boiler		>
Meter Interface		>
Pump Prerun/Overrun		>
Data logging		>
Pressure Initialization		>

Meter Interface	Back	OK
Modbus Address		>
Unit		>



Modbus Address	Back	OK
Modbus Address		
Not use		

Modbus Address	Back	OK
Modbus Address		
B0		

Modbus Address	Back	OK
Modbus Address		
B1		

There are 2 options, modbus address and unit, in this function. Activating the modbus address option, you choose one address(B0 or B1) or don't use. Then, you set the port and specification in range of 0000.0~9999.9[pulse/kWh] as shown in the figure below.

Unit	Back	OK
Pulse/kWh		
Port1		
0 0 0 0 0		

Unit	Back	OK
Pulse/kWh		
Port1		
1 1 1 1 1		

Pump Prerun/Overrun

Pump Prerun operates to ensure sufficient flow before the compressor is operated. This is a function that allows heat exchange to work smoothly.

Pump Overrun removes latent heat from the PHEX by circulating the water flow when the comp is stopped

Installer	Back	OK
Start/Party Done		>
Meter Interface		>
Pump Prerun/Overrun		>
Data logging		>
Password Initialization		>



Pump Prerun/Overrun	Back	OK
Prerun Overrun > 1 < 1		

Value	Default	Range
Prerun	1 min	1~10 min
Overrun	1 min	1~10 min

Solar Thermal System

It is function to set operation reference value in Solar Thermal System.

In the installer setting list, select Solar thermal system category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.

Installer [Back] [OK]

- IDU operation time >
- Solar Thermal System >**
- Data logging >
- Password Initialization >
- IoT Thermal Configuration >

Solar Thermal System [Back] [OK]

- Solar collector set temp >**
- DHW set temp. >
- TH on/off Variable, solar >
- Boost Heater >
- Solar pump flush schedule >

Solar collector set temp [Back] [OK]

Min. Max.

10 95

DHW set temp. [Back] [OK]

Max.

80

TH on/off Variable, solar [Back] [OK]

Temp OnTemp Off

8 2

Boost Heater [Back] [OK]

Boost Heater

Enable

Solar pump flush schedule [Back] [OK]

Control	Start Hour	Start Minute	End Hour	End Minute
On	06	00	18	00

Solar pump flush setting [Back] [OK]

Oper. Cycle Oper. Time

60 1

Solar pump test run [Back] [OK]

Solar pump test run

Stop

NOTE

To use this function, switch No.2 of option switch 2 must be turned ON and No.3 of option switch 2 must be turned OFF.

Descriptions for each parameters are as following.

- Solar collector set temp
 - Min temp : It is the minimum solar collector temperature at which the solar thermal system can operate.
 - Max temp : It is the maximum solar collector temperature at which the solar thermal system can operate.
- TH on/off Variable, solar
 - Temp on : It is the temperature difference between the current solar thermal temperature and DHW tank temperature at which the solar thermal system operates.
 - Temp off : It is the temperature difference between the current solar thermal temperature and DHW tank temperature at which the solar thermal system stops.
 - Example : If the current solar collector temperature is 80 °C and Temp on is set to 8 °C, the solar thermal system operates when the DHW tank temperature is less than 72 °C. In the same case, if Temp off is set to 2 °C, Solar Thermal System stops when DHW temperature is 78 °C.
- DHW Set Temp
 - Max : It is maximum temperature of DHW that can be reached by solar thermal system.
- Boost Heater
 - Enable : Booster heater can be used when operating the Solar Thermal system.
 - Disable : Booster heater cannot be used when operating the Solar Thermal system.
- Solar pump flush schedule
 - It is the function to circulate the solar water pump intermittently for solar collector temperature detection when the solar water pump does not operate for a long time. Turn on to use this function.
- Solar Pump flush setting
 - Oper.Cycle : When using the solar pump flush function, the solar water pump operates at the set time.
 - Oper.Time : When using the solar pump flush function, the solar water pump operates during the set time.

Function	Value	Range	Default
Solar collector set temp	Min	5 °C ~ 50 °C	10 °C
	Max	60 °C~105 °C	95 °C
DHW set temp	Max	20 °C~90 °C	80 °C
TH on/off Variable, solar	Temp On	3 °C ~ 40 °C	8 °C
	Temp Off	1 °C ~ 20 °C	2 °C
Boost Heater	Boost Heater	Enable/Disable	Enable
Solar pump flush schedule	On/OFF	On/Off	On
	Start Hour, Start Minute	00:00 ~ 24:00	6:00
	End Hour, End Minute	00:00 ~ 24:00	18:00
Solar pump test run	Pump test Run	Start/Stop	Stop
Solar pump flush setting	Oper.Cycle	30 min ~ 120 min	60 min
	Oper.Time	1 min ~ 10 min	1 min

Current flow rate (For Split R32 Indoor unit 4 Series)

It is the function to check the current flow rate.

- In the installer setting list, select Current Flow Rate category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen. The current flow rate can be checked. (Range : 7 ~ 80 L/min)
- This function is available for Split R32.

Installer	
Zone	Back OK OK
Current Flow Rate	>
Data logging	>
Password Initialization	>
LG Therma V Configuration	>



Current Flow Rate	
Back	
80.0 L/min	

Data logging

This function is to check the operation and error history.

- In the installer setting list, select Data logging category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.

Installer		Back	OK
Heating only mode	< No use >		
Pump frequency setting(PWM)	>		
Smart Grid(SG)	>		
Seasonal auto temp	>		
Data logging	>		



Data logging					Back
Date	Time	Oper.	Settemp	In/Out	
1970.01.01	00:10	Off	—	24° / 25°	
1970.01.01	00:09	Off	—	24° / 25°	
1970.01.01	00:09	Off	—	24° / 25°	
1970.01.01	00:09	Off	—	24° / 25°	
1970.01.01	00:09	Off	—	24° / 25°	

NOTE

Error history lookup range: 50

Error history information

Item: date, time, mode (including Off), set temperature, incoming temperature, outgoing temperature, room temperature, Hot water operation / stop, Hot water set temperature, Hot water temperature, Outdoor unit On / Off, Error code

Number of Display: Within 50

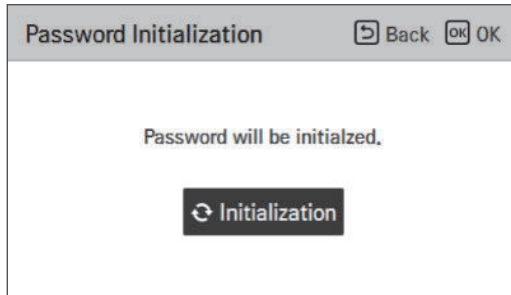
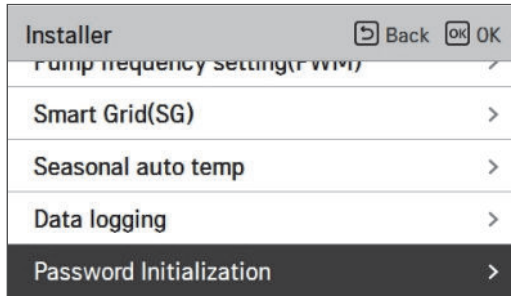
- Save criteria ▽

▽ Error occurred, released ON / OFF of outdoor unit operation.

Password Initialization

It is the function to initialize (0000) when you forgot the password set in the remote controller.

- In the installer setting list, select the password initialization setting category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.
- When you press "initialization" button, a popup screen appears, and when you press "check" button, password initialization starts, and the user password is changed to 0000.



INSTALLER SETTING (For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit)

- You can set the product user functions.
- Some functions may not be displayed/operated in some product types.

Segmentation	Functions	Description
Configuration	Select Temperature Sensor	Selection for setting temperature as air temperature or leaving water temperature or air + leaving water temperature
	Use Heating Tank Heater	Set up to control booster heater
	Mixing Circuit	This function is to use mixing circuit function. Set enable/disable mixing circuit function and valve closing time and hysteresis.
	Use External Pump	Set up to control an external water pump
	RMC master/slave	Function to use 2 remote control environment
	LG Therma V Configuration	Function to save the environment settings of the product for use in LG Therma V Configurator through SD Card.
General settings	Forced operation	Water pump off After 20 consecutive hours, disable / enable the logic that drives the water pump by itself
	Pump Prerun/Overrun	Set to reach the optimum flow rate by circulating the heating water with the water pump before heat exchange. After the operation stop, additional water pump is activated to circulate the heating water.
	Water Flow Control	Set water pump to control the water flow
	Energy Monitoring	Set up to use energy monitoring function of unit
	Password Reset	It is the function to initialize (0000) the password when you forgot the password set in the remote controller.
Room Heating	Heating temp. setting	At the water control in heating mode, the control reference water temperature position setting
	Air heating set temp.	Adjusting range of 'Setting Air Temperature' in heating mode
	Water heating set temp.	Adjusting range of 'Setting Heating Flow Temperature' in heating mode
	Hysteresis Heating Water	Heating Water Outlet Temperature Hysteresis range setting
	Hysteresis Room Air (Heating)	Heating air temperature Hysteresis range setting
	Pump setting in heating	Set water pump on/off interval option during thermo off condition in heating mode
	Heater on temperature	Setting outdoor air temperature where half capacity of backup heater starts operation.
	Screed drying	This function controls floor heating to a specific temperature for a certain period of time to cure floor cement

Segmentation	Functions	Description
Room Cooling	Cooling temp. setting	At the water control in cooling mode, the control reference water temperature position setting
	Air cooling set temp.	Adjusting range of 'Setting Air Temperature' in cooling mode
	Water cooling set temp.	Adjusting range of 'Setting Leaving Water Temperature' in cooling mode
	Water supply off temp. during cooling	Determine the leaving water temperature which blocks the flow into underfloor coil in cooling mode. This function is used for preventing condensation on the floor in cooling mode
	Hysteresis Cooling Water	Cooling Water Outlet Temperature Hysteresis range setting
	Hysteresis Room Air (Cooling)	Cooling air temperature Hysteresis range setting
	Pump setting in cooling	Set water pump on/off interval option during thermo off condition in cooling mode
Auto mode	Seasonal auto temp	Set the operating temperature in Seasonal Auto mode
Domestic hot water	DHW set temp.	Setting DHW set temperature
	Tank disinfection setting 1	Setting start/maintain time for disinfection
	Tank disinfection setting 2	Setting disinfection temperature
	Tank setting 1	Setting minimum and maximum temperature using heat pump cycle for DHW heating
	Tank setting 2	Setting temperature hysteresis and heating priority (DHW heating or floor heating)
	Heater priority	Determine usage of backup heater and booster heater
	DHW time setting	Determine follow time duration : operation time of domestic hot water tank heating, stop time of domestic hot water tank heating, and delay time of DHW tank heater operating
	Recirculation time	Whether to use the recirculation function and set the water pump on/off interval option
Solar thermal	Solar Thermal System	Function to set operation reference value in Solar Thermal System.
Service	Pump test run	Water pump test run
	Frost Protection Temp.	This function is to apply an offset to the freezing temperature of the freeze protection logic when using antifreeze mode

Segmentation	Functions	Description
Connectivity	Dry Contact Mode	Dry contact function is the function that can be used only when the dry contact devices is separately purchased and installed.
	Central Control Address	When connecting the central control, set the central control address of the unit.
	CN_CC	It is the function to set whether to install (use) Dry Contact. (It is not a function for Dry Contact installation, but it is a function to set the usage of the unit's CN_CC port.)
	CN_EXT	Function to set external input and output control according to DI / DO set by customer using dry contact port of indoor unit. Determine the use of the contact port (CN_EXT) mounted on the indoor unit PCB
	3rd Party Boiler	Configuration to control 3rd party boiler
	Meter Interface	When installing the meter interface to measure energy / calorie in the product, set unit spec for each port
	Energy state	Select whether to use or not use the SG Mode function of the product, set the operation option value in SG1 step.
	Thermostat control type	Setting Thermostat control type
	Modbus Address	It is function to set the address of the Modbus device that is externally linked to the product. Modbus address setting function is available from indoor unit.
Info	Pump operation time	Display water pump's operation time
	IDU operation time	Display Indoor Unit's operation time
	Current Flow Rate	Function to check the current flow rate.
	Data logging	Display error and operation history of connected unit

Select Temperature Sensor

The product can be operated according to air temperature or water temperature. The selection for setting temperature as air temperature or water temperature is determined.

- In the installer setting list, Select Temperature Sensor category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.

The screenshot shows a menu titled 'Configuration' with a 'Back' button and an 'OK' button. The menu items are: 'Select Temperature Sensor' (highlighted with a right arrow), 'Use Heating Tank Heater' (with a right arrow), 'Mixing Circuit' (with a right arrow), and 'Use External Pump' (with '< Not use >' to its right).



The screenshot shows a screen titled 'Select Temperature Sensor' with 'Back' and 'OK' buttons. It has two sections: 'Control Standard' with a dropdown menu showing 'Water' (highlighted) and 'Sensor Location' with a button labeled 'Remote Control'.

Value	Default	Range
Control Standard	Water	Water / Air / Air + Water
Sensor Location	Remote Control	Remote Control / Indoor Unit

* When Water is selected, Sensor Location is disabled.

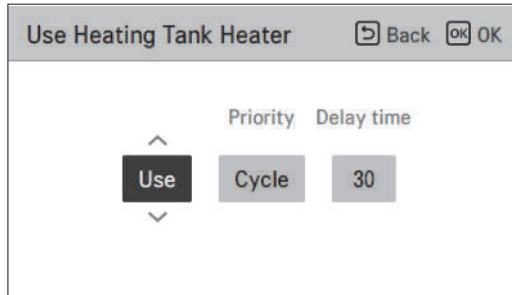
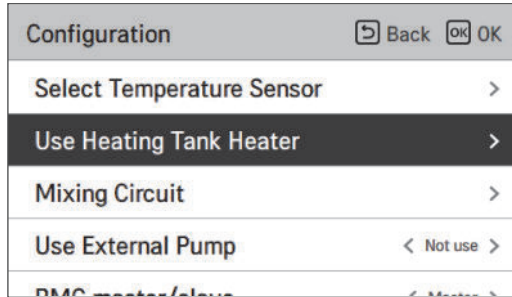
NOTE

- Set DIP switch No. 5 of option switch 2 to 'ON' in order to use remote temperature sensor.
- When the sensor location is set to Remote Control, the RS3 controller must be placed inside of suitable Reference room.

Use Heating Tank Heater

This is a function to change the set value for the operation of the hot water tank heater, such as heating tank heater use /not use and heater delay time.

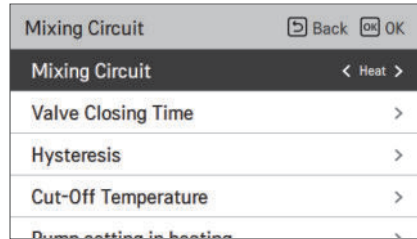
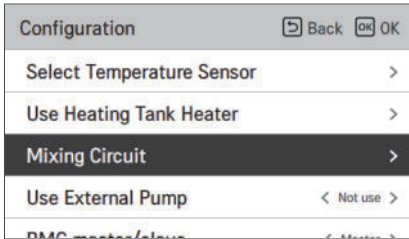
- In the installer setting list, Select Configuration category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.



Value	Default	Range
-	Use	Use / Not Use / Use disinfect
Priority	Cycle	Cycle / Heater/Cycle
Delay time	30 min	10 / 20 / 30 / 40 / 50 / 60 / 90 / 120 / 1440 min

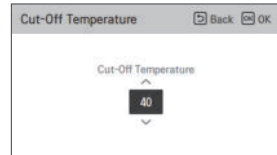
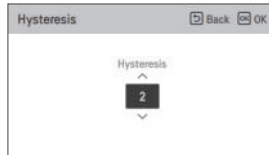
Mixing Circuit

Function to set whether or not to use an installed mixing circuit function using mixing kit.



Value	Default
Not Use / Heat / Cool	Not Use

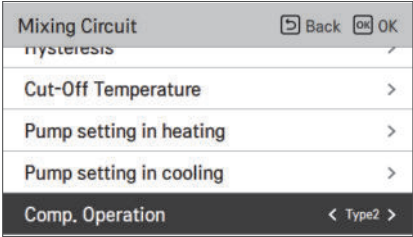
You can set valve closing time[s] and hysteresis temperature[°C] on screen by yourself. Setting the cut-off temperature protects the water from flowing over the cut-off temperature in the mixing circuit during heating operation.



Value	Default	Range
Valve Closing Time	240 s	60 ~ 999 s
Hysteresis	2 °C	1 ~ 3 °C
Cut-Off Temperature	40 °C	20 ~ 65 °C

You can set the operation of the outdoor unit when only the mixing circuit is operating and the direct circuit is not operating.

Type1	Type2(Default)
Outdoor Operation	Outdoor Not Operation



Value	Default
Type 1 / Type 2	Type 2



CAUTION

Set Type 1 only at the installation site with a small load or no buffer tank.
When setting Type 1 in a site with a large load or a site with a buffer tank, overheating may occur in the direct circuit.

Installer setting function to set water mixing pump operation / delay time option in heating/cooling mode

Pump setting in heating Back OK

Type On Off

Time setting 3 3

Pump setting in cooling Back OK

Type On Off

Continuous Operation 3 3

Value	Default	Range
Type	Time Setting	Time Setting / Continuous Operation
On	3 min	1 ~ 60 min
Off	3 min	1 ~ 60 min

* When Continuous Operation is selected, On, Off is disabled.

Activating this function, It allows 2 circuits (Circuit 1, Circuit 2) temperature to be controlled, separately.

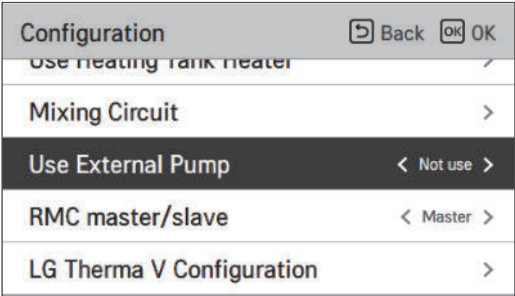
NOTE

When using the Mixing Circuit function, the external pump setting must be changed to 'Circuit 1'.

Use External Pump

This function can be set to control the external water pump.

- In the installer setting list, select Use External Pump category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.
- Heating/Cooling
You can use this feature when you have installed a 3 Way valve to switch the water flow between the underfloor and the water tank. The external pump operates only in the direction of water flow in the underfloor.
- Circuit1
This function controls the external pump when operating the mixing circuit.
The external pump should be controlled according to Th/on and Th/off in Circuit1(Direct circuit).
Therefore, when using the mixing circuit, be sure to set the external pump to 'Circuit1'.



Value			
Not use (Default)	Use	Heat & Cool	Circuit1

RMC master/slave

This function can be select Master/Slave on remote controller to use 2 Remote Control environment

- In the Installer setting list, and select RMC master/slave setting category, and press [<,>(left/right)] button to following setting values.

Configuration

Back

OK

Use Heating Tank Heater

>

Mixing Circuit

>

Use External Pump

< Not use >

RMC master/slave

< Master >

LG Therma V Configuration

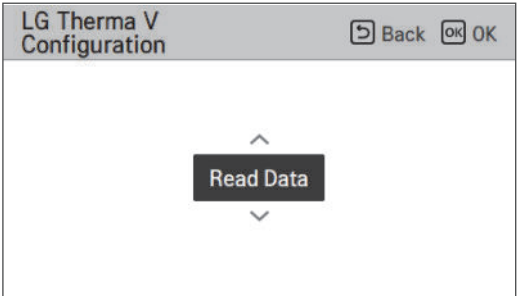
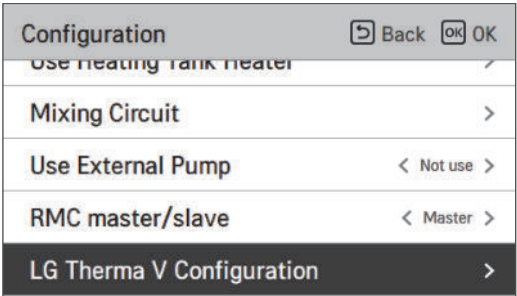
>

Value	
Master (Default)	Slave

LG Therma V Configuration

This function can be set to save the environment settings of the product for use in LG Therma V Configurator through SD Card.

- In the Installer setting list, and select LG Therma V Configuration setting category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.



Value	
Read Data (Default)	Save Data

NOTE

When saving the environment setting of the product in the SD card, be sure to save the file name as 'RS3_AWHP_DATA'.

Forced operation

- If the product is not used for a long time, the pump will be forced to operate to prevent pump failure and PHEX freezing
- Water pump off After 20 consecutive hours, disable / enable the logic that drives the water pump by itself
- In the installer setting list, select Forced operation category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen



Value	Default	Range
-	Use	Use / Not Use
Oper. Cycle	20 hours	20 ~ 180 hours
Oper. Time	10 min	1 ~ 60 min

Pump Prerun/Overrun

Pump Prerun operates to ensure sufficient flow before the compressor is operated. This is a function that allows heat exchange to work smoothly.

Pump Overrun removes latent heat from the PHEX by circulating the water flow when the comp is stopped

General

Back

OK

Forced operation

>

Pump Prerun/Overrun

>

Water Flow Control

>

Password Reset

>



Pump Prerun/Overrun

Back

OK

Prerun

Overrun

>

>

1

1

<

<

Value	Default	Range
Prerun	1 min	1~10 min
Overrun	1 min	1~10 min

Water Flow Control

This function controls the water flow by controlling the water pump. Select the way to control the water pump and set the target value

- In the installer setting list, select Configuration category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.

- Optimal Flow Rate

The water pump is automatically controlled at the optimum flow rate required according to the desired temperature of the Main screen.

- Pump Capacity

It operates with the capacity set for the water pump.

- Fixed Flow Rate

The water pump is automatically controlled to maintain the set flow rate.

- Fixed ΔT

Set the target ΔT (* ΔT = temperature difference between inlet and outlet water temperature)

The water pump is automatically controlled to maintain the set ΔT .

General		Back	OK
Forced operation	>		
Pump Prerun/Overrun	>		
Water Flow Control	>		
Password Reset	>		



Water Flow Control		Back	OK
Control Method	< Optimal Flow Rate >		
Pump Capacity	>		
Fixed Flow Rate	>		
Fixed ΔT	>		

Pump Capacity		Back	OK
%			
100			

Fixed Flow Rate		Back	OK
Heat	Cool	DHW	
46	46	46	

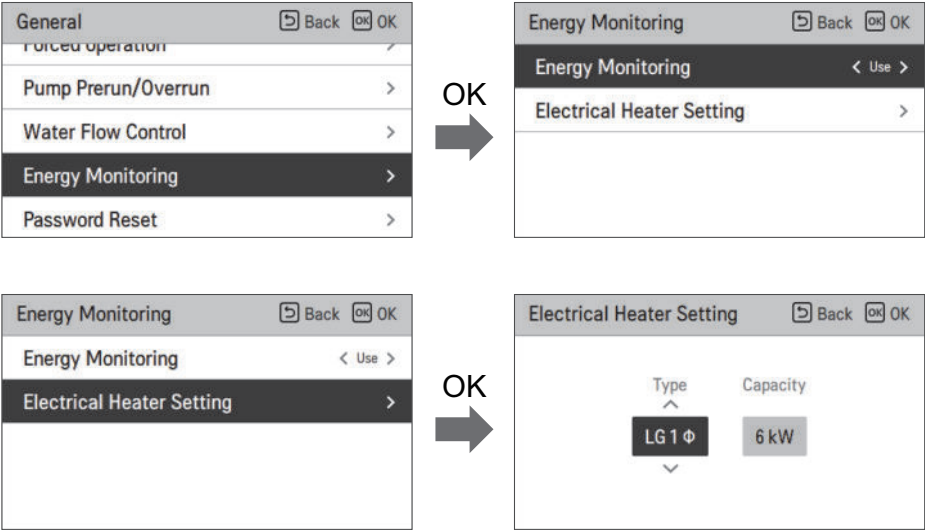
Fixed ΔT		Back	OK
Heat	Cool	DHW	
5	5	5	

Flow Control Method			
Optimal Flow Rate (Default)	Pump Capacity	Fixed Flow Rate	Fixed ΔT

Energy Monitoring (For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit 2-Pipe)

This function can be set to use energy monitoring function of unit.

- Change setting values using [<,>(left/right)] button.

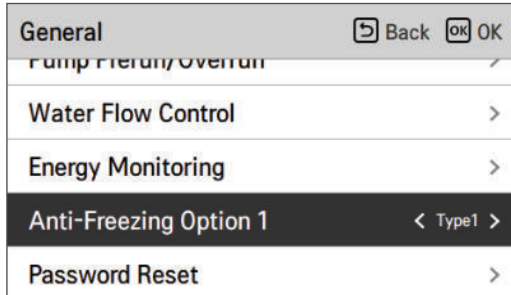


Value		Default	Range
Energy Monitoring		Use	Use/Not Use
Electric Heater Setting	Type	LG 1Ø	LG 1Ø / LG 3Ø / EXTERNAL
	Heater Capacity	6 kW	1 kW ~ 10 kW

Anti-Freezing Option 1 (For Split R32 Indoor unit 5 Series, For Split R410A unit 4 Series, For Hydrosplit 1-Pipe, For Hydrosplit 2-pipe)

This function is to select whether to use Type1 or Type2 to prevent freezing when the remote control is turned off.

- Change setting values using [**<**,**>**(left/right)] button.



Value	
Type1(Default)	Type2

CAUTION

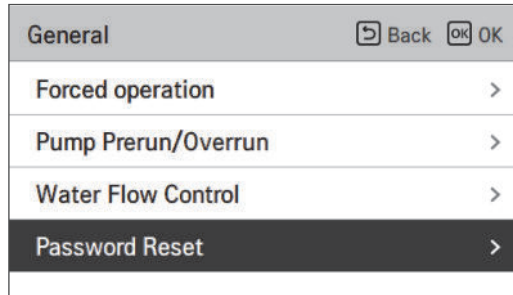
If the function is set to Type2, there is a risk of freezing.

Function	Detection	Case	Operation
Type1	Type2 + Inlet Water Temp.	Air Temp. < Certain Level and Inlet Water Temp. < Certain Level	Pump always ON
		Air Temp. < Certain Level and Inlet Water Temp. > Certain Level	Pump intermittently On
		Air Temp. > Certain Level and Inlet Water Temp. > Certain Level	Pump always OFF
Type2	Air Temp.	Air Temp. < Certain Level	Pump intermittently On
		Air Temp. > Certain Level	Pump always OFF

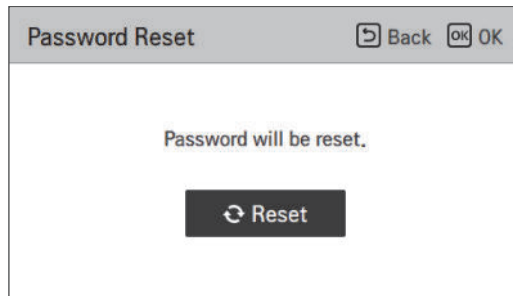
Password Reset

It is the function to initialize (0000) when you forgot the password set in the remote controller.

- In the installer setting list, select the password Reset setting category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.
- When you press “Reset” button, a popup screen appears, and when you press “check” button, password initialization starts, and the user password is changed to 0000.



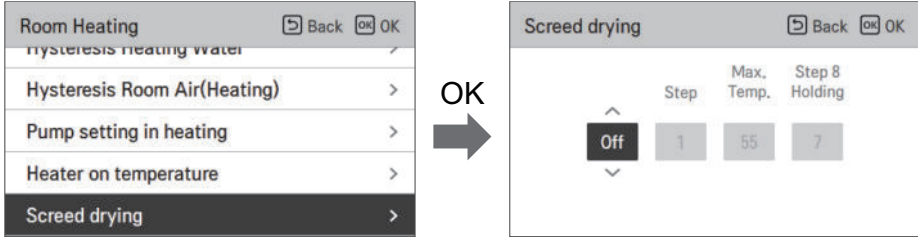
OK



Screed drying

This function is a unique feature of AWHP that, when AWHP is installed in a new concrete structure, controls the specific temperature floor heating out temperature for a certain period of time to cure the floor cement.

- In the installer setting list, select Screed drying category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.



How to display

Main Screen - Displays 'Screed drying' on the desired temperature display. The step in progress at the bottom of the display is displayed.

Setting value

- Start-up step: 1 ~ 11
- Maximum temperature : 35 °C ~ 55 °C (Default : 55 °C)
- Step 8 Holding time : 1 days ~ 30 days (Default : 7 days)

Function operation

- It is performed by the following procedure from the selected starting step.
- After all steps are completed, turn off the cement curing operation.

Value	Step										
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
LWT	25 °C	Max. T	Off	25 °C	35 °C	45 °C	Max. T	Max. T	45 °C	35 °C	25 °C
Duration	72 h	96 h	72 h	24 h	24 h	24h	24 h	Holding time	72 h	72 h	72 h

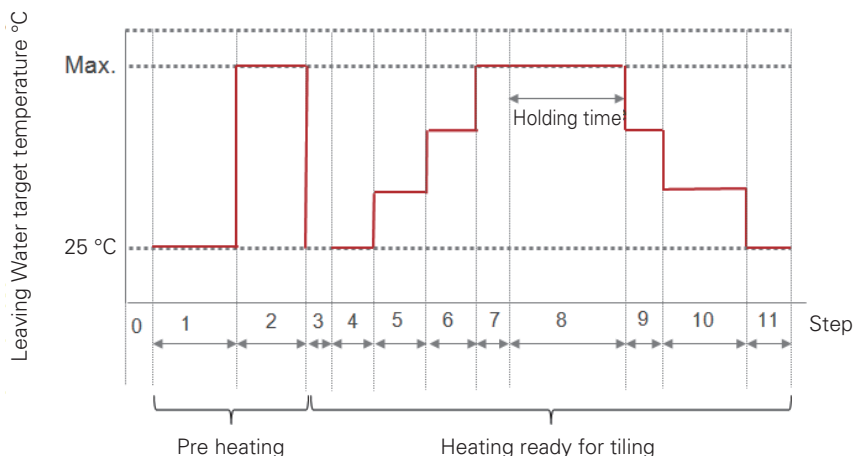
* LWT: Leaving Water Target Temp.

* Holding time range : 1 ~ 30 day(default: 7 day)

- ※ If the upper limit setting value of the heating LW temperature is 55 °C or lower, it is set to 55 °C forcibly.
If the lower limit setting value of the heating LW temperature is 25 °C or higher, it is set to 25 °C forcibly.

NOTE

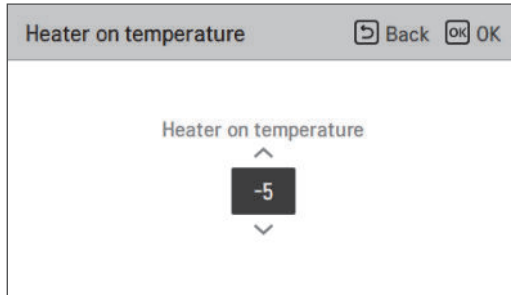
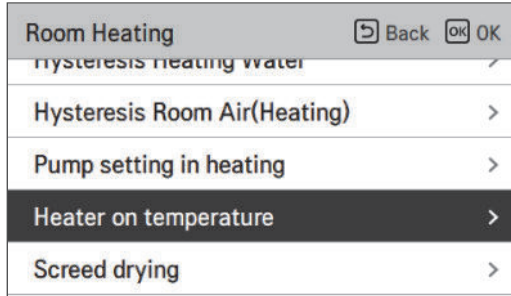
- During Screed drying operation, button input except for installer function and temperature display is restricted.
- When the power is applied again after a power outage during product operation, the product operation state before power failure is remembered and the product is automatically operated.
- Screed drying operation stops when an error occurs / When error is cleared, restart cement Screed drying. (However, if the wired remote control is reset to the error occurrence state, it is compensated in the unit of one day)
- Upon releasing after an error, Screed drying operation may take up to 1 minute of waiting time after boot up. (The Screed drying operation status is judged as 1 minute cycle.)
- During Screed drying operation, installer function Screed drying operation is selectable.
- During Screed drying operation, starting operation, low noise mode off, low noise time setting off, hot water off, solar heat off.
- During Screed drying operation, simple, sleep, on, off, weekly, holiday, heater does not execute reservation operation.



Heater on temperature

Depending on local climatic conditions, it is necessary to change the temperature condition in which backup heater turns on / off.

- In the installer setting list, Heater on temperature category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.



Value	Default	Range
Heater on temperature	-5 °C	-25 ~ 18 °C

NOTE**Heater on temperature**

- Using Half capacity of backup heater (For Split Indoor unit 5 Series)

When DIP Switch No. 6 and 7 is set as 'ON-OFF' :

Example : If Heater on temperature is set as '-1' and DIP switch No 6. and 7 is set as 'ON-OFF', then half capacity of electric heater will start operation when outdoor air temperature is below -1 °C and current leaving water temperature or room air temperature is much below than target leaving water temperature or target room air temperature.

- Using Full capacity of backup heater

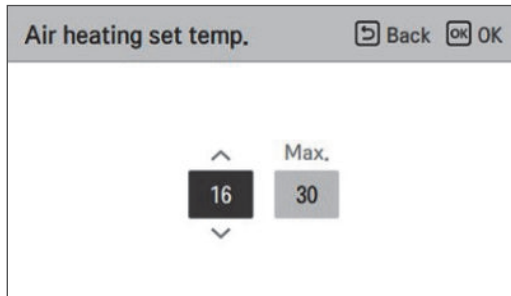
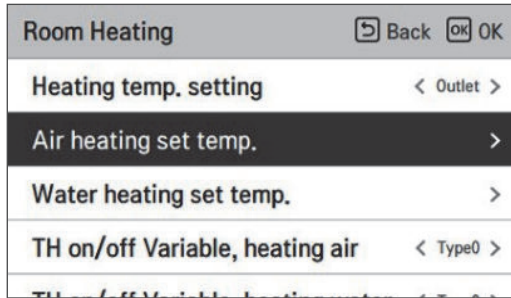
When DIP Switch No. 6 and 7 is set as 'ON-ON' :

Example : If Heater on temperature is set as '-1' and DIP switch No 6. and 7 is set as 'ON-ON', then full capacity of electric heater will start operation when outdoor air temperature is below -1 °C and current leaving water temperature or room air temperature is much below than target leaving water temperature or target room air temperature.

Air heating set temp.

Determine heating setting temperature range when air temperature is selected as setting temperature

- In the installer setting list, select Air heating set temp. category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.



Value	Default	Range
Min.	16 °C	16 ~ 22 °C
Max	30 °C	24 ~ 30 °C

NOTE

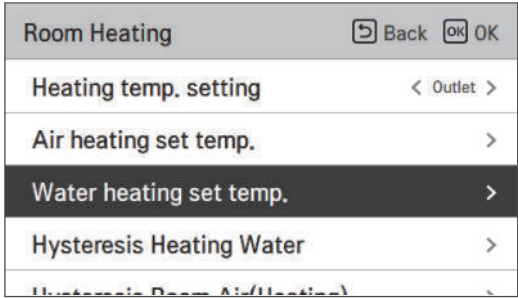
It is possible to control the unit based on room air temperature by using either remote air temperature sensor or wired remote controller (RS3).

- Remote room air sensor is an accessory (PQRSTA0) and sold separately.
- DIP switch setting (No. 5 of Indoor unit Option Switch 2) and installer setting(Select Temperature Sensor) should be set properly in order to use remote room air temperature sensor (PQRSTA0).

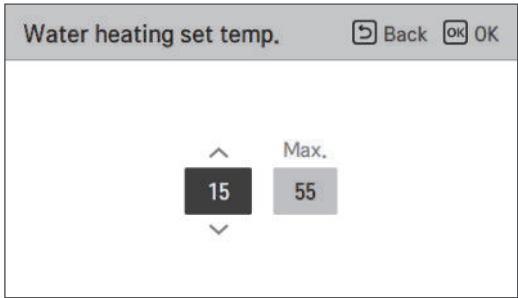
Water heating set temp.

Determine heating setting temperature range when water temperature is selected as setting temperature.

- In the installer setting list, select Water heating set temp. category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.



OK



Value	Default	Range
Min.	15 °C	15 ~ 34 °C
Max	55 °C	35 ~ 65 °C

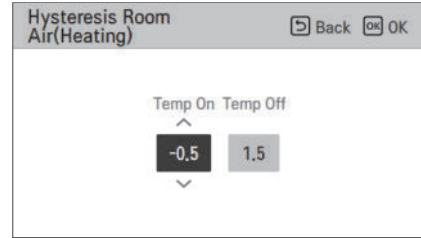
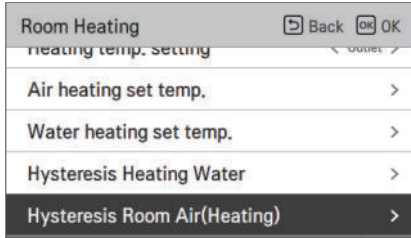
NOTE

- When the backup heater is not used, the minimum temperature of the water temperature can be set in the range of 34°C to 20°C. (Default : 20 °C)

Hysteresis Room Air(Heating)

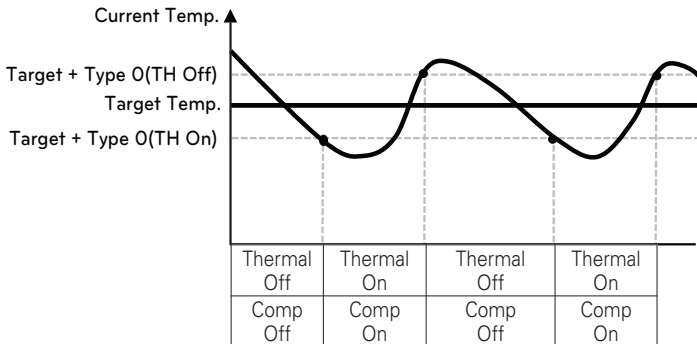
It is a function to adjust the heating air temperature Thermal On / Off temperature according to the field environment in order to offer optimized heating operation.

- In the Installer setting list, and select Hysteresis Room Air(Heating) category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.



Value	Default	Range
Temp On	-0.5 °C	-3 ~ 0 °C
Temp Off	1.5 °C	0 ~ 4 °C

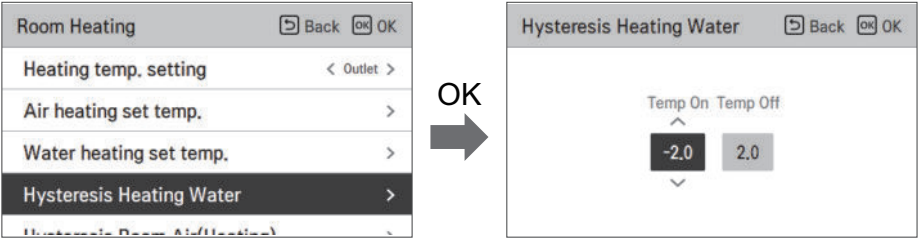
- Example : Type0 setting



Hysteresis Heating Water

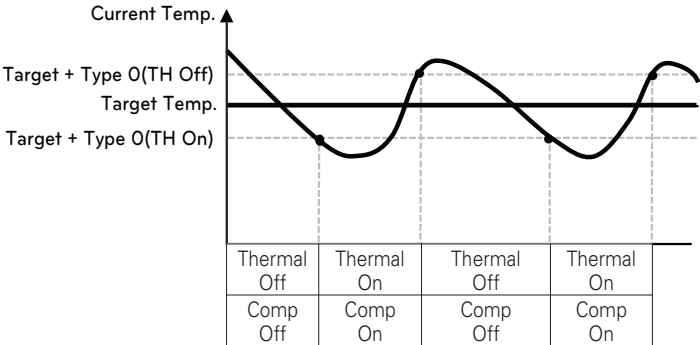
It is a function to adjust the heating water temperature Thermal On / Off temperature according to the field environment in order to offer optimized DHW heating operation.

- In the Installer setting list, and select Hysteresis Heating Water category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.



Value	Default	Range
Temp On	-2 °C	-9 ~ 0 °C
Temp Off	2 °C	0 ~ 4 °C

- Example : Type0 setting



Heating temp. setting

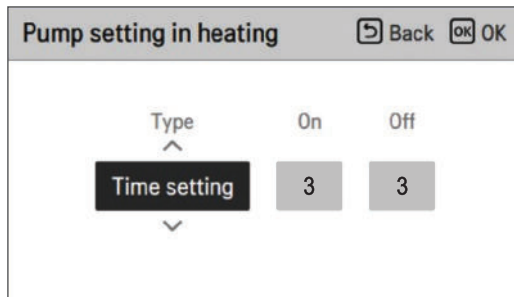
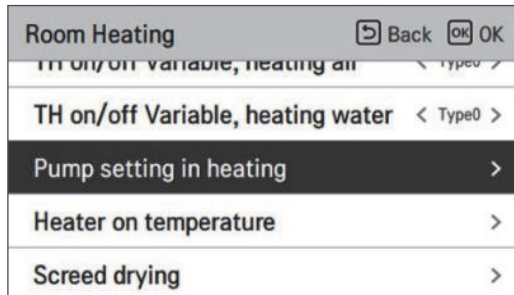
- At the water control in heating mode, the control reference water temperature position setting
 - If the air / leaving water temperature selection setting is set to leaving water temperature
- Change setting values using [<, > (left/right)] button
- The function is not available for some products.

Room Heating		Back	OK
Heating temp. setting		< Outlet >	
Air heating set temp.		>	
Water heating set temp.		>	
Hysteresis Heating Water		>	
Hysteresis Room Air/Heating		>	

Value	
Outlet (Default)	Inlet

Pump setting in heating

- It is a function to help the water pump's mechanical life by putting the water pump's rest time
- Installer setting function to set water pump on/off interval option during thermo off condition in heating mode.
- In the installer setting list, select Pump setting in heating category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.



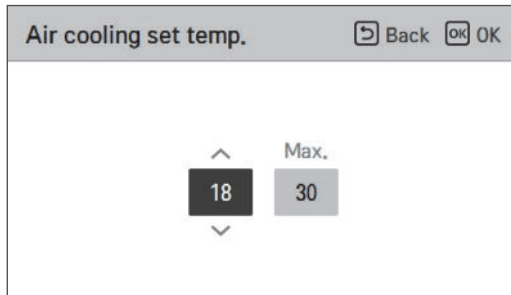
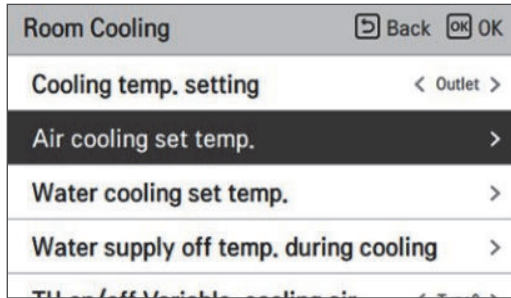
Value	Default	Range
Type	Time setting	Time setting / Continuous Operation
On	3 min	1 ~ 60 min
Off	3 min	1 ~ 60 min

* When Continuous Operation is selected, On, Off is disabled.

Air cooling set temp.

Determine cooling setting temperature range when air temperature is selected as setting temperature.

- In the installer setting list, select Air cooling set temp category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.



Value	Default	Range
Min.	18 °C	16 ~ 22 °C
Max.	30 °C	24 ~ 30 °C

NOTE

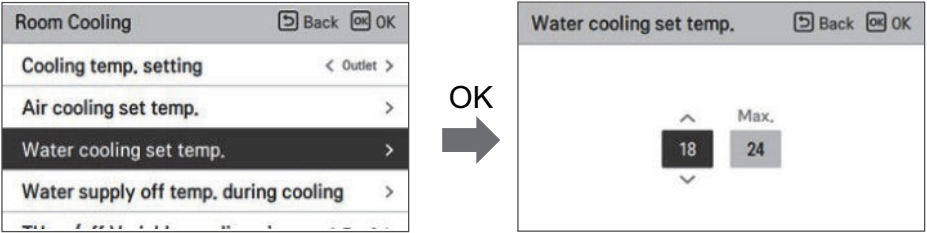
It is possible to control the unit based on room air temperature by using either remote air temperature sensor or wired remote controller (RS3).

- Remote room air sensor is an accessory (PQRSTA0) and sold separately.
- DIP switch setting (No. 5 of Indoor unit Option Switch 2) and installer setting (Select Temperature Sensor) should be set properly in order to use remote room air temperature sensor (PQRSTA0).

Water cooling set temp.

Determine cooling setting temperature range when water temperature is selected as setting temperature.

- In the installer setting list, select water cooling set temp category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.



Value	Default	Range	Cooling temp. setting	
Min.	18 °C	5 ~ 20 °C	Outlet	FCU use
		16 ~ 20 °C		FCU not used
		10 ~ 20 °C	Inlet	FCU use
	20 °C	20 °C		FCU not used
Max.	24 °C	22 ~ 27 °C	All	

NOTE

Water condensation on the floor

- While cooling operation, it is very important to keep leaving water temperature higher than 16 °C. Otherwise, dew condensation can be occurred on the floor.
- If floor is in humid environment, do not set leaving water temperature below 18 °C.

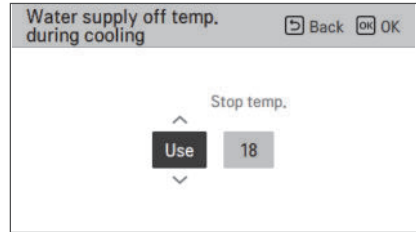
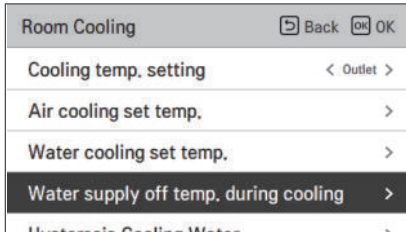
Water condensation on the radiator

- While cooling operation, cold water may not flow to the radiator. If cold water enters to the radiator, dew generation on the surface of the radiator can be occurred.

Water supply off temp. during cooling

Determine the leaving water temperature which blocks the flow into underfloor coil in cooling mode. This function is used for preventing condensation on the floor in cooling mode

- In the installer setting list, select Water supply off temp. during cooling category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.



Value	Default	Range
-	Use	Use / Not Use
Stop temp.	18 °C	16 ~ 25 °C

- Stop temp. : cut-off temp. Stop temp. is valid when FCU is set as 'Use'.
- FCU : determines if FCU is installed or not.
- Example : If FCU is set as 'Use', Stop temp. setting is disabled. However, if actually FCU is NOT installed in the water loop, the unit operates continuously in cooling mode until water temperature meets desired temperature. In this case, a condensed water may form on the floor caused by cold water in the underfloor coil.
- Example : If Stop temp. is set as '20' and FCU is set as 'Not use' and actually FCU is installed in the water loop, then the Stop temp. is used and the unit stops operation in cooling mode when the leaving water temperature is below 20 °C. As a result, the unit may not offer enough cooling since the cold water with desired temperature doesn't flow into the FCU.

⚠ CAUTION

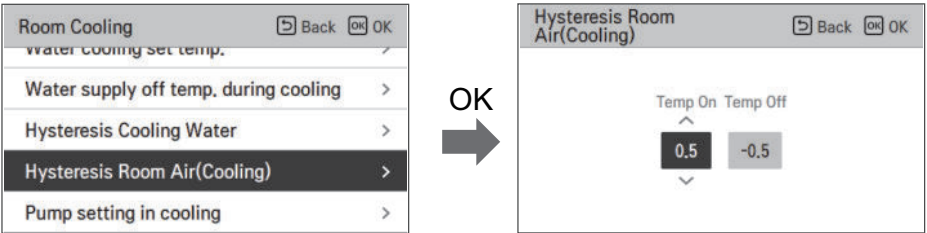
FCU Installation

- If FCU is used, related 2way valve should be installed and connected to the unit PCB.
- If FCU is set as 'Use' whereas FCU or 2way valve is NOT installed, the unit can do abnormal operation.

Hysteresis Room Air(Cooling)

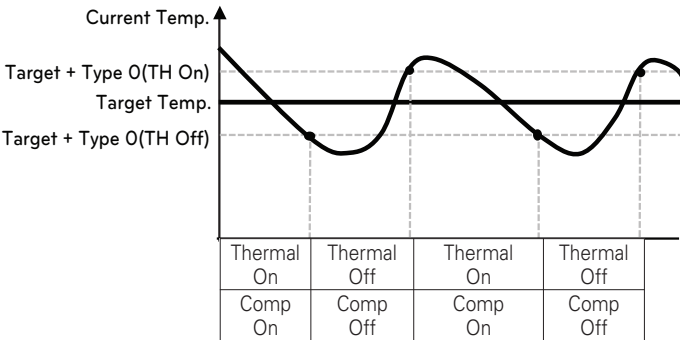
It is a function to adjust the cooling air temperature Thermal On / Off temperature according to the field environment in order to offer optimized cooling operation.

- In the Installer setting list, and select Hysteresis Room Air(Cooling) setting category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.



Value	Default	Range
Temp On	0.5 °C	0 ~ 3 °C
Temp Off	-0.5 °C	-3 ~ 0 °C

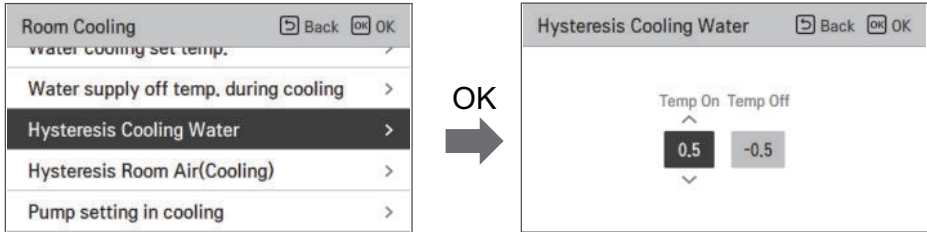
- Example : Type0 setting



Hysteresis Cooling Water

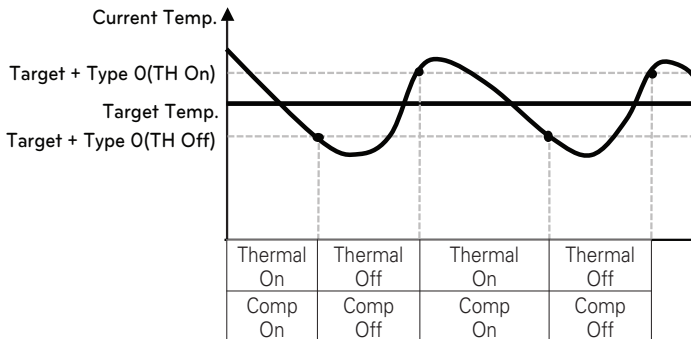
It is a function to adjust the cooling water temperature Thermal On / Off temperature according to the field environment in order to offer optimized cooling operation.

- In the Installer setting list, and select Hysteresis Cooling Water setting category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.



Value	Default	Range
Temp On	0.5 °C	0 ~ 3 °C
Temp Off	-0.5 °C	-3 ~ 0 °C

- Example : Type0 setting



Cooling temp. setting

- At the water control in cooling mode, the control reference water temperature position setting
 - If the air / leaving water temperature selection setting is set to leaving water temperature
- Change setting values using [<,>(left/right)] button.
- The function is not available for some products.

Room Cooling

Back

OK

Cooling temp. setting

< Outlet >

Air cooling set temp.

>

Water cooling set temp.

>

Water supply off temp. during cooling

>

Underpin Cooling Water

>

Value	
Outlet (Default)	Inlet

Pump setting in cooling

- It is a function to help the water pump's mechanical life by putting the water pump's rest time
- Installer setting function to set water pump on/off interval option during thermo off condition in cooling mode.
- In the installer setting list, select Pump setting in cooling category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.



Value	Default	Range
Type	Time setting	Time setting / Continuous Operation
On	3 min	1 ~ 60 min
Off	3 min	1 ~ 60 min

* When Continuous Operation is selected, On, Off is disabled.

Seasonal auto temp.

It is the function to set the operation reference value in Seasonal Auto mode.

- In the installer setting list, select Seasonal auto temp category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.

Auto Mode Back OK

Seasonal auto temp >

OK

Seasonal auto temp Back OK

Mode < Heat & Cool >

Outdoor Temp. >

Target Temp. >

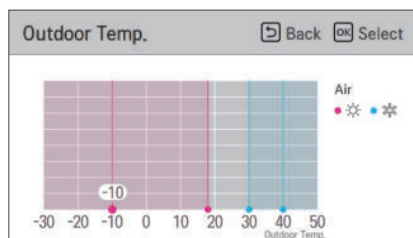
Seasonal auto temp Back OK

Mode < Heat & Cool >

Outdoor Temp. >

Target Temp. >

OK



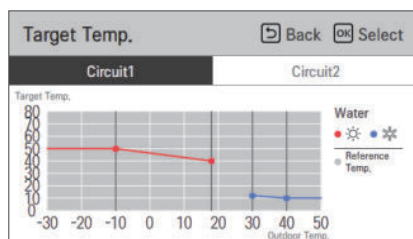
Seasonal auto temp Back OK

Mode < Heat & Cool >

Outdoor Temp. >

Target Temp. >

OK



Function	Description	Range	Default (Circuit1)	Default (Circuit2)	Boundary
Outdoor1,Heat (Out1)	Heating lower ambient temp	-25 ~ 35 °C	-10 °C		Out1 ≤ Out2-1
Outdoor2,Heat (Out2)	Heating higher ambient temp		18 °C		Out2 ≥ Out1 +1 Out2 ≤ Out3 -5
Outdoor3,Cool (Out3)	Cooling lower ambient temp	10 ~ 46 °C	30 °C		Out3 ≥ Out2 +5 Out3 ≤ Out4 -1
Outdoor4,Cool (Out4)	Cooling higher ambient temp		40 °C		Out4 ≥ Out3 +1
Water1,Heat (LW1)	Heating higher water temp	Use heater : LW STD : 15~65 °C EW STD : 15~55 °C Not use heater : LW STD : 20~65 °C EW STD : 20~55 °C	50 °C	35 °C	LW1 ≥ LW2
Water 2,Heat (LW2)	Heating lower water temp		40 °C	28 °C	LW1 ≥ LW2
Water3,Cool (LW3)	Cooling higher water temp	Use FCU & 5 °C IDU : LW STD : 5~27 °C EW STD : 10~27 °C Use FCU & 6 °C IDU : LW STD : 6~27 °C EW STD : 11~27 °C Not use FCU : LW STD : 16~27 °C EW STD : 20~27 °C	12 °C	18 °C	LW3 ≥ LW4
Water4,Cool (LW4)	Cooling lower water temp		10 °C	16 °C	LW3 ≥ LW4
Air 1, Heat (RA1)	Heating higher air temp	16 ~ 30 °C	21 °C		RA1 ≥ RA2
Air 2, Heat (RA2)	Heating lower air temp		19 °C		RA1 ≥ RA2
Air 3, Cool (RA3)	Cooling higher air temp	18 ~ 30 °C	21 °C		RA3 ≥ RA4
Air 4, Cool (RA4)	Cooling lower air temp		19 °C		RA3 ≥ RA4

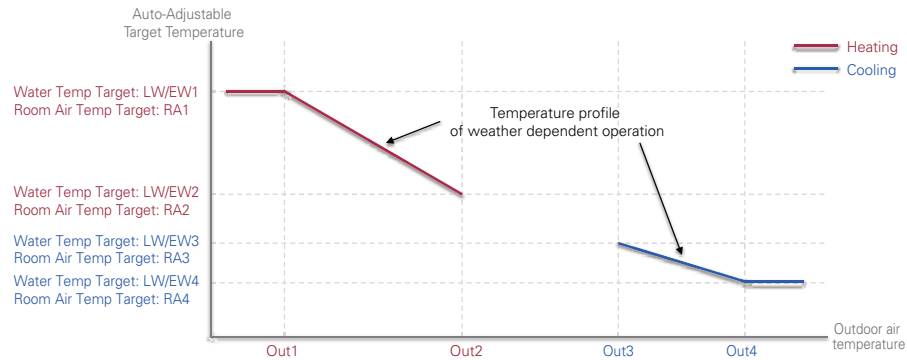
- Setting range: Celsius

- Seasonal Auto Driving mode: Heating, Heating & Cooling

* If heating mode is selected, heating & cooling or cooling can not be selected.

- Depending on the air / outflow control selection value, the water / air related setting value is displayed on the screen.

In this mode, setting temperature will follow outdoor temperature automatically. This mode adds the cooling season function to the conventional weather dependent operation mode.

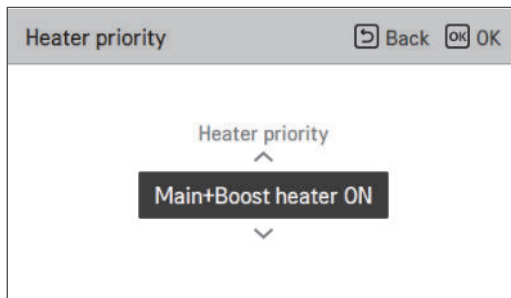
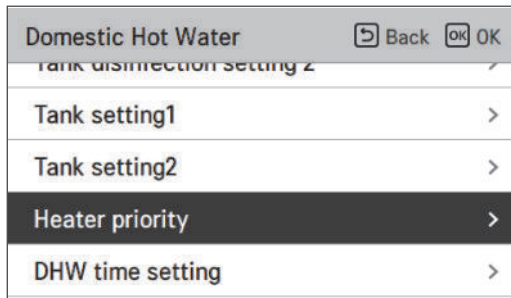


NOTE

DHW mode can be operated independently of seasonal auto temp mode.

Heater priority

- Heater priority: It is decided whether to use the boost heater for DHW operation and the backup heater for floor heating at the same time by condition.
- Example: If the heater priority is set to 'Main+Boost heater ON', the backup heater and boost heater are turned on/off according to the control logic. (It can be turned on at the same time)
If Heater Priority is set to 'Boost heater only ON', the backup heater does not operate when the boost heater operates according to the control logic. (When the boost heater is not in operation, the backup heater operates according to the logic.)
- In the installer setting list, heater priority category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.

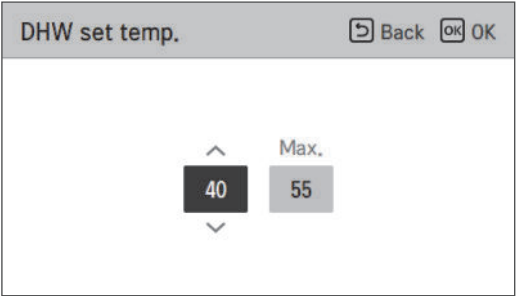
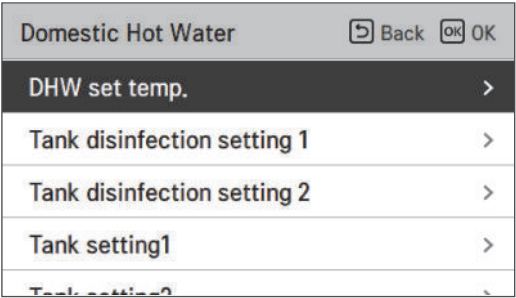


Value	
Boost heater only ON	Main+Boost heater ON (Default)

DHW set temp.

Determine heating setting temperature range when DHW temperature is selected as setting temperature

- In the installer setting list, select DHW set temp. category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.



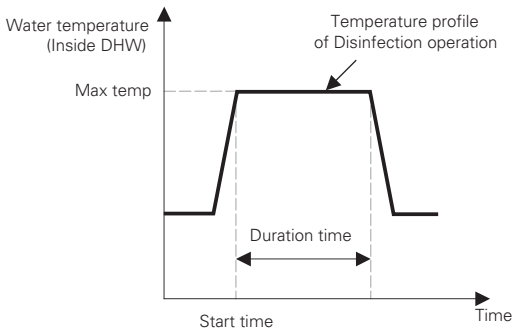
Value	Default	Range
Min.	40 °C	30 ~ 40 °C
Max.	55 °C	50 ~ 80 °C

NOTE

When DHW tank heater(booster heater) is in 'not used' status, Max. temperature will be limited.

Tank disinfection setting 1, 2

- Disinfection operation is special DHW tank operation mode to kill and to prevent growth of legionella inside the tank.
 - Disinfection active : Selecting enable or disable of disinfection operation.
 - Start date : Determining the date when the disinfection mode is running.
 - Start time : Determining the time when the disinfection mode is running.
 - Max temp. : Target temperature of disinfection mode.
 - Duration time : Duration of disinfection mode.



Domestic Hot Water		Back	OK
DHW set temp.	>		
Tank disinfection setting 1	>		
Tank disinfection setting 2	>		
Tank setting1	>		
Tank setting2	>		



Tank disinfection setting 1			Back	OK
Disinfection active	Start date	Start time		
Not use	Fri.	23		

Domestic Hot Water		Back	OK
DHW set temp.	>		
Tank disinfection setting 1	>		
Tank disinfection setting 2	>		
Tank setting1	>		
Tank setting2	>		



Tank disinfection setting 2			Back	OK
Max temp.	Duration time	Forced end time		
70	10	1		

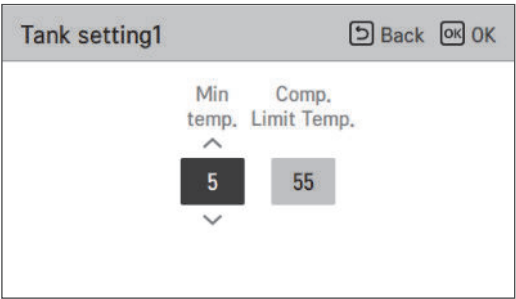
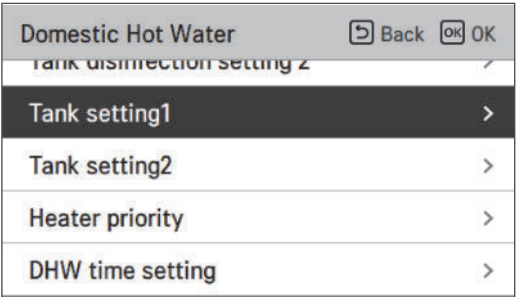
NOTE

DHW heating should be enable

- If Disinfection active is set as 'Not use', that is 'disable disinfection mode', Start date and Start time is not used.

Tank setting 1

- In the installer setting list, select tank setting 1 category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.



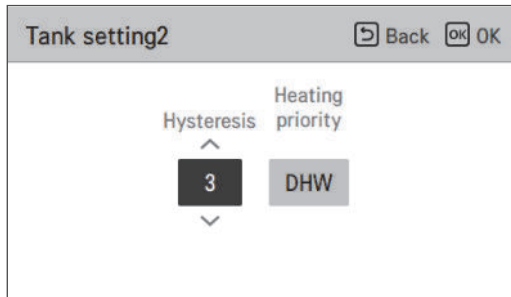
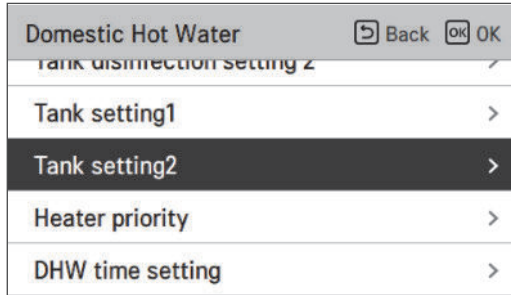
Value	Default	Range
Min. temp.	5 °C	1 ~ 30 °C
Comp. Limit Temp.	55 °C	40 ~ 58 °C

NOTE

"Max outdoor temp." means rising Max temp. by heat pump cycle.
Above this temp., only electric heater will be used.

Tank setting 2

- In the installer setting list, select tank setting 2 category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.

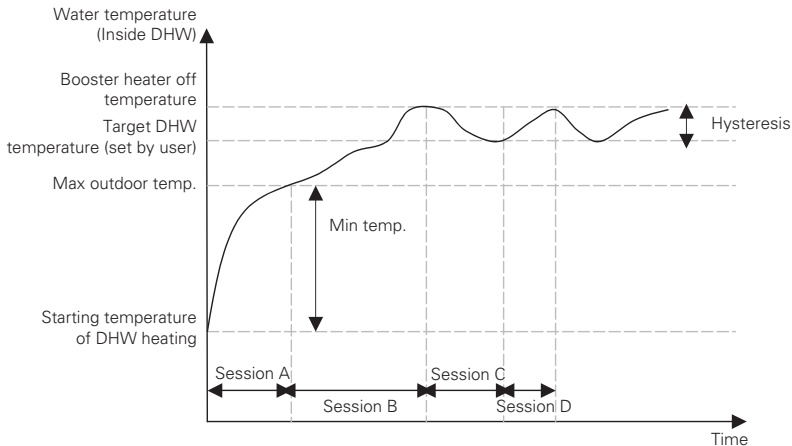


Value	Default	Range
Hysteresis	3 °C	2 ~ 4 °C
Heating priority	DHW	Floor heating / DHW

• Tank setting 1, 2

Descriptions for each parameters are as following.

- Min temp. : temperature gap from Max outdoor temp.
- Max outdoor temp. : maximum temperature generated by AWHP compressor cycle.
- Example : If Min temp. is set as '5' and Max outdoor temp. is set as '48', then Session A (see the graph) will be started when the water tank temperature is below 43 °C.... If temperature is above 48 °C..., then Session B will be started.
- Hysteresis : Temperature gap from target DHW temperature for booster heater operating. This value is required to prevent frequent On and Off of water tank heater. In the normal DHW operation, the value is set as '0' and Hysteresis is valid when heater delay time is active.
- Example : If user's target temperature is set as '70' and Hysteresis is set as '3', then the booster heater will be turned off when the water temperature is above 73 °C. The booster heater will be turned on when the water temperature is below 70 °C.
- Heating priority : Determining heating demand priority between DHW tank heating and under floor heating.
- Example : If Heating priority is set as 'DHW', that means heating priority is on DHW heating, DHW is heated by AWHP compressor cycle and booster heater. In this case the under floor can not be heated while DHW heating. On the other hand, if the Heating priority is set as 'Floor heating', that means heating priority is on under floor heating, DHW tank is ONLY heated by booster heater. In this case the under floor heating is not stopped while DHW is heated.



Session A : Heating by AWHP compressor cycle and booster heater
 Session B : Heating by booster heater
 Session C : No heating (booster heater is Off)
 Session D : Heating by booster heater

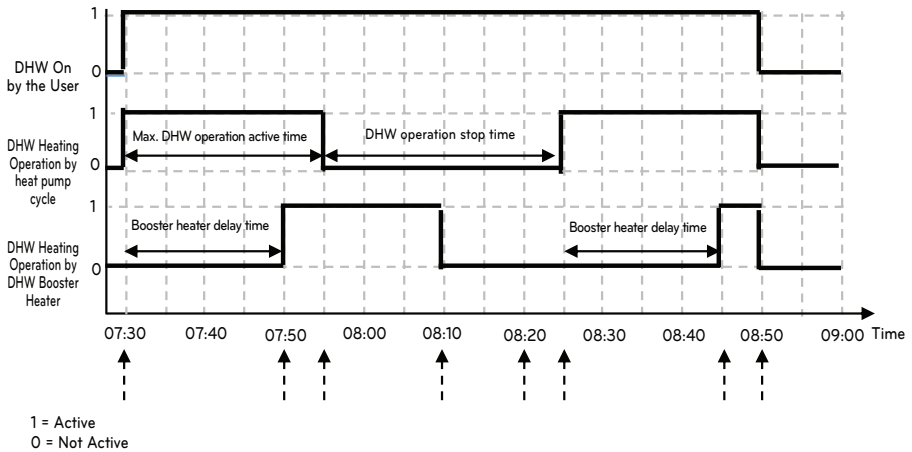
NOTE

DHW heating does not operate when it is disabled.

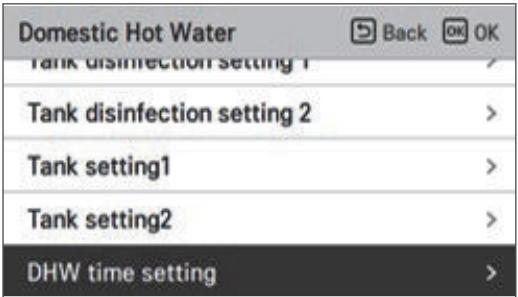
DHW time setting

Determine following time duration : operation time of DHW tank heating, stop time of DHW tank heating, and delay time of DHW tank heater operating.

- Active time : This time duration defines how long time DHW tank heating can be continued.
- Stop time : This time duration defines how long time DHW tank heating can be stopped. It is also regarded as time gap between DHW tank heating cycle.
- Boost heater delay time : This time duration defines how long time DHW tank heater will not be turned on in DHW heating operation.
- Example of timing chart :



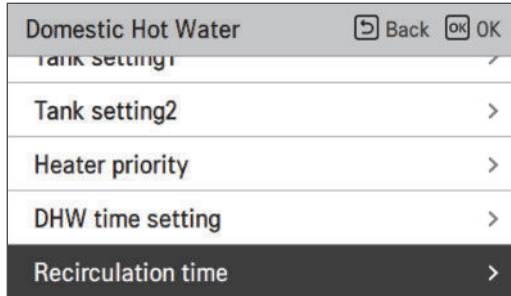
Time	Description
7:30	The user activates the DHW function in the remote controller (DHW operation starts by the heat pump cycle as the Thermo on condition is reached)
7:50	The booster heater is activated after the booster heater delay time(20 min)
7:55	The active time(25min) of DHW operation by the heat pump cycle ends and the heat pump cycle is forced to be stopped (The booster heater is continues to operate because the target temperature is not reached)
8:10	The booster heater operation ends as the target temperature is reached
8:20	DHW operation is not activated by the stop time(30 min) even though the water temperature is dropped and DHW operation condition is reached.
8:25	When the active time condition is reached, DHW operation starts again by the heat pump cycle
8:45	The booster heater is activated after the booster heater delay time(20 min)
8:50	The user deactivates the DHW function by turning it off in the remote controller



Value	Default	Range
Active time	30 min	5~95 min
Stop time	30 min	0~600 min

Recirculation time (For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit 2-Pipe)

- It is function to set recirculation water pump on/off interval option
- In the installer setting list, select Recirculation time category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.

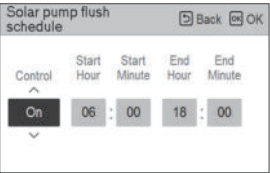
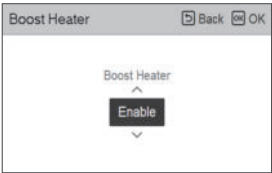
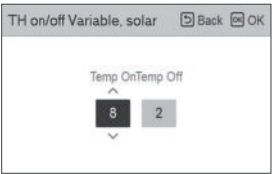
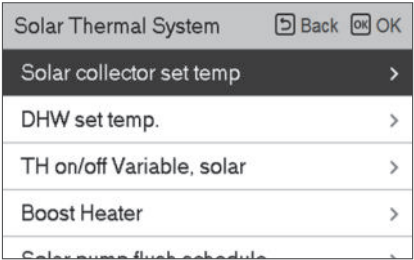
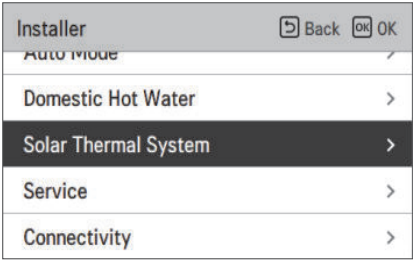


Value	Default	Range
DHW recirculation	Not use	Use / Not use
ON Time	10 min	5 ~ 60 min
OFF Time	20 min	5 ~ 60 min

Solar Thermal System

It is function to set operation reference value in Solar Thermal System.

In the installer setting list, select Solar thermal system category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.



NOTE

To use this function, switch No.2 of option switch 2 must be turned ON and No.3 of option switch 2 must be turned OFF.

Descriptions for each parameters are as following.

- Solar collector set temp
 - Min temp : It is the minimum solar collector temperature at which the solar thermal system can operate.
 - Max temp : It is the maximum solar collector temperature at which the solar thermal system can operate.
- TH on/off Variable, solar
 - Temp on : It is the temperature difference between the current solar thermal temperature and DHW tank temperature at which the solar thermal system operates.
 - Temp off : It is the temperature difference between the current solar thermal temperature and DHW tank temperature at which the solar thermal system stops.
 - Example : If the current solar collector temperature is 80 °C and Temp on is set to 8 °C, the solar thermal system operates when the DHW tank temperature is less than 72 °C. In the same case, if Temp off is set to 2 °C, Solar Thermal System stops when DHW temperature is 78 °C.
- DHW Set Temp
 - Max : It is maximum temperature of DHW that can be reached by solar thermal system.
- Boost Heater
 - Enable : Booster heater can be used when operating the Solar Thermal system.
 - Disable : Booster heater cannot be used when operating the Solar Thermal system.
- Solar pump flush schedule
 - It is the function to circulate the solar water pump intermittently for solar collector temperature detection when the solar water pump does not operate for a long time. Turn on to use this function.
- Solar Pump flush setting
 - Oper.Cycle : When using the solar pump flush function, the solar water pump operates at the set time.
 - Oper.Time : When using the solar pump flush function, the solar water pump operates during the set time.

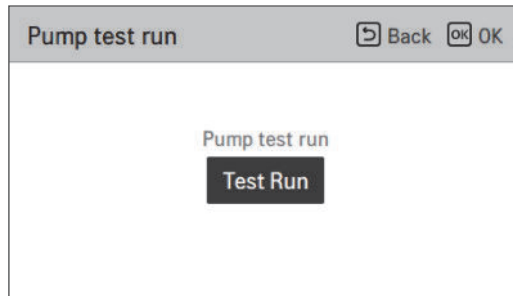
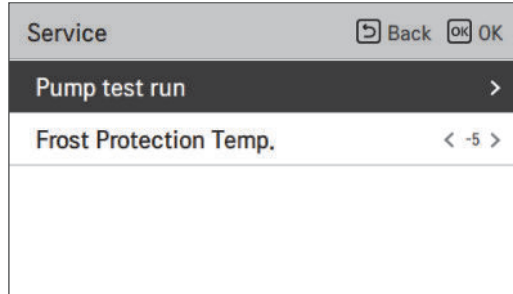
Function	Value	Range	Default
Solar collector set temp	Min	5 °C ~ 50 °C	10 °C
	Max	60 °C ~ 200 °C	95 °C
DHW set temp	Max	20 °C ~ 90 °C	80 °C
TH on/off Variable, solar	Temp On	3 °C ~ 40 °C	8 °C
	Temp Off	1 °C ~ 20 °C	2 °C
Boost Heater	Boost Heater	Enable/Disable	Enable
Solar pump flush schedule	On/OFF	On/Off	On
	Start Hour, Start Minute	00:00 ~ 24:00	6:00
	End Hour, End Minute	00:00 ~ 24:00	18:00
Solar pump test run	Pump test Run	Start/Stop	Stop
Solar pump flush setting	Oper.Cycle	30 min ~ 120 min	60 min
	Oper.Time	1 min ~ 10 min	1 min

Pump test run

The pump test run is to test run by operating the water pump for 1 hour.

This function can be used for air purging through air vents and checking flow rate and others.

- In the installer setting list, Pump Test run category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.



NOTE

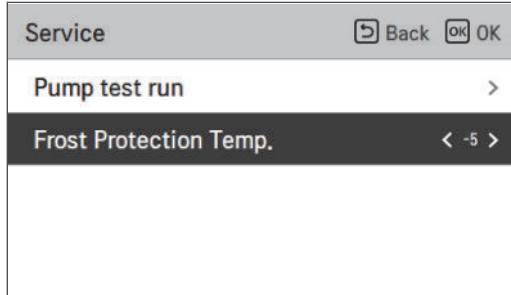
The setting for Thermostat and Dry contact should be disabled to use the Pump test run function.

Frost Protection Temp.

This function prevents the unit from freezing. This function sets the freeze protection temperature according to the concentration injected after injecting antifreeze.

Make sure to use this function only when antifreeze is added.

- Change setting values using [$\leftarrow$, $\rightarrow$] (left/right) button.
- The function is not available for some products.

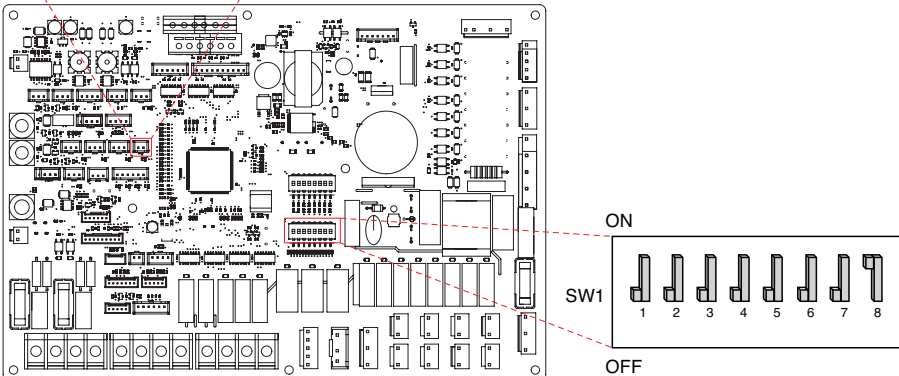
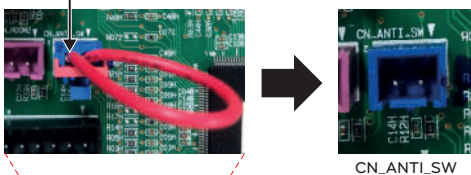


Default	Range
-5 °C	-25 ~ -5 °C

NOTE

To use this function, the antifreeze short pin(CN_ANTI_SW) must be open and switch No.8 in Option SW 1 must be on.

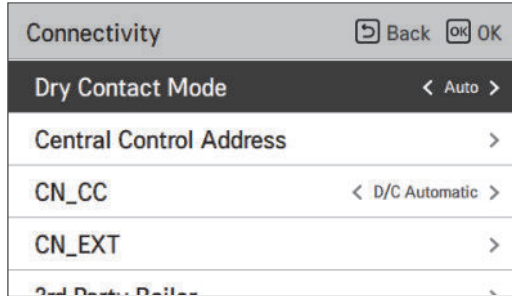
Antifreeze short pin



Dry Contact Mode

Dry contact function is the function that can be used only when the dry contact devices is separately purchased and installed.

- Change setting values using [<,>(left/right)] button.



Value	Description
Auto (Default)	Automatically operation ON with release hard lock
Manual	Keep operation OFF with hard lock

NOTE

For dry contact mode related detail functions, refer to the individual dry contact manual.

What is dry contact?

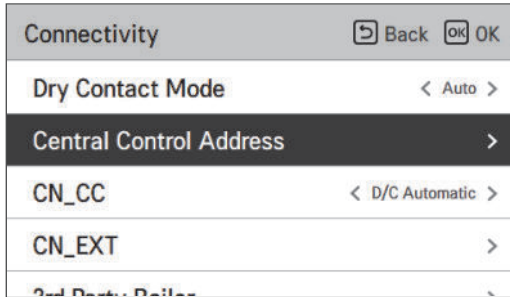
It means the contact point signal input when the hotel card key, human body detection sensor, etc. are interfacing with the unit.

Added system functionality by using external inputs (dry contacts and wet contacts).

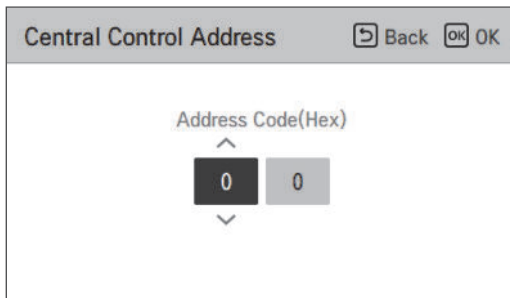
Central Control Address

When connecting the central control, set the central control address of the unit.

- In the installer setting list, select Central Control Address category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.



The screenshot shows a menu titled 'Connectivity' with a 'Back' button and an 'OK' button. The menu items are: 'Dry Contact Mode' (with '< Auto >' next to it), 'Central Control Address' (highlighted with a right arrow), 'CN_CC' (with '< D/C Automatic >' next to it), 'CN_EXT' (with a right arrow), and '2nd Party Boiler' (with a right arrow).

The screenshot shows a screen titled 'Central Control Address' with a 'Back' button and an 'OK' button. The main content area is labeled 'Address Code(Hex)' and displays two boxes, each containing the number '0'. Up and down arrows are positioned above and below the boxes.

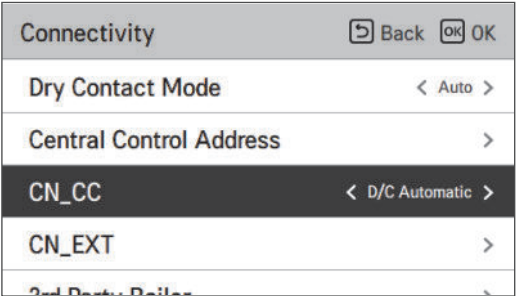
NOTE

Enter address code as hexadecimal value
 Front: Central Control Gr. No.
 Back side: Central control indoor the number

CN_CC

It is the function to set the usage of the unit's CN_CC port.

- Change setting values using [<,>(left/right)] button



Value	Description
D/C Automatic (Default)	When power is applied to the product, the unit when the contact point is on in Dry Contact installed state recognizes Dry Contact installation
D/C Not Installed	Do not use (install) Dry Contact
D/C Installed	Use (install) Dry Contact

NOTE

CN_CC is the device connected to the unit to recognize and control the external contact point.

Energy state

This function is to control the product according to the energy state. When the charged state of ESS is transmitted, it changes the target temperature of heating, cooling and DHW by setting value according to energy state.

Select either Signal Mode or Modbus Mode according to the connection type between the product and the ESS.

Select ThinQ Mode for wireless connection between the product and the ESS via ThinQ. This function is available only in Germany.

Installer

Back

OK

IDU operation time

>

RMC master/slave

< Master >

Energy state

>

Data logging

>

Password Initialization

>



Energy state

Back

OK

ESS use type

< Not use >

Energy state definition

>

Digital input assignment

>

Value	Default
Not Use	Not use
Use Modbus	
Use Digital Input	
ThinQ	

Energy state definition Back OK

Energy state 5 >

Energy state 6 >

Energy state 7 >

Energy state 8 >



OK

Energy state 5 Back OK

Heat Temp. Cool Temp. DHW Temp.

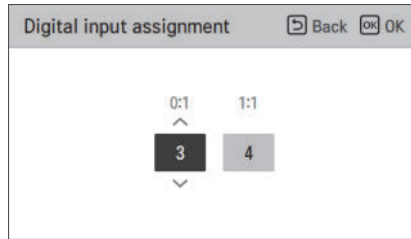
Use 5 -5 30

Division	Value	Default	Range	Division	Value	Default	Range
ES 1	-	Use	Use / Not Use	ES 5	-	Use	Use / Not Use
	Heat Temp.	Off	fixed		Heat Temp.	+5 °C	0 ~ 30 °C
	Cool Temp.	Off	fixed		Cool Temp.	-5 °C	-30 ~ 0 °C
	DHW Temp.	Off	fixed		DHW Temp.	+30 °C	0 ~ 50 °C
ES 2	-	Use	Use / Not Use	ES 6	-	Use	Use / Not Use
	Heat Temp.	Normal	fixed		Heat Temp.	+2 °C	0 ~ 30 °C
	Cool Temp.	Normal	fixed		Cool Temp.	-2 °C	-30 ~ 0 °C
	DHW Temp.	Normal	fixed		DHW Temp.	+10 °C	0 ~ 50 °C
ES 3	-	Use	Use / Not Use	ES 7	-	Use	Use / Not Use
	Heat Temp.	+2 °C	fixed		Heat Temp.	-2 °C	-30 ~ 0 °C
	Cool Temp.	0 °C	fixed		Cool Temp.	+2 °C	0 ~ 30 °C
	DHW Temp.	+5 °C	fixed		DHW Temp.	0 °C	-50 ~ 0 °C
ES 4	-	Use	Use / Not Use	ES 8	-	Use	Use / Not Use
	Heat Temp.	0 °C	fixed		Heat Temp.	-5 °C	-30 ~ 0 °C
	Cool Temp.	0 °C	fixed		Cool Temp.	+5 °C	0 ~ 30 °C
	DHW Temp.	80 °C	fixed		DHW Temp.	0 °C	-50 ~ 0 °C

* ES = Energy state

* ES 4 DHW Temp. 80°C is the desired temperature value, not the offset.

When Signal Mode of EES use type is selected, press the Digital Input Assignment button to set the energy state according to the input signal.



Value	Input Signal		Output state	
	TB_SG1	TB_SG2	Default	Range
X	0	0	ES2	fixed
X	1	0	ES1	fixed
0:1	0	1	ES3	ES3-ES8
1:1	1	1	ES4	

Thermostat control type

Set the type of thermostat control.

- In the Installer setting list, and select Connectivity category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.

Connectivity	Back OK OK
CN_EXT	>
3rd Party Boiler	>
Meter Interface	>
Energy state	>
Thermostat control type	>



Thermostat control type	Back OK OK
^ Heat & Cool v	

Type	
Heat & Cool (Default)	Heat & Cool / DHW

Pump operation time

It is a function to show the water pump's operation time for check mechanical life.

- In the Installer setting list, and select Information category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.

Information	
Pump operation time	>
IDU operation time	>
Current Flow Rate	>
Data logging	>

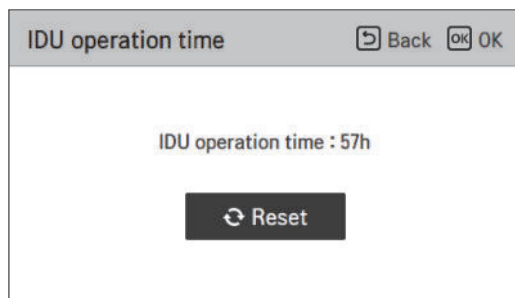
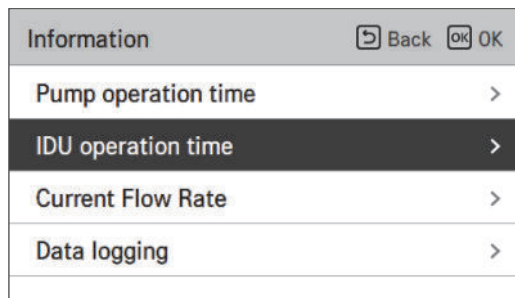


Pump operation time	
Pump operation time : 36h	
↺ Reset	

IDU operation time

It is a function to show the Indoor Unit's operation time for check mechanical life.

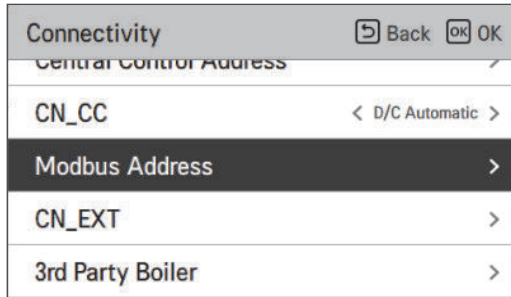
- In the Installer setting list, and select Information category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.



Modbus Address

It is function to set the address of the Modbus device that is externally linked to the product. Modbus address setting function is available from indoor unit.

- In the installer setting list, select Modbus Address , and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.



The screenshot shows a menu titled 'Connectivity' with a 'Back' button and an 'OK' button. The menu items are: 'Central Control Address', 'CN_CC' (with '< D/C Automatic >' next to it), 'Modbus Address' (highlighted with a dark background and a right arrow), 'CN_EXT' (with a right arrow), and '3rd Party Boiler' (with a right arrow).




The screenshot shows a screen titled 'Modbus Address' with a 'Back' button and an 'OK' button. The main content area is labeled 'Address Code(Hex)' and shows two selectable options: '0' (highlighted with a dark background) and '1' (in a light gray box). Up and down arrows are positioned above and below the '0' option.

NOTE

To use this function, switch No.1 of option switch 1 must be turned ON.

Modbus gateway memory map

Baud Rate : 9 600 bps Stop Bit : 1 stop bit Parity : None Parity

Coil Register (0x01)

Register	Description	Value explanation
00001	Enable/Disable (Heating/Cooling)	0 : Operation OFF / 1 : Operation ON
00002	Enable/Disable (DHW)	0 : Operation OFF / 1 : Operation ON
00003	Silent Mode Set	0 : Silent mode OFF / 1 : Silent mode ON
00004	Trigger Disinfection operation	0 : Keep status / 1 : Operation start
00005	Emergency Stop	0 : Normal operation / 1 : Emergency stop
00006	Trigger Emergency Operation	0 : Keep status / 1 : Operation Start

Discrete Register (0x02)

Register	Description	Value explanation
10001	Water flow status	0 : Flow rate ok / 1 : Flow rate too low
10002	Water Pump status	0 : Water Pump OFF / 1 : Water Pump ON
10003	Ext. Water Pump status	0 : Water Pump OFF / 1 : Water Pump ON
10004	Compressor status	0 : Compressor OFF / 1 : Compressor ON
10005	Defrosting status	0 : Defrost OFF / 1 : Defrost ON
10006	DHW heating status (DHW Thermal On/Off)	0 : DHW inactive / 1 : DHW active
10007	DHW Tank disinfection status	0 : Disinfection inactive / 1 : Disinfection active
10008	Silent mode status	0 : Silent mode inactive / 1 : Silent mode active
10009	Cooling status	0 : No cooling / 1 : Cooling operation
10010	Solar pump status	0 : Solar pump OFF / 1 : Solar pump ON
10011	Backup heater (Step 1) status	0 : OFF / 1 : ON
10012	Backup heater (Step 2) status	0 : OFF / 1 : ON
10013	DHW boost heater status	0 : OFF / 1 : ON
10014	Error status	0 : no error / 1 : error state
10015	Emergency Operation Available (Space heating/cooling)	0 : Unavailable / 1 : Available
10016	Emergency Operation Available (DHW)	0 : Unavailable / 1 : Available
10017	Mix pump status	0 : Mix pump OFF / 1 : Mix pump ON

Holding Register (0x03)

Register	Description	Value explanation
40001	Operation Mode	0 : Cooling / 4 : Heating / 3 : Auto
40002	Control method (Circuit 1/2)	0 : Water outlet temp. control 1 : Water inlet temp. control 2 : Room air control
40003	Target temp (Heating/Cooling) Circuit 1	[0.1 °C ×10]
40004	Room Air Temp. Circuit 1	[0.1 °C ×10]
40005	Shift value(Target) in auto mode Circuit 1	1K
40006	Target temp (Heating/Cooling) Circuit 2	[0.1 °C ×10]
40007	Room Air Temp. Circuit 2	[0.1 °C ×10]
40008	Shift value(Target) in auto mode Circuit 2	1K
40009	DHW Target temp.	[0.1 °C ×10]
40010	Energy state input	0 : Not Use 1 : Forced off (equal to TB_SG1=close / TB_SG2=open) 2 : Normal operation (equal to TB_SG1=open / TB_SG2=open) 3 : On-recommendation (equal to TB_SG1=open / TB_SG2=close) 4 : On-command (equal to TB_SG1=close / TB_SG2=close) 5 : On-command step 2 (++ Energy Consumption compared to Normal) 6 : On-recommendation Step 1 (+ Energy Consumption compared to Normal) 7 : Energy Saving mode (- Energy Consumption compared to Normal) 8 : Super Energy saving mode (– Energy Consumption compared to Normal)

Input Register (0x04)

Register	Description	Value explanation
30001	Error Code	Error Code
30002	ODU operation Cycle	0 : Standby(OFF) / 1 : Cooling / 2 : Heating
30003	Water inlet temp.	[0.1 °C ×10]
30004	Water outlet temp.	[0.1 °C ×10]
30005	Backup heater outlet temp.	[0.1 °C ×10]
30006	DHW tank water temp.	[0.1 °C ×10]
30007	Solar collector temp.	[0.1 °C ×10]
30008	Room air temp. (Circuit 1)	[0.1 °C ×10]
30009	Current Flow rate	[0.1 LPM ×10]
30010	Flow temp. (Circuit 2)	[0.1 °C ×10]
30011	Room air temp. (Circuit 2)	[0.1 °C ×10]
30012	Energy State input	0 : Energy state 0; 1: Energy state 1....
30013	Outdoor Air temp.	[0.1 °C ×10]
39998	Product Group	0x8X (0x80, 0x83, 0x88, 0x89)
39999	Product Info.	Split : 0 / Monobloc : 3 / High Temp. : 4 / Medium Temp. : 5 / System Boiler : 6

CN_EXT

It is a function to control external input and output according to DI type set by customer using CN-EXT Port.

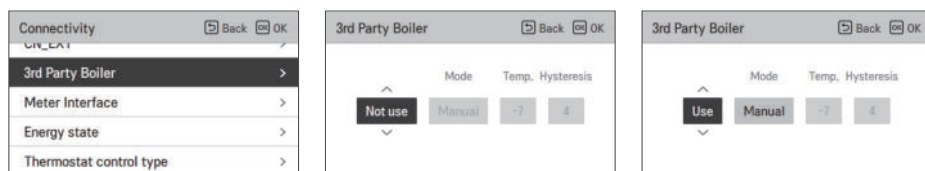
- In the installer setting list, select CN-EXT Port category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.



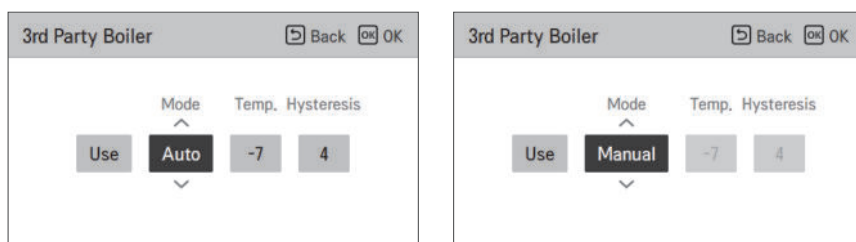
Value	Contact Input	Operation	Remark
Not Use	Open	-	-
	Close	-	-
Simple Operation	Open	OFF	-
	Close	ON	-
Simple Dry Contact	Open	OFF + Hard Lock	Follows Dry Contact mode : - Auto mode : if contact input closes, operation On - Manual mode : if contact input closes, keep in previous state
	Close	ON	
Single emergency stop	Open	Always OFF	Priority : - Emergency stop Lock > Central control Lock > Dry Lock
	Close	Emergency stop released	

3rd Party Boiler

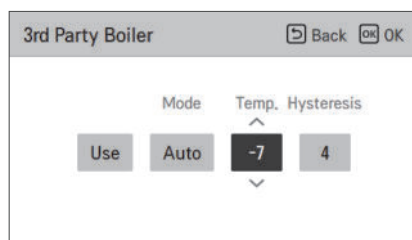
This function is to configure the 3rd party boiler to be controlled.



If the status of this function is “Use”, you can choose control mode of boiler, Auto or Manual.



If the mode of this function is set to “Auto”, you can set temperature of the boiler and hysteresis, respectively.



External boiler ON condition :

- If outdoor temperature $\leq$ external boiler operation temperature value (installer setting), turn off the indoor unit and operate the external boiler.

External boiler OFF condition :

- If External air temperature $\geq$ external boiler operation temperature value (installer setting) + Hysteresis (installer setting), turn off external boiler operation and operate indoor unit

Meter Interface

It is the function that can check the status of energy and power on screen. It collects and calculates power or calorie data to create data for energy monitoring and energy warning alarm pop-ups. This function can be activated in installer mode.

Connectivity [Back] [OK] [OK]

- 3rd Party Boiler >
- Meter Interface >**
- Energy state >
- Thermostat control type >

Meter Interface [Back] [OK] [OK]

- Modbus Address >**
- Unit >



Modbus Address [Back] [OK] [OK]

Modbus Address

Not use

Modbus Address [Back] [OK] [OK]

Modbus Address

B0

Modbus Address [Back] [OK] [OK]

Modbus Address

B1

There are 2 options, modbus address and unit, in this function. Activating the modbus address option, you choose one address(B0 or B1) or don't use. Then, you set the port and specification in range of 0000.0~9999.9[pulse/kWh] as shown in the figure below.

Unit [Back] [OK] [OK]

Pulse/kWh

Port1 0 0 0 0 . 0

Unit [Back] [OK] [OK]

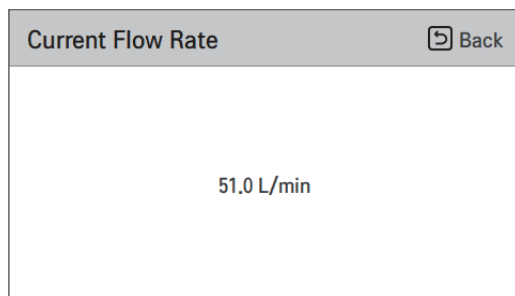
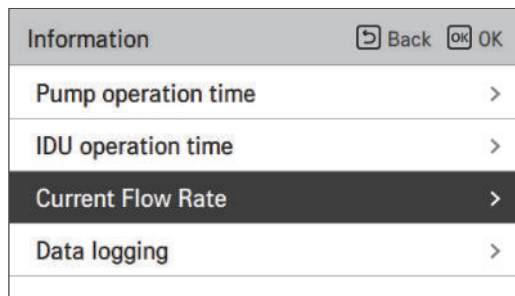
Pulse/kWh

Port1 1 1 1 1 . 1

Current flow rate

It is the function to check the current flow rate.

- In the installer setting list, select Current Flow Rate category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen. The current flow rate can be checked. (Range : 7 ~ 80 L/min)
- The function is not available for some products.



Data logging

This function is to check the operation and error history.

- In the installer setting list, select Data logging category, and press [OK] button to move to the detail screen.

Information	Back	OK
Pump operation time		>
IDU operation time		>
Current Flow Rate		>
Data logging		>



Data logging					Back
Date	Time	Oper.	Settemp	In/Out	
2020.07.02	03:01	Cool	16°	25° / 25°	
2020.07.02	02:57	Cool	16°	25° / 25°	
2020.07.02	02:31	Cool	16°	25° / 25°	>
2020.07.02	02:27	Cool	16°	25° / 25°	
2020.07.02	02:01	Cool	16°	25° / 25°	

NOTE

Error history lookup range: 50

Error history information

Item: date, time, mode (including Off), set temperature, incoming temperature, outgoing temperature, room temperature, Hot water operation / stop, Hot water set temperature, Hot water temperature, Outdoor unit On / Off, Error code

Number of Display: Within 50

- Save criteria ▽

▽ Error occurred, released ON / OFF of outdoor unit operation.

COMMISSIONING

If everything is going well until now, it is time to start the operation and to take advantages of **THERMAV.**

Before starting operation, pre-check points are described in this chapter. Some comments about maintenance and how to do troubleshooting are presented.

Check List before Starting Operation



CAUTION

Turn off the power before changing wiring or handling product.

No	Category	Item	Check Point
1	Electricity	Field wiring	• All switches having contacts for different poles should be wired tightly according to regional or national legislation. • Only qualified person can proceed wiring. • Wiring and local-supplied electric parts should be complied with European and regional regulations. • Wiring should be following the wiring diagram supplied with the product.
2		Protective devices	• Install ELB (earth leakage breaker) with 30 mA. • ELB inside the control box of the unit should be turned on before starting operation.
3		Earth wiring	• Earth should be connected. Do not earth to gas or city water pipe, metallic section of a building, surge absorber, etc.
4		Power supply	• Use dedicated power line.
5		Terminal block wiring	• Connections on the terminal block (inside the control box of the unit) should be tightened.
6	Water	Charged water pressure	• After water charging, the pressure gauge (in front of the unit) should indicate 2.0~2.5 bar. Do not exceed 3.0 bar.
7		Air purge	• During water charging, air should be taken out through the hole of the air purge. • If water does not splash out when the tip (at the top of the hole) is pressed, then air purging is not completed yet. If well purged, the water will splash out like fountain. • Be careful when testing air purge. Splashed water may make your dress wet.
8		Shut-off valve	• Two shut-off valves (located at the end of water inlet pipe and water outlet pipe of the unit) should be open.
9		By-pass valve	• By-pass valve should be installed and adjusted to secure enough water flow rate. If water flow rate is low, flow switch error (CH14) can be occurred.
10		Hang to the wall	• As the unit is hung on the wall, vibration or noise can be heard if the unit is not fixed tightly. • If the unit is not fixed tightly, it can fall down during operation.
11	Product Installation	Parts inspection	• There should be no apparently damaged parts inside the unit.
12		Refrigerant leakage	• Refrigerant leakage degrades the performance. If leakage found, contact qualified LG air conditioning installation person.
13		Drainage treatment	• While cooling operation, condensed dew can drop down to the bottom of the unit. In this case, prepare drainage treatment (for example, vessel to contain condensed dew) to avoid water drop.

To assure best performance of **THERMAV**®, it is required to perform periodical check and maintenance. It is recommended to proceed following check list for once a year.



CAUTION

Turn off the power before proceeding maintenance.

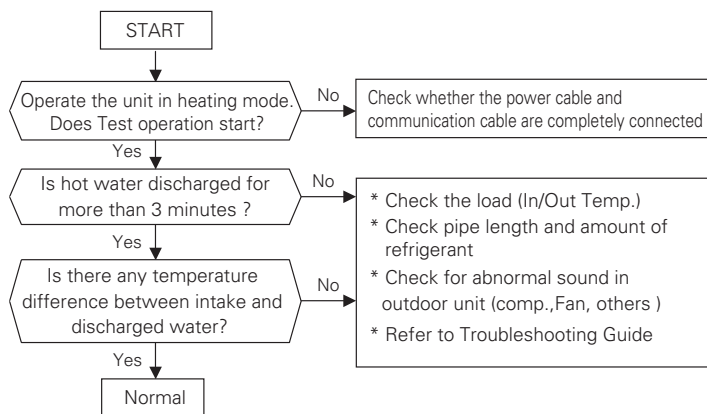
No	Category	Item	Check Point
1	Water	Water pressure	• In normal state, the pressure gauge (in front of the unit) should indicate 2.0~2.5 bar. • If the pressure is less than 0.3 bar, please recharge the water.
2		Strainer (Water filter)	• Close the shut-off valves and disassemble strainer. Then wash the strainer to make it clean. • While disassembling the strainer, be careful for water flood out.
3		Safety valve	• Open the switch of the safety valve and check if water is flood out through the drain hose. • After checking, close the safety valve.
4	Electricity	Terminal block wiring	• Look and inspect if there is loosen or defected connection on the terminal block.

Starting Operation

Check before Starting Operation

1	Check to see whether there is any refrigerant leakage, and check whether the power or transmission cable is connected properly.
2	Confirm that 500 V megger shows 2.0 MΩ or more between power supply terminal block and ground. Do not operate in the case of 2.0 MΩ or less. NOTE: Never carry out mega ohm check over terminal control board. Otherwise the control board may break. Immediately after mounting the unit or after leaving it turned off for an extended length of time, the resistance of the insulation between the power supply terminal board and the ground may decrease to approx. 2.0 MΩ as a result of refrigerant accumulation in the internal compressor. If the insulation resistance is less than 2.0 MΩ, turn on the main power supply.
3	When the power is applied for the first time, operate the product after preheating for 2 hours. To protect the unit by increasing the oil temperature of the compressor.

Starting Operation flow chart



Airborne Noise Emission

The A-weighted sound pressure emitted by this product is below 70 dB.

** The noise level can vary depending on the site.

The figures quoted are emission level and are not necessarily safe working levels.

Whilst there is a correlation between the emission and exposure levels, this cannot be used reliably to determine whether or not further precautions are required.

Factor that influence the actual level of exposure of the workforce include the characteristics of the work room and the other sources of noise, i.e. the number of equipment and other adjacent processes and the length of time for which an operator exposed to the noise.

Also, the permissible exposure level can vary from country to country.

This information, however, will enable the user of the equipment to make a better evaluation of the hazard and risk.

Limiting concentration(For R410A)

Limiting concentration is the limit of Freon gas concentration where immediate measures can be taken without hurting human body when refrigerant leaks in the air. The limiting concentration shall be described in the unit of kg/m³ (Freon gas weight per unit air volume) for facilitating calculation

Limiting concentration : 0.44 kg/m³ (For R410A)

■ Calculate refrigerant concentration

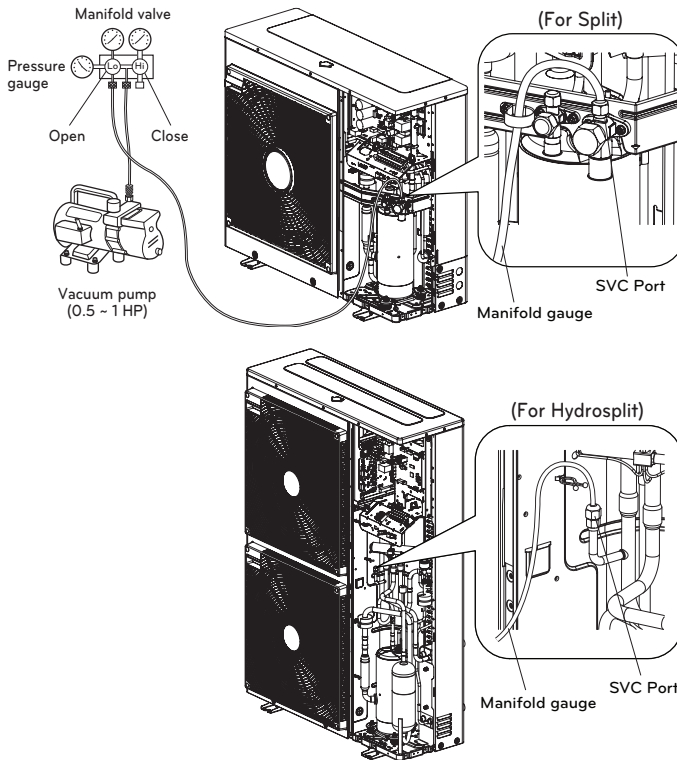
$$\text{Refrigerant concentration} = \frac{\text{Total amount of replenished refrigerant in refrigerant facility (kg)}}{\text{Capacity of smallest room where indoor unit is installed (m}^3\text{)}}$$

Vacuum & Charge of Refrigerant

By default, the product was charged of refrigerant.
Vacuum and refrigerant charge, If there is leak refrigerant.

1. Vacuum

To work of vacuum action. when the leak of refrigerant.



When selecting a vacuum, you should select one which is capable of achieving 0.2 Torr of ultimate vacuum. Degree of vacuum is expressed in Torr, micron, mmHg, and Pascal (Pa). The units correlate as follows:

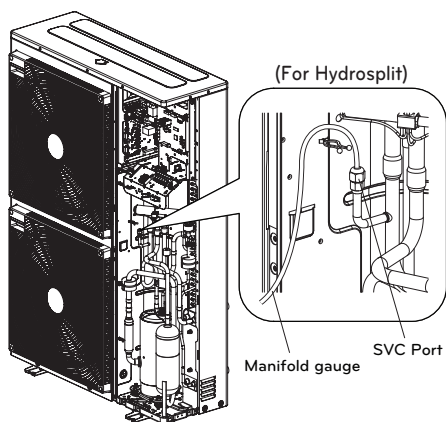
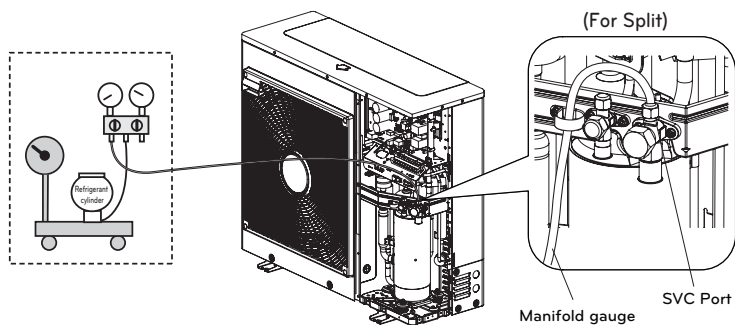
	Unit	Standard atmospheric pressure	Perfect vacuum
Gauge Pressure	Pa	0	-1.033
Absolute Pressure	Pa	1.033	0
Torr	Torr	760	0
Micron	Micron	760 000	0
mmHg	mmHg	0	760
Pa	Pa	1 013.33	0

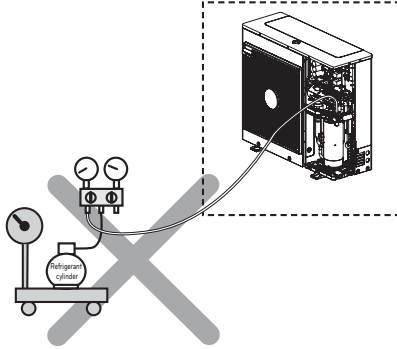
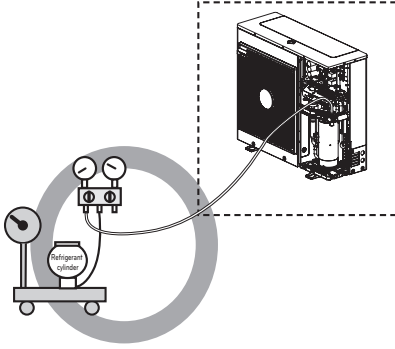
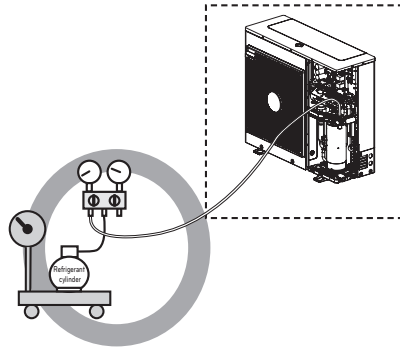
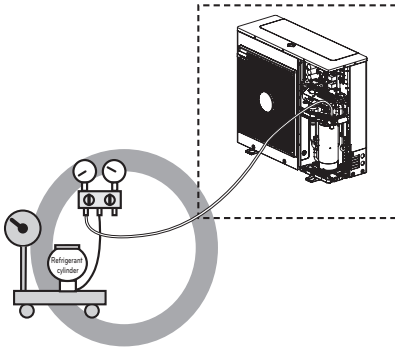
2. Charge of refrigerant

You should be charged after vacuum.

You can see amount of refrigerant at quality label.

Please to charge at cooling mode when there is not full charging.



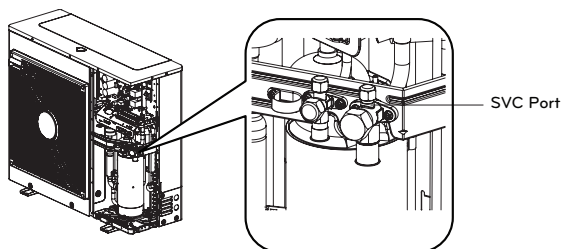
- For R410A**- For R32**

* It is recommended to charge the refrigerant container upside down.

3. Location of SVC port

(For Split)

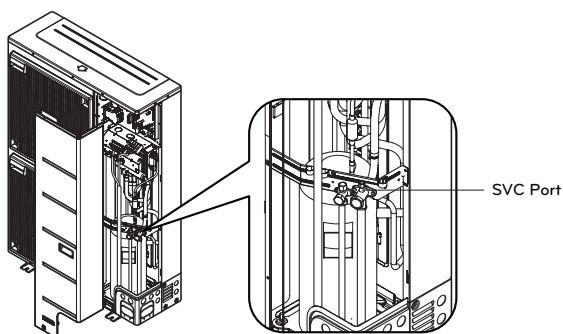
1Ø : 5 kW, 7 kW, 9 kW



(For Split)

1Ø : 12 kW, 14 kW, 16 kW

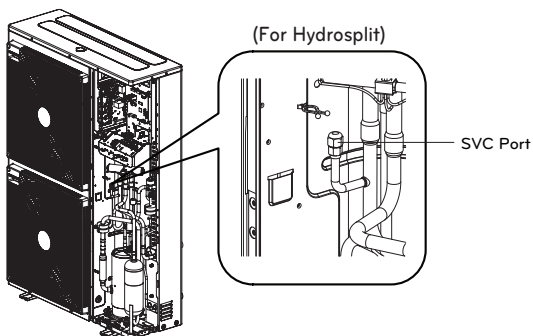
3Ø : 12 kW, 14 kW, 16 kW



(For Hydrosplit)

1Ø : 12 kW, 14 kW, 16 kW

3Ø : 12 kW, 14 kW, 16 kW



Trouble shooting

If **THERMAV** operates not properly or it does not start operation, please check following list.



CAUTION

Turn off the power before proceeding troubleshooting.

Troubleshooting for Problem while Operation

No	Problem	Reason	Solution
1	Heating or Cooling is not satisfactory.	Setting target temperature is not proper.	- Set target temperature correctly. - Check if temperature is water-based or air-based. See 'Remote sensor active' and 'Temp. sensor selection'
		Charged water is not enough.	Check pressure gauge and charge more water until pressure gauge is indication 2~2.5 Bar
		Water flow rate is low.	- Check if strainer gathers too much particles. If so, strainer should be cleaned. - Check if pressure gauge indicates above 4 Bar - Check if water pipe is getting closed due to stacked particles or lime.
2	Although electric power supply is OK (remote controller displays information), the unit does not start working.	Water inlet temperature is too high.	If water inlet temperature is above 57 °C, the unit does not operated for the sake of system protection
		Water inlet temperature is too low.	- If water inlet temperature is below 5 °C in cooling operation, the unit does not operated for the sake of system protection. Wait while unit warms up the water inlet temperature. - If water inlet temperature is below 15 °C in heating operation, the unit does not operated for the sake of system protection. Wait while unit warms up to 18 °C the water inlet temperature. - If you are not using the back up heater accessory (HA**1M E1), increase the water temperature with the external heat source (heater, boiler). If the problem persists, contact your dealer. - If you want to use the screed drying function, be sure to purchase and install back up hater accessories (HA**1M E1).
3	Water pump noise.	Air purging is not completely finished.	- Open the cap of air purge and charge more water until pressure gauge is indicating 2~2.5 Bar - If water does not splash out when the tip(at the top of the hole) is pressed, then air purging is not completed yet. If well purged, the water will splash out like fountain.
		Water pressure is low.	- Check if pressure gauge indicates above 0.3 Bar. - Check if the expansion tank and pressure gauge operates well.
4	Water is flood out through drain hose.	Too much water is charged.	Flood out water by opening the switch of the safety valve until pressure gauge is indicating 2~2.5 Bar.
		Expansion tank is damaged.	Replace the expansion tank.
5	DHW is not hot.	Thermal protector of water tank heater is activated.	Open the side panel of the DHW tank and push the reset button of the thermal protector. (for more detail information, please refer to installation manual of DHW tank.
		DHW Heating is disabled.	Select DHW Heating Operation and identify if icon is displayed on the remote controller.

Troubleshooting for Error Code

Display code	Title	Cause of error	Check point & Normal condition
1	Problem in remote room air sensor	• Incorrect connection between sensor and PCB(Heater). • PCB(Heater) fault • Sensor fault	• Resistance: 10 kΩ at 25 centigrade (unplugged) → for Remote room air sensor • Resistance: 5 kΩ at 25 centigrade (unplugged) → for all sensors EXCEPT remote room air sensor • Voltage: 2.5 V DC at 25 centigrade (plugged) (for all sensors) • Refer resistance-temperature table to check in different temperature
2	Problem in refrigerant (inlet side) sensor		
6	Problem in refrigerant (outlet side) sensor		
8	Problem in water tank sensor		
13	Problem in solar pipe sensor		
16	Problems in sensors		
17	Problem in water-inlet sensor		
18	Problem in water-outlet sensor		
19	Problem in Electric heater outlet sensor		
10	BLDC Water pump Lock	Restriction of BLDC Water pump	• BLDC Water pump defect / assembly condition abnormal • Fan lock by foreign material
3	Bad communication between remote controller and unit.	• Incorrect connection between sensor and PCB(Heater) • PCB(Heater) fault • Sensor fault	• Wire connection between remote controller and Main PCB assembly(Heater) should be tight • Output voltage of PCB should be 12 V DC
5	Bad communication between Main PCB assembly(Heater) and Main PCB assembly(Inverter) of the unit.	• The connector for transmission is disconnected • The connecting wires are misconnected • The communication line is broken • Main PCB assembly(Inverter) is abnormal • Main PCB assembly(Heater) is abnormal	• Wire connection between remote control panel and Main PCB assembly(Heater) should be tight.
53			
9	PCB program (EEPROM) fault	• Electrical or mechanical damage a the EEPROM	• This error can not be permitted

Display code	Title	Cause of error	Check point & Normal condition
14	Problem in flow switch and flow sensor (Split Indoor unit 5 Series, Hydrosplit model are follow separate trouble shooting for error code 14.)	Flow switch - It is open while internal water pump is working. - It is closed while internal water pump is not working. - It is open while DIP switch No. 5 of Main PCB assembly(Heater) is set as on. Flow sensor - Water Pump ON. : If flow rate is not more than 7 LPM or not less than 80 LPM, detect it for 15 seconds. - Water Pump OFF. : If flow rate is not less than 7 LPM, detect it for 15 seconds.	Flow switch - It should be closed while internal water pump is working or DIP switch No. 5 of Main PCB assembly(Heater) is set as on. - It should be open while internal water pump is not working. Flow Sensor - Display the flow rate value that received from the indoor unit. (Range : 7 ~ 80 LPM)
	Problem in Flow rate (For Split Indoor unit 5 Series, For Hydrosplit)	If flow rate is not more than minimum, detect it for 15 seconds during pump operation. - Minimum flow rate : (5, 7, 9 kW) 7 LPM (12, 14, 16 kW) 15 LPM	- Display the flow rate value on the remote controller. - Make sure there is no leakage. - Make sure the strainer or water pipe is not clogged. - Check the installation of the external pump. - Check the circulation pump. - Check the flow sensor.
232	Problem in Water Flow sensor	- Incorrect connection between sensor and main PCB of Indoor unit. - PCB fault - Sensor fault	- Display the flow rate value on the remote controller. - Voltage : 1.22 V at 23 LPM (plugged) - Refer voltage-pressure table to check in different flow rate.
231	Problem in Water Pressure sensor	- Incorrect connection between sensor and main PCB of Indoor unit. - PCB fault - Sensor fault	- Display the water pressure value on the remote controller. - Voltage : 0.65 V at 1.0 bar (plugged) - Refer voltage-pressure table to check in different pressure.
15	Water pipe overheated	- Abnormal operation of electric heater - Leaving water temperature is above 57 °C(R410A)/65 °C(R32)	If there is no problem in electric heater control, possible maximum leaving water temperature is 57 °C (R410A) / 65 °C(R32)
20	Thermal fuse is damaged	- Thermal fuse is cut off by abnormal overheating of internal electric heater - Mechanical fault at thermal fuse - Wire is damaged	This error will not be happened if temperature of electric heater tank is below 80 °C
21	DC PEAK (IPM Fault)	- Instant over current - Over Rated current - Poor insulation of IPM	- An instant over current in the U,V,W phase - Comp lock - The abnormal connection of U,V,W - Over load condition - Overcharging of refrigerant Pipe length. - Outdoor Fan is stop - Poor insulation of compressor

Display code	Title	Cause of error	Check point & Normal condition
22	Max. C/T	Input Over Current	• Malfunction of Compressor • Blocking of Pipe • Low Voltage Input • Refrigerant, Pipe length, Blocked...
23	DC Link High / Low Volt	• DC Link Voltage is above 420 V DC • DC Link Voltage is below 140 V DC	• Check CN_(L), CN_(N) Connection • Check Input Voltage • Check PCB DC Link voltage sensor parts
26	DC Compressor Position	• Compressor Starting fail error	• Check the connection of comp wire "U,V,W" • Malfunction of compressor • Check the component of "IPM", detection parts.
27	AC Input Instant over Current Error	PCB(Inverter) input current is over 100 A(peak) for 2 us	• Overload operation (Pipe clogging/Covering/EEV defect/Ref. overcharge) • Compressor damage (Insulation damage/Motor damage) • Input voltage abnormal (L,N) • Power line assemble condition abnormal • PCB assembly 1 Damage (input current sensing part)
29	Inverter compressor over current	(HM**1M U*3) Inverter Compressor input current is 30 A. (HM**3M U*3) Inverter Compressor input current is 24 A.	• Overload operation (Pipe clogging/Covering/EEV defect/Ref. overcharge) • Compressor damage(Insulation damage/Motor damage) • Input voltage low • ODU PCB assembly 1 damage
32	High temperature in Discharge pipe of the inverter compressor	• Overload operation (Outdoor fan constraint, screened, blocked) • Refrigerant leakage (insufficient) • Poor INV Comp Discharge sensor • LEV connector displaced / poor LEV assembly	• Check outdoor fan constraint/ screened/ flow structure • Check refrigerant leakage • Check if the sensor is normal • Check the status of EEV assembly
35	Low Presser Error	Excessive decrease of low pressure	• Defective low pressure sensor • Defective unit fan • Refrigerant shortage/leakage • Deformation because of damage of refrigerant pipe • Defective unit EEV • Covering / clogging (unit covering during the cooling mode / unit filter clogging during heating mode) • SVC valve clogging • Defective unit PCB(Inverter) • Defective unit pipe sensor
41	Problem in D-pipe temperature sensor	• Open / Short • Soldered poorly • Internal circuit error	• Bad connection of thermistor connector • Defect of thermistor connector (Open/Short) • Defect of outdoor PCB(Inverter)
43	Problem in high pressure sensor	Abnormal value of sensor (Open/Short)	• Bad connection of connector PCB(Inverter) • Bad connection high pressure connector • Defect of high pressure connector (Open/Short) • Defect of connector PCB(Inverter) (Open/Short) • Defect of PCB(Inverter)

Display code	Title	Cause of error	Check point & Normal condition
44	Problem in outdoor air temperature sensor	• Open / Short • Soldered poorly • Internal circuit error	• Bad connection of thermistor connector • Defect of thermistor connector (Open/Short) • Defect of outdoor PCB(Inverter)
45	Problem in Cond. middle pipe temperature sensor	• Open / Short • Soldered poorly • Internal circuit error	• Bad connection of thermistor connector • Defect of thermistor connector (Open/Short) • Defect of outdoor PCB(Inverter)
46	Problem in suction pipe temperature sensor	• Open / Short • Soldered poorly • Internal circuit error	• Bad connection of thermistor connector • Defect of thermistor connector (Open/Short) • Defect of outdoor PCB(Inverter)
52	PCB Communication Error	Checking the communication state between Main PCB and Inverter PCB	• Generation of noise source interfering with communication
54	Open and Reverse Phase Error	Prevention of phase unbalance and prevention of reverse rotation of constant-rate compressor	• Main power wiring fault
60	PCB(Inverter) & Main EEPROM check sum error	EEPROM Access error and Check SUM error	• EEPROM contact defect/wrong insertion • Different EEPROM Version • ODU Inverter & Main PCB assembly 1 damage
61	High temperature in Cond. Pipe	• Overload operation (Outdoor fan constraint, screened, blocked) • Unit heat exchanger contaminated • EEV connector displaced / poor EEV assembly • Poor Cond. Pipe sensor assembly / burned	• Check outdoor fan constraint / screened / flow structure • Check if refrigerant overcharged • Check the status of EEV assembly • Check the status of sensor assembly / burn
62	Heat sink Temp, High error	Heat sink sensor detected high temp.(85 °C)	• Part no. : EBR37798101~09 - Check the heat sink sensor: 10 kΩ / at 25 °C(Unplugged) - Check the outdoor fan is driving rightly • Part no. : EBR37798112~21 - Check the soldered condition in the 22,23 pin of IPM, PFCM - Check the screw torque of IPM, PFCM - Check the spreadable condition of thermal grease on IPM, PFCM - Check the outdoor fan is driving rightly
65	Problem in heat sink Temperature sensor	Abnormal value of sensor(Open/Short)	• Check if there is defect of thermistor connector (Open/Short) • Check defect of outdoor PCB(Inverter)
67	Fan lock error	Fan RPM is less than 10 for 5 seconds from start-up operation. Fan RPM is less than 40 in operation except for start-up operation	• Fan motor damage. • Assembly condition abnormal. • Jammed fan by surroundings.
114	Problem in Vapor injection inlet temperature sensor	• Open (Below -48.7 °C)/ Short(Over 96.2 °C) • Soldered poorly • Internal circuit error	• Bad connection of thermistor connector • Defect of thermistor connector (Open/Short) • Defect of outdoor PCB(Outdoor)



LG Electronics Inc. Single Point of Contact (EU/UK) :
LG Electronics European Shared Service Center B.V.
Krijgsman 1, 1186 DM Amstelveen, The Netherlands

Manufacturer :
LG Electronics Inc.
84, Wanam-ro, Seongsan-gu, Changwon-si, Gyeongsangnam-do, KOREA

LG Electronics Tianjin Appliances Co.,Ltd.
No. 9 Jin Wei Road, Bei Chen District, Tianjin, 300402, P.R. China

UK Importer :
LG Electronics U.K. Ltd
Velocity 2, Brooklands Drive, Weybridge, KT13 0SL

Eco design requirement

- The information for Eco design is available on the following free access website.
<https://www.lg.com/global/support/cedoc/cedoc>